



STATE OF UTAH - DEPARTMENT OF ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES

**Division of Facilities Construction and Management**

**DFCM**

# **STANDARD LOW BID PROJECT**

## **Project Budgets Over \$100,000**

**January 8, 2009**

**MURDOCK GUEST HOUSE ADAPTIVE RE-USE**

**UTAH VALLEY UNIVERSITY**

**OREM, UTAH**

DFCM Project Number 08307790

Atlas Architects  
327 E. Broadway  
Salt Lake City, Utah 84111

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page Numbers</u>
Title Sheet	1
Table of Contents	2
Notice to Contractors	3
Project Description	4
Project Schedule	5
Bid Form	6
Instructions to Bidders	8
Bid Bond	12
Instructions and Subcontractors List Form	13
Contractor's Agreement	16
Performance Bond	21
Payment Bond	22
Certificate of Substantial Completion	23
General Contractor Past Performance Rating	

Current copies of the following documents are hereby made part of these contract documents by reference. These documents are available on the DFCM web site at <http://dfcm.utah.gov> or are available upon request from DFCM.

DFCM Supplemental General Conditions dated July 15, 2008  
DFCM General Conditions dated May 25, 2005.  
DFCM Application and Certification for Payment dated May 25, 2005.

Technical Specifications:  
Drawings:

**The Agreement and General Conditions dated May 25, 2005 have been updated from versions that were formally adopted and in use prior to this date. The changes made to the General Conditions are identified in a document entitled Revisions to General Conditions that is available on DFCM's web site at <http://dfcm.utah.gov>**



# NOTICE TO CONTRACTORS

Sealed bids will be received by the Division of Facilities Construction and Management (DFCM) for:

**MURDOCK GUEST HOUSE ADAPTIVE RE-USE**  
**UTAH VALLEY UNIVERSITY - OREM, UTAH**  
**DFCM PROJECT NO: 08307790**

Bids will be in accordance with the Contract Documents that will be available on **Wednesday, January 8, 2009** and distributed in electronic format only on CDs from DFCM, 4110 State Office Building, Salt Lake City, Utah and on the DFCM web page at <http://dfcm.utah.gov>. For questions regarding this project, please contact Michael Ambre, DFCM, at 801-209-9104. No others are to be contacted regarding this bidding process. The construction estimate for this project is \$375,000.00

A **mandatory** pre-bid meeting will be held at **11:15 AM on Wednesday, January 14, 2009** at 519 West 1200 South Orem, Utah. All bidders wishing to bid on this project are required to attend this meeting.

Bids will be received until the hour of **2:00 PM on Wednesday, January 21, 2009** at DFCM, 4110 State Office Building, Salt Lake City, Utah 84114. Bids will be opened and read aloud in the DFCM Conference Room, 4110 State Office Building, Salt Lake City, Utah. NOTE: Bids must be received at 4110 State Office Building by the specified time.

A bid bond in the amount of five percent (5%) of the bid amount, made payable to the Division of Facilities Construction and Management on DFCM's bid bond form, shall accompany the bid.

The Division of Facilities Construction and Management reserves the right to reject any or all bids or to waive any formality or technicality in any bid in the interest of DFCM.

DIVISION OF FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION AND MANAGEMENT  
Joanna Reese, Contract Coordinator  
4110 State Office Building, Salt Lake City, Utah 84114

## **PROJECT DESCRIPTION**

The Murdock Guest House was built around 1982 as a residential single family dwelling. This project will include an extensive remodel changing the current use from a single family dwelling to office space shared by multiple people. Most fascists of construction will be used including structural, electrical, mechanical and architectural finishes.

**PROJECT SCHEDULE**

**PROJECT NAME: MURDOCK GUEST HOUSE ADAPTIVE RE-USE**  
**UTAH VALLEY UNIVERSITY – OREM, UTAH**  
**DFCM PROJECT NO. 08307790**

Event	Day	Date	Time	Place
Bidding Documents Available	Thursday	January 8, 2009	4:00 PM	DFCM 4110 State Office Bldg SLC, UT and the DFCM web site *
<b>Mandatory</b> Pre-bid Site Meeting	Wednesday	January 14, 2009	11:15 AM	519 West 1200 South Orem, Utah
Last Day to Submit Questions	Friday	January 16, 2009	4:00 PM	<i>Michael Ambre</i> – DFCM <a href="mailto:mambre@utah.gov">mambre@utah.gov</a> Fax 801-538-3267
Addendum Deadline (exception for bid delays)	Tuesday	January 20, 2009	2:00 PM	DFCM web site *
Prime Contractors Turn In Bid and Bid Bond	Wednesday	January 21, 2009	2:00 PM	DFCM 4110 State Office Bldg SLC, UT
Sub-contractor List Due	Thursday	January 22, 2009	2:00 PM	DFCM 4110 State Office Bldg SLC, UT Fax 801-538-3677
Substantial Completion Date	Friday	May 29, 2009	5:00 PM	

\* NOTE: DFCM's web site address is <http://dfcm.utah.gov>



STATE OF UTAH - DEPARTMENT OF ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES

**Division of Facilities Construction and Management**

**DFCM**

## BID FORM

NAME OF BIDDER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

To the Division of Facilities Construction and Management  
4110 State Office Building  
Salt Lake City, Utah 84114

The undersigned, responsive to the "Notice to Contractors" and in accordance with the "Instructions to Bidders", in compliance with your invitation for bids for the **Murdock Guest House Adaptive Re-Use – Utah Valley University – Orem, Utah – DFCM Project No. 08307790** and having examined the Contract Documents and the site of the proposed Work and being familiar with all of the conditions surrounding the construction of the proposed Project, including the availability of labor, hereby proposes to furnish all labor, materials and supplies as required for the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents as specified and within the time set forth and at the price stated below. This price is to cover all expenses incurred in performing the Work required under the Contract Documents of which this bid is a part:

I/We acknowledge receipt of the following Addenda: \_\_\_\_\_

For all work shown on the Drawings and described in the Specifications and Contract Documents, I/we agree to perform for the sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS (\$\_\_\_\_\_)  
(In case of discrepancy, written amount shall govern)

I/We guarantee that the Work will be Substantially Complete by May 29, 2009, should I/we be the successful bidder, and agree to pay liquidated damages in the amount of **\$300.00** per day for each day after expiration of the Contract Time as stated in Article 3 of the Contractor's Agreement.

This bid shall be good for 45 days after bid opening.

Enclosed is a 5% bid bond, as required, in the sum of \_\_\_\_\_

The undersigned Contractor's License Number for Utah is \_\_\_\_\_.

Upon receipt of notice of award of this bid, the undersigned agrees to execute the contract within ten (10) days, unless a shorter time is specified in the Contract Documents, and deliver acceptable Performance and Payment bonds in the prescribed form in the amount of 100% of the Contract Sum for faithful performance of the contract.

The Bid Bond attached, in the amount not less than five percent (5%) of the above bid sum, shall become the property of the Division of Facilities Construction and Management as liquidated damages for delay and additional expense caused thereby in the event that the contract is not executed and/or acceptable 100% Performance and Payment bonds are not delivered within the time set forth.

Type of Organization:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Any request and information related to Utah Preference Laws:

\_\_\_\_\_

Respectfully submitted,

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Bidder

ADDRESS:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Signature

# INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

## 1. Drawings and Specifications, Other Contract Documents

Drawings and Specifications, as well as other available Contract Documents, may be obtained as stated in the Invitation to Bid.

## 2. Bids

Before submitting a bid, each contractor shall carefully examine the Contract Documents, shall visit the site of the Work; shall fully inform themselves as to all existing conditions and limitations; and shall include in the bid the cost of all items required by the Contract Documents. If the bidder observes that portions of the Contract Documents are at variance with applicable laws, building codes, rules, regulations or contain obvious erroneous or uncoordinated information, the bidder shall promptly notify the DFCM Representative and the necessary changes shall be accomplished by Addendum.

The bid, bearing original signatures, must be typed or handwritten in ink on the Bid Form provided in the procurement documents and submitted in a sealed envelope at the location specified by the Invitation to Bid prior to the deadline for submission of bids.

Bid bond security, in the amount of five percent (5%) of the bid, made payable to the Division of Facilities Construction and Management, shall accompany bid. **THE BID BOND MUST BE ON THE BID BOND FORM PROVIDED IN THE PROCUREMENT DOCUMENTS IN ORDER TO BE CONSIDERED AN ACCEPTABLE BID.**

If the bid bond security is submitted on a bid bond form other than DFCM's required bid bond form, and the bid security meets all other legal requirements, the bidder will be allowed to provide an acceptable bid bond by the close of business on the next business day following notification by DFCM of submission of a defective bid bond security. **NOTE: A cashier's check cannot be used as a substitute for a bid bond.**

## 3. Contract and Bond

The Contractor's Agreement will be in the form found in the specifications. The Contract Time will be as indicated in the bid. The successful bidder, simultaneously with the execution of the Contract Agreement, will be required to furnish a performance bond and a payment bond, both bearing original signatures, upon the forms provided in the procurement documents. The performance and payment bonds shall be for an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract sum and secured from a company that meets the requirements specified in the requisite forms. Any bonding requirements for subcontractors will be specified in the Supplementary General Conditions.

**4. Listing of Subcontractors**

Listing of Subcontractors shall be as summarized in the “Instructions and Subcontractor’s List Form”, which are included as part of these Contract Documents. The Subcontractors List shall be delivered to DFCM or faxed to DFCM at (801)538-3677 within 24 hours of the bid opening. Requirements for listing additional subcontractors will be listed in the Contract Documents.

DFCM retains the right to audit or take other steps necessary to confirm compliance with requirements for the listing and changing of subcontractors. Any contractor who is found to not be in compliance with these requirements is subject to a debarment hearing and may be debarred from consideration for award of contracts for a period of up to three years.

**5. Interpretation of Drawings and Specifications**

If any person or entity contemplating submitting a bid is in doubt as to the meaning of any part of the drawings, specifications or other Contract Documents, such person shall submit to the DFCM Project Manager a request for an interpretation thereof. The person or entity submitting the request will be responsible for its prompt delivery. Any interpretation of the proposed documents will be made only by addenda posted on DFCM’s web site at <http://dfcm.utah.gov>. Neither the DFCM nor A/E will be responsible for any other explanations or interpretations of the proposed documents. A/E shall be deemed to refer to the architect or engineer hired by DFCM as the A/E or Consultant for the Project.

**6. Addenda**

Addenda will be posted on DFCM’s web site at <http://dfcm.utah.gov>. Contractors are responsible for obtaining information contained in each addendum from the web site. Addenda issued prior to the submittal deadline shall become part of the bidding process and must be acknowledged on the bid form. Failure to acknowledge addenda may result in disqualification from bidding.

**7. Award of Contract**

The Contract will be awarded as soon as possible to the lowest, responsive and responsible bidder, based on the lowest combination of base bid and acceptable prioritized alternates, provided the bid is reasonable, is in the interests of the State of Utah to accept and after applying the Utah Preference Laws in U.C.A. Title 63, Chapter 56. DFCM reserves the right to waive any technicalities or formalities in any bid or in the bidding. Alternates will be accepted on a prioritized basis with Alternate 1 being highest priority, Alternate 2 having second priority, etc.

**8. DFCM Contractor Performance Rating**

As a contractor completes each DFCM project, DFCM, the architect/engineer and the using agency will evaluate project performance based on the enclosed “DFCM Contractor Performance Rating” form. The ratings issued on this project will not affect this project but may affect the award on future projects.

**9. Licensure**

The Contractor shall comply with and require all of its subcontractors to comply with the license laws as required by the State of Utah.

**10. Permits**

In concurrence with the requirements for permitting in the General Conditions, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to obtain the fugitive dust plan requirements from the Utah Division of Air Quality and the SWPPP requirements from the Utah Department of Environmental Quality and submit the completed forms and pay any permit fee that may be required for this specific project. Failure to obtain the required permit may result in work stoppage and/or fines from the regulating authority that will be the sole responsibility of the Contractor. Any delay to the project as a result of any such failure to obtain the permit or noncompliance with the permit shall not be eligible for any extension in the Contract Time.

**11. Right to Reject Bids**

DFCM reserves the right to reject any or all Bids.

**12. Time is of the Essence**

Time is of the essence in regard to all the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**13. Withdrawal of Bids**

Bids may be withdrawn on written request received from bidder prior to the time fixed for opening. Negligence on the part of the bidder in preparing the bid confers no right for the withdrawal of the bid after it has been opened.

**14. Product Approvals**

Where reference is made to one or more proprietary products in the Contract Documents, but restrictive descriptive materials of one or more manufacturer(s) is referred to in the Contract Documents, the products of other manufacturers will be accepted, provided they equal or exceed the standards set forth in the drawings and specifications and are compatible with the intent and purpose of



the design, subject to the written approval of the A/E. Such written approval must occur prior to the deadline established for the last scheduled addenda to be issued. The A/E's written approval will be in an issued addendum. If the descriptive material is not restrictive, the products of other manufacturers specified will be accepted without prior approval provided they are compatible with the intent and purpose of the design as determined by the A/E.

**15. Financial Responsibility of Contractors, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors**

Contractors shall respond promptly to any inquiry in writing by DFCM to any concern of financial responsibility of the contractor, subcontractor or sub-subcontractor.

**16. Debarment**

By submitting a bid, the Contractor certifies that neither it nor its principals, including project and site managers, have been, or are under consideration for, debarment or suspension, or any action that would exclude such from participation in a construction contract by any governmental department or agency. If the Contractor cannot certify this statement, attach to the bid a detailed written explanation which must be reviewed and approved by DFCM as part of the requirements for award of the Project.

## BID BOND

(Title 63, Chapter 56, U. C. A. 1953, as Amended)

### KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS:

That \_\_\_\_\_ hereinafter referred to as the "Principal," and \_\_\_\_\_, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, with its principal office in the City of \_\_\_\_\_ and authorized to transact business in this State and U. S. Department of the Treasury Listed, (Circular 570, Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Securities on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies); hereinafter referred to as the "Surety," are held and firmly bound unto the STATE OF UTAH, hereinafter referred to as the "Obligee," in the amount of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (5% of the accompanying bid), being the sum of this Bond to which payment the Principal and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

**THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH** that whereas the Principal has submitted to Obligee the accompanying bid incorporated by reference herein, dated as shown, to enter into a contract in writing for the \_\_\_\_\_ Project.

**NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITION OF THE ABOVE OBLIGATION IS SUCH**, that if the said principal does not execute a contract and give bond to be approved by the Obligee for the faithful performance thereof within ten (10) days after being notified in writing of such contract to the principal, then the sum of the amount stated above will be forfeited to the State of Utah as liquidated damages and not as a penalty; if the said principal shall execute a contract and give bond to be approved by the Obligee for the faithful performance thereof within ten (10) days after being notified in writing of such contract to the Principal, then this obligation shall be null and void. It is expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all defaults of the Principal hereunder shall be the full penal sum of this Bond. The Surety, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that obligations of the Surety under this Bond shall be for a term of sixty (60) days from actual date of the bid opening.

**PROVIDED, HOWEVER**, that this Bond is executed pursuant to provisions of Title 63, Chapter 56, Utah Code Annotated, 1953, as amended, and all liabilities on this Bond shall be determined in accordance with said provisions to same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the above bounden parties have executed this instrument under their several seals on the date indicated below, the name and corporate seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

**DATED** this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_.

**Principal's name and address (if other than a corporation):**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**Principal's name and address (if a corporation):**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Affix Corporate Seal)

**Surety's name and address:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_ )  
 ) ss.  
COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_ )

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Attorney-in-Fact (Affix Corporate Seal)

On this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_, personally appeared before me \_\_\_\_\_, whose identity is personally known to me or proved to me on the basis of satisfactory evidence, and who, being by me duly sworn, did say that he/she is the Attorney-in-fact of the above-named Surety Company, and that he/she is duly authorized to execute the same and has complied in all respects with the laws of Utah in reference to becoming sole surety upon bonds, undertakings and obligations, and that he/she acknowledged to me that as Attorney-in-fact executed the same.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_.

My Commission Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Resides at: \_\_\_\_\_

Agency: \_\_\_\_\_  
Agent: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

NOTARY PUBLIC

Approved As To Form: May 25, 2005  
By Alan S. Bachman, Asst Attorney General

**Division of Facilities Construction and****INSTRUCTIONS AND SUBCONTRACTORS LIST FORM**

The three low bidders, as well as all other bidders that desire to be considered, are required by law to submit to DFCM within 24 hours of bid opening a list of **ALL** first-tier subcontractors, including the subcontractor's name, bid amount and other information required by Building Board Rule and as stated in these Contract Documents, based on the following:

**DOLLAR AMOUNTS FOR LISTING**

**PROJECTS UNDER \$500,000: ALL FIRST-TIER SUBS \$20,000 OR OVER MUST BE LISTED**  
**PROJECTS \$500,000 OR MORE: ALL FIRST-TIER SUBS \$35,000 OR OVER MUST BE LISTED**

- Any additional subcontractors identified in the bid documents shall also be listed.
- The DFCM Director may not consider any bid submitted by a bidder if the bidder fails to submit a subcontractor list meeting the requirements of State law.
- List subcontractors for base bid as well as the impact on the list that the selection of any alternate may have.
- Bidder may not list more than one subcontractor to perform the same work.
- If there are no subcontractors for the job that are required to be reported by State law (either because there are no subcontractors that will be used on the project or because there are no first-tier subcontractors over the dollar amounts referred to above), then you do not need to submit a sublist. If you do not submit a sublist, it will be deemed to be a representation by you that there are no subcontractors on the job that are required to be reported under State law. At any time, DFCM reserves the right to inquire, for security purposes, as to the identification of the subcontractors at any tier that will be on the worksite.

**LICENSURE:**

The subcontractor's name, the type of work, the subcontractor's bid amount, and the subcontractor's license number as issued by DOPL, if such license is required under Utah Law, shall be listed. Bidder shall certify that all subcontractors, required to be licensed, are licensed as required by State law. A subcontractor includes a trade contractor or specialty contractor and does not include suppliers who provide only materials, equipment, or supplies to a contractor or subcontractor.

**'SPECIAL EXCEPTION':**

A bidder may list 'Special Exception' in place of a subcontractor when the bidder intends to obtain a subcontractor to perform the work at a later date because the bidder was unable to obtain a qualified or reasonable bid under the provisions of U.C.A. Section 63A-5-208(4). The bidder shall insert the term 'Special Exception' for that category of work, and shall provide documentation with the subcontractor list describing the bidder's efforts to obtain a bid of a qualified subcontractor at a reasonable cost and why the bidder was unable to obtain a qualified subcontractor bid. The Director must find that the bidder complied in good faith with State law requirements for any 'Special Exception' designation, in order for the bid to be considered. If awarded the contract, the Director shall supervise the bidder's efforts to obtain a qualified subcontractor bid. The amount of the awarded contract may not be adjusted to reflect the actual amount of the subcontractor's bid. Any listing of 'Special Exception' on the sublist form shall also include amount allocated for that work.

**GROUND FOR DISQUALIFICATION:**

The Director may not consider any bid submitted by a bidder if the bidder fails to submit a subcontractor list meeting the requirements of State law. Director may withhold awarding the contract to a particular bidder if one or more of the proposed subcontractors are considered by the Director to be unqualified to do the Work or for

**INSTRUCTIONS AND SUBCONTRACTORS LIST FORM**  
**Page No. 2**

such other reason in the best interest of the State of Utah. Notwithstanding any other provision in these instructions, if there is a good faith error on the sublist form, at the sole discretion of the Director, the Director may provide notice to the contractor and the contractor shall have 24 hours to submit the correction to the Director. If such correction is submitted timely, then the sublist requirements shall be considered met.

**CHANGES OF SUBCONTRACTORS SPECIFICALLY IDENTIFIED ON SUBLIST FORM:**

Subsequent to twenty-four hours after the bid opening, the contractor may change its listed subcontractors only after receiving written permission from the Director based on complying with all of the following criteria.

- (1) The contractor has established in writing that the change is in the best interest of the State and that the contractor establishes an appropriate reason for the change, which may include, but not is not limited to, the following reasons: the original subcontractor has failed to perform, or is not qualified or capable of performing, and/or the subcontractor has requested in writing to be released.
- (2) The circumstances related to the request for the change do not indicate any bad faith in the original listing of the subcontractors.
- (3) Any requirement set forth by the Director to ensure that the process used to select a new subcontractor does not give rise to bid shopping.
- (4) Any increase in the cost of the subject subcontractor work is borne by the contractor.
- (5) Any decrease in the cost of the subject subcontractor work shall result in a deductive change order being issued for the contract for such decreased amount.
- (6) The Director will give substantial weight to whether the subcontractor has consented in writing to being removed unless the Contractor establishes that the subcontractor is not qualified for the work.

**EXAMPLE:**

Example of a list where there are only four subcontractors:

TYPE OF WORK	SUBCONTRACTOR, “SELF” OR “SPECIAL EXCEPTION”	SUBCONTRACTOR BID AMOUNT	CONTRACTOR LICENSE #
ELECTRICAL	ABCD Electric Inc.	\$350,000.00	123456789000
LANDSCAPING	“Self” *	\$300,000.00	123456789000
CONCRETE (ALTERNATE #1)	XYZ Concrete Inc	\$298,000.00	987654321000
MECHANICAL	“Special Exception” (attach documentation)	Fixed at: \$350,000.00	(TO BE PROVIDED AFTER OBTAINING SUBCONTRACTOR)

\* Bidders may list “self”, but it is not required.

**PURSUANT TO STATE LAW - SUBCONTRACTOR BID AMOUNTS CONTAINED IN THIS  
SUBCONTRACTOR LIST SHALL NOT BE DISCLOSED UNTIL THE CONTRACT HAS BEEN AWARDED.**



## Division of Facilities Construction and

## SUBCONTRACTORS LIST

FAX TO 801-538-3677

PROJECT TITLE: \_\_\_\_\_

Caution: You must read and comply fully with instructions.

TYPE OF WORK	SUBCONTRACTOR, "SELF" OR "SPECIAL EXCEPTION"	SUBCONTRACTOR BID AMOUNT	CONT. LICENSE #

We certify that:

1. This list includes all subcontractors as required by the instructions, including those related to the base bid as well as any alternates.
2. We have listed "Self" or "Special Exception" in accordance with the instructions.
3. All subcontractors are appropriately licensed as required by State law.

FIRM: \_\_\_\_\_

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

SIGNED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

**NOTICE:** FAILURE TO SUBMIT THIS FORM, PROPERLY COMPLETED AND SIGNED, AS REQUIRED IN THESE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, SHALL BE GROUNDS FOR OWNER'S REFUSAL TO ENTER INTO A WRITTEN CONTRACT WITH BIDDER. ACTION MAY BE TAKEN AGAINST BIDDERS BID BOND AS DEEMED APPROPRIATE BY OWNER. ATTACH A SECOND PAGE IF NECESSARY.

## CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT

FOR:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

THIS CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT, made and entered into this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_, by and between the DIVISION OF FACILITIES CONSTRUCTION AND MANAGEMENT, hereinafter referred to as "DFCM", and \_\_\_\_\_, incorporated in the State of \_\_\_\_\_ and authorized to do business in the State of Utah, hereinafter referred to as "Contractor", whose address is \_\_\_\_\_.

WITNESSETH: WHEREAS, DFCM intends to have Work performed at \_\_\_\_\_.

WHEREAS, Contractor agrees to perform the Work for the sum stated herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, DFCM and Contractor for the consideration provided in this Contractor's Agreement, agree as follows:

**ARTICLE 1. SCOPE OF WORK.** The Work to be performed shall be in accordance with the Contract Documents prepared by \_\_\_\_\_ and entitled "\_\_\_\_\_"

The DFCM General Conditions ("General Conditions") dated May 25, 2005 and Supplemental General Conditions dated July 15, 2008 ("also referred to as General Conditions") on file at the office of DFCM and available on the DFCM website, are hereby incorporated by reference as part of this Agreement and are included in the specifications for this Project. All terms used in this Contractor's Agreement shall be as defined in the Contract Documents, and in particular, the General Conditions.

The Contractor Agrees to furnish labor, materials and equipment to complete the Work as required in the Contract Documents which are hereby incorporated by reference. It is understood and agreed by the parties hereto that all Work shall be performed as required in the Contract Documents and shall be subject to inspection and approval of DFCM or its authorized representative. The relationship of the Contractor to the DFCM hereunder is that of an independent Contractor.

**ARTICLE 2. CONTRACT SUM.** The DFCM agrees to pay and the Contractor agrees to accept in full performance of this Contractor's Agreement, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS AND NO CENTS (\$\_\_\_\_\_.00), which is the base bid, and which sum also includes the cost of a 100% Performance Bond and a 100%

CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT  
PAGE NO. 2

Payment Bond as well as all insurance requirements of the Contractor. Said bonds have already been posted by the Contractor pursuant to State law. The required proof of insurance certificates have been delivered to DFCM in accordance with the General Conditions before the execution of this Contractor's Agreement.

**ARTICLE 3. TIME OF COMPLETION AND DELAY REMEDY.** The Work shall be Substantially Complete by \_\_\_\_\_. Contractor agrees to pay liquidated damages in the amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_ per day for each day after expiration of the Contract Time until the Contractor achieves Substantial Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents, if Contractor's delay makes the damages applicable. The provision for liquidated damages is: (a) to compensate the DFCM for delay only; (b) is provided for herein because actual damages can not be readily ascertained at the time of execution of this Contractor's Agreement; (c) is not a penalty; and (d) shall not prevent the DFCM from maintaining Claims for other non-delay damages, such as costs to complete or remedy defective Work.

No action shall be maintained by the Contractor, including its or Subcontractor or suppliers at any tier, against the DFCM or State of Utah for damages or other claims due to losses attributable to hindrances or delays from any cause whatsoever, including acts and omissions of the DFCM or its officers, employees or agents, except as expressly provided in the General Conditions. The Contractor may receive a written extension of time, signed by the DFCM, in which to complete the Work under this Contractor's Agreement in accordance with the General Conditions.

**ARTICLE 4. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.** The Contract Documents consist of this Contractor's Agreement, the Conditions of the Contract (DFCM General Conditions, Supplementary and other Conditions), the Drawings, Specifications, Addenda and Modifications. The Contract Documents shall also include the bidding documents, including the Invitation to Bid, Instructions to Bidders/ Proposers and the Bid/Proposal, to the extent not in conflict therewith and other documents and oral presentations that are documented as an attachment to the contract.

All such documents are hereby incorporated by reference herein. Any reference in this Contractor's Agreement to certain provisions of the Contract Documents shall in no way be construed as to lessen the importance or applicability of any other provisions of the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 5. PAYMENT.** The DFCM agrees to pay the Contractor from time to time as the Work progresses, but not more than once each month after the date of Notice to Proceed, and only upon Certificate of the A/E for Work performed during the preceding calendar month, ninety-five percent (95%) of the value of the labor performed and ninety-five percent (95%) of the value of materials furnished in place or on the site. The Contractor agrees to furnish to the DFCM invoices for materials purchased and on the site but not installed, for which the Contractor requests payment and agrees to

safeguard and protect such equipment or materials and is responsible for safekeeping thereof and if such be stolen, lost or destroyed, to replace same.

Such evidence of labor performed and materials furnished as the DFCM may reasonably require shall be supplied by the Contractor at the time of request for Certificate of Payment on account. Materials for which payment has been made cannot be removed from the job site without DFCM's written approval. Five percent (5%) of the earned amount shall be retained from each monthly payment. The retainage, including any additional retainage imposed and the release of any retainage, shall be in accordance with UCA 13-8-5 as amended. Contractor shall also comply with the requirements of UCA 13-8-5, including restrictions of retainage regarding subcontractors and the distribution of interest earned on the retention proceeds. The DFCM shall not be responsible for enforcing the Contractor's obligations under State law in fulfilling the retention law requirements with subcontractors at any tier.

**ARTICLE 6. INDEBTEDNESS.** Before final payment is made, the Contractor must submit evidence satisfactory to the DFCM that all payrolls, materials bills, subcontracts at any tier and outstanding indebtedness in connection with the Work have been properly paid. Final Payment will be made after receipt of said evidence, final acceptance of the Work by the DFCM as well as compliance with the applicable provisions of the General Conditions.

Contractor shall respond immediately to any inquiry in writing by DFCM as to any concern of financial responsibility and DFCM reserves the right to request any waivers, releases or bonds from Contractor in regard to any rights of Subcontractors (including suppliers) at any tier or any third parties prior to any payment by DFCM to Contractor.

**ARTICLE 7. ADDITIONAL WORK.** It is understood and agreed by the parties hereto that no money will be paid to the Contractor for additional labor or materials furnished unless a new contract in writing or a Modification hereof in accordance with the General Conditions and the Contract Documents for such additional labor or materials has been executed. The DFCM specifically reserves the right to modify or amend this Contractor's Agreement and the total sum due hereunder either by enlarging or restricting the scope of the Work.

**ARTICLE 8. INSPECTIONS.** The Work shall be inspected for acceptance in accordance with the General Conditions.

**ARTICLE 9. DISPUTES.** Any dispute, PRE or Claim between the parties shall be subject to the provisions of Article 7 of the General Conditions. DFCM reserves all rights to pursue its rights and remedies as provided in the General Conditions.

**ARTICLE 10. TERMINATION, SUSPENSION OR ABANDONMENT.** This Contractor's Agreement may be terminated, suspended or abandoned in accordance with the General Conditions.



**ARTICLE 11. DFCM'S RIGHT TO WITHHOLD CERTAIN AMOUNT AND MAKE USE THEREOF.** The DFCM may withhold from payment to the Contractor such amount as, in DFCM's judgment, may be necessary to pay just claims against the Contractor or Subcontractor at any tier for labor and services rendered and materials furnished in and about the Work. The DFCM may apply such withheld amounts for the payment of such claims in DFCM's discretion. In so doing, the DFCM shall be deemed the agent of Contractor and payment so made by the DFCM shall be considered as payment made under this Contractor's Agreement by the DFCM to the Contractor. DFCM shall not be liable to the Contractor for any such payment made in good faith. Such withholdings and payments may be made without prior approval of the Contractor and may be also be prior to any determination as a result of any dispute, PRE, Claim or litigation.

**ARTICLE 12. INDEMNIFICATION.** The Contractor shall comply with the indemnification provisions of the General Conditions.

**ARTICLE 13. SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNMENT OF CONTRACT.** The DFCM and Contractor, respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to the other party to this Agreement, and to partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives of such other party with respect to all covenants, provisions, rights and responsibilities of this Contractor's Agreement. The Contractor shall not assign this Contractor's Agreement without the prior written consent of the DFCM, nor shall the Contractor assign any moneys due or to become due as well as any rights under this Contractor's Agreement, without prior written consent of the DFCM.

**ARTICLE 14. RELATIONSHIP OF THE PARTIES.** The Contractor accepts the relationship of trust and confidence established by this Contractor's Agreement and covenants with the DFCM to cooperate with the DFCM and A/E and use the Contractor's best skill, efforts and judgment in furthering the interest of the DFCM; to furnish efficient business administration and supervision; to make best efforts to furnish at all times an adequate supply of workers and materials; and to perform the Work in the best and most expeditious and economic manner consistent with the interests of the DFCM.

**ARTICLE 15. AUTHORITY TO EXECUTE AND PERFORM AGREEMENT.** Contractor and DFCM each represent that the execution of this Contractor's Agreement and the performance thereunder is within their respective duly authorized powers.

**ARTICLE 16. ATTORNEY FEES AND COSTS.** Except as otherwise provided in the dispute resolution provisions of the General Conditions, the prevailing party shall be entitled to reasonable attorney fees and costs incurred in any action in the District Court and/or appellate body to enforce this Contractor's Agreement or recover damages or any other action as a result of a breach thereof.

CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT  
PAGE NO. 5

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the parties hereto have executed this Contractor's Agreement on the day and year stated hereinabove.

**CONTRACTOR:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature Date

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

State of \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_)  
County of \_\_\_\_\_)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Please type/print name clearly

On this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, personally appeared before me, \_\_\_\_\_, whose identity is personally known to me (or proved to me on the basis of satisfactory evidence) and who by me duly sworn (or affirmed), did say that he (she) is the \_\_\_\_\_ (title or office) of the firm and that said document was signed by him (her) in behalf of said firm.

(SEAL)

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Notary Public**

My Commission Expires \_\_\_\_\_

APPROVED AS TO AVAILABILITY  
OF FUNDS:

\_\_\_\_\_  
David D. Williams, Jr. Date  
DFCM Administrative Services Director

**DIVISION OF FACILITIES  
CONSTRUCTION AND MANAGEMENT**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Lynn A. Hinrichs Date  
Assistant Director Construction Management

APPROVED AS TO FORM:  
ATTORNEY GENERAL  
July 15, 2008  
By: Alan S. Bachman  
Asst Attorney General

APPROVED FOR EXPENDITURE:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Division of Finance Date

# PERFORMANCE BOND

(Title 63, Chapter 56, U. C. A. 1953, as Amended)

That \_\_\_\_\_ hereinafter referred to as the "Principal" and \_\_\_\_\_, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, with its principal office in the City of \_\_\_\_\_ and authorized to transact business in this State and U. S. Department of the Treasury Listed (Circular 570, Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Securities on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies); hereinafter referred to as the "Surety," are held and firmly bound unto the State of Utah, hereinafter referred to as the "Obligee," in the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ DOLLARS (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

**WHEREAS**, the Principal has entered into a certain written Contract with the Obligee, dated the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, to construct \_\_\_\_\_ in the County of \_\_\_\_\_, State of Utah, Project No. \_\_\_\_\_, for the approximate sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_), which Contract is hereby incorporated by reference herein.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, the condition of this obligation is such that if the said Principal shall faithfully perform the Contract in accordance with the Contract Documents including, but not limited to, the Plans, Specifications and conditions thereof, the one year performance warranty, and the terms of the Contract as said Contract may be subject to Modifications or changes, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

No right of action shall accrue on this bond to or for the use of any person or corporation other than the state named herein or the heirs, executors, administrators or successors of the Owner.

The parties agree that the dispute provisions provided in the Contract Documents apply and shall constitute the sole dispute procedures of the parties.

**PROVIDED, HOWEVER**, that this Bond is executed pursuant to the Provisions of Title 63, Chapter 56, Utah Code Annotated, 1953, as amended, and all liabilities on this Bond shall be determined in accordance with said provisions to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

**WITNESS OR ATTESTATION:**

**PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Seal)

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**WITNESS OR ATTESTATION:**

**SURETY:**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Attorney-in-Fact (Seal)

STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_ )  
 ) ss.  
COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_ )

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, personally appeared before me \_\_\_\_\_, whose identity is personally known to me or proved to me on the basis of satisfactory evidence, and who, being by me duly sworn, did say that he/she is the Attorney in-fact of the above-named Surety Company and that he/she is duly authorized to execute the same and has complied in all respects with the laws of Utah in reference to becoming sole surety upon bonds, undertakings and obligations, and that he/she acknowledged to me that as Attorney-in-fact executed the same.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Resides at: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
NOTARY PUBLIC

Agency: \_\_\_\_\_  
Agent: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Approved As To Form: May 25, 2005  
By Alan S. Bachman, Asst Attorney General

# PAYMENT BOND

(Title 63, Chapter 56, U. C. A. 1953, as Amended)

## KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS:

That \_\_\_\_\_ hereinafter referred to as the "Principal," and \_\_\_\_\_, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_ authorized to do business in this State and U. S. Department of the Treasury Listed (Circular 570, Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Securities on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies); with its principal office in the City of \_\_\_\_\_, hereinafter referred to as the "Surety," are held and firmly bound unto the State of Utah hereinafter referred to as the "Obligee," in the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_) for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

**WHEREAS**, the Principal has entered into a certain written Contract with the Obligee, dated the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, to construct \_\_\_\_\_ in the County of \_\_\_\_\_, State of Utah, Project No. \_\_\_\_\_ for the approximate sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_), which contract is hereby incorporated by reference herein.

**NOW, THEREFORE**, the condition of this obligation is such that if the said Principal shall pay all claimants supplying labor or materials to Principal or Principal's Subcontractors in compliance with the provisions of Title 63, Chapter 56, of Utah Code Annotated, 1953, as amended, and in the prosecution of the Work provided for in said Contract, then, this obligation shall be void; otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

That said Surety to this Bond, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no changes, extensions of time, alterations or additions to the terms of the Contract or to the Work to be performed thereunder, or the specifications or drawings accompanying same shall in any way affect its obligation on this Bond, and does hereby waive notice of any such changes, extensions of time, alterations or additions to the terms of the Contract or to the Work or to the specifications or drawings and agrees that they shall become part of the Contract Documents.

**PROVIDED, HOWEVER**, that this Bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Title 63, Chapter 56, Utah Code Annotated, 1953, as amended, and all liabilities on this Bond shall be determined in accordance with said provisions to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

## WITNESS OR ATTESTATION:

\_\_\_\_\_

## PRINCIPAL:

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Seal)

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

## WITNESS OR ATTESTATION:

\_\_\_\_\_

## SURETY:

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Attorney-in-Fact (Seal)

STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_ )  
 ) ss.  
COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_ )

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, personally appeared before me \_\_\_\_\_, whose identity is personally known to me or proved to me on the basis of satisfactory evidence, and who, being by me duly sworn, did say that he/she is the Attorney-in-fact of the above-named Surety Company, and that he/she is duly authorized to execute the same and has complied in all respects with the laws of Utah in reference to becoming sole surety upon bonds, undertakings and obligations, and that he/she acknowledged to me that as Attorney-in-fact executed the same.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

My commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_  
Resides at: \_\_\_\_\_

NOTARY PUBLIC

**Agency:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Agent:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Address:** \_\_\_\_\_  
**Phone:** \_\_\_\_\_

Approved As To Form: May 25, 2005  
By Alan S. Bachman, Asst Attorney General

**CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

PROJECT \_\_\_\_\_ PROJECT NO: \_\_\_\_\_

AGENCY/INSTITUTION \_\_\_\_\_

AREA ACCEPTED \_\_\_\_\_

The Work performed under the subject Contract has been reviewed on this date and found to be Substantially Completed as defined in the General Conditions; including that the construction is sufficiently completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, as modified by any change orders agreed to by the parties, so that the State of Utah can occupy the Project or specified area of the Project for the use for which it is intended.

The DFCM - (Owner) accepts the Project or specified area of the Project as Substantially Complete and will assume full possession of the Project or specified area of the Project at \_\_\_\_\_ (time) on \_\_\_\_\_ (date).

The DFCM accepts the Project for occupancy and agrees to assume full responsibility for maintenance and operation, including utilities and insurance, of the Project subject to the itemized responsibilities and/or exceptions noted below:

The Owner acknowledges receipt of the following closeout and transition materials:

As-built Drawings

O &amp; M Manuals

Warranty Documents

Completion of Training  
Requirements

A list of items to be completed or corrected (Punch List) is attached hereto. The failure to include an item on it does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, including authorized changes thereof. The amount of \_\_\_\_\_ (Twice the value of the punch list work) shall be retained to assure the completion of the punch list work.

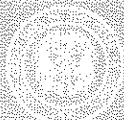
The Contractor shall complete or correct the Work on the list of (Punch List) items appended hereto within \_\_\_\_\_ calendar days from the above date of issuance of this Certificate. The amount withheld pending completion of the list of items noted and agreed to shall be: \$ \_\_\_\_\_. If the list of items is not completed within the time allotted the Owner has the right to be compensated for the delays and/or complete the work with the help of independent contractor at the expense of the retained project funds. If the retained project funds are insufficient to cover the delay/completion damages, the Owner shall be promptly reimbursed for the balance of the funds needed to compensate the Owner.

\_\_\_\_\_  
CONTRACTOR (include name of firm) by: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature) DATE

\_\_\_\_\_  
A/E (include name of firm) by: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature) DATE

\_\_\_\_\_  
USING INSTITUTION OR AGENCY by: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature) DATE

\_\_\_\_\_  
DFCM (Owner) by: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature) DATE

**General Contractor Performance Rating Form**

Project Name:		DFCM Project#	
Contractor:  (ABC Construction, John Doe, 111-111-1111)	A/E:  (ABC Architects, Jane Doe, 222-222-2222)	Original Contract Amount:	Final Contract Amount:
DFCM Project Manager:		Contract Date:	
Completion Date:		Date of Rating:	

Rating Guideline	QUALITY OF PRODUCT OR SERVICES	COST CONTROL	TIMELINESS OF PERFORMANCE	BUSINESS RELATIONS
<b>5-Exceptional</b>	Contractor has demonstrated an exceptional performance level in any of the above four categories that justifies adding a point to the score. Contractor performance clearly exceeds the performance levels described as "Very Good"			
<b>4-Very Good</b>	Contractor is in compliance with contract requirements and/or delivers quality product/service.	Contractor is effective in managing costs and submits current, accurate, and complete billings	Contractor is effective in meeting milestones and delivery schedule	Response to inquiries, technical/service/administrative issues is effective
<b>3-Satisfactory</b>	Minor inefficiencies/errors have been identified	Contractor is usually effective in managing cost	Contractor is usually effective in meeting milestones and delivery schedules	Response to inquires technical/service/administrative issues is somewhat effective
<b>2-Marginal</b>	Major problems have been encountered	Contractor is having major difficulty managing cost effectively	Contractor is having major difficulty meeting milestones and delivery schedule	Response to inquiries, technical/service/administrative issues is marginally effective
<b>1-Unsatisfactory</b>	Contractor is not in compliance and is jeopardizing achievement of contract objectives	Contractor is unable to manage costs effectively	Contractor delays are jeopardizing performance of contract objectives	Response to inquiries, technical/service/administrative issues is not effective

<b>1. Rate Contractors quality of workmanship, management of sub contractor performance, project cleanliness, organization and safety requirement.</b>	<b>Score</b>
<u>Agency Comments:</u>	
<u>A &amp; E Comments:</u>	
<u>DFCM Project Manager Comments:</u>	

<b>2. Rate Contractor administration of project costs, change orders and financial management of the project budget.</b>	<b>Score</b>
<u>Agency Comments:</u>	
<u>A &amp; E Comments:</u>	
<u>DFCM Project Manager Comments:</u>	

<b>3. Rate Contractor's performance and adherence to Project Schedule, delay procedures and requirements of substantial completion, inspection and punch-list performance.</b>	<b>Score</b>
<u>Agency Comments:</u>	
<u>A &amp; E Comments:</u>	
<u>DFCM Project Manager Comments:</u>	

<b>4. Evaluate performance of contractor management team including project manager, engineer and superintendent also include in the rating team's ability to work well with owner, user agency and consultants.</b>	<b>Score</b>
<u>Agency Comments:</u>	
<u>A &amp; E Comments:</u>	
<u>DFCM Project Manager Comments:</u>	

5. Rate success of Contractor's management plan, completion of the plans mitigation of project risks and performance of value engineering concepts.	Score
<u>Agency Comments:</u>	
<u>A &amp; E Comments:</u>	
<u>DFCM Project Manager Comments:</u>	

Signed by:	Date:	Mean Score
------------	-------	------------

**Additional Comments:**

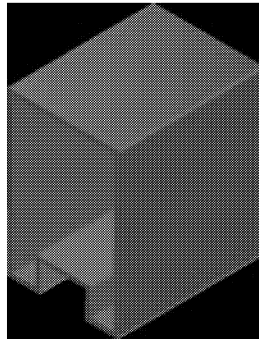


**SPECIFICATION FOR:**

**UVU  
Murdock Guest House  
Adaptive Re-Use  
519 West 1200 South  
Orem, Utah**

**DFCM Project Number  
08307790**

**12/19/2008**



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION	SECTION TITLE
----------	---------------

## DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

Section 00 72 00	General Conditions
------------------	--------------------

## DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Section 01 11 00	Summary
Section 01 26 00	Contract Modification Procedures
Section 01 29 00	Payment Procedures
Section 01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
Section 01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
Section 01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
Section 01 42 19	Definitions and Standards
Section 01 43 00	Quality Control Services
Section 01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
Section 01 60 00	Product Requirements
Section 01 73 00	Execution Requirements
Section 01 73 29	Cutting and Patching
Section 01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
Section 01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
Section 01 78 39	Project Record Documents
Section 01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
Section 01 90 00	Design Selections

## DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

Section 02 41 00	Selective Demolition
------------------	----------------------

## DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

Section 03 30 00	Cast-in-Place Concrete
------------------	------------------------

## DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

Section 04 21 13	Brick Masonry Assemblies
------------------	--------------------------

## DIVISION 05 - METALS

Section 05 50 00	Metal Fabrications
------------------	--------------------

## **DIVISION 06 - WOOD AND PLASTICS**

Section 06 10 00	Rough Carpentry
Section 06 10 63	Exterior Rough Carpentry
Section 06 16 00	Sheathing
Section 06 40 23	Interior Architectural Woodwork

## **DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

Section 07 21 00	Building Insulation
Section 07 46 00	Siding
Section 07 84 00	Through-Penetration Firestop Systems
Section 07 92 00	Joint Sealants

## **DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS**

Section 08 14 00	Flush Wood Doors
Section 08 31 00	Access Doors and Frames
Section 08 53 13	Vinyl Windows
Section 08 71 00	Door Hardware
Section 08 80 00	Glazing

## **DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

Section 09 22 16	Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing
Section 09 29 00	Gypsum Board
Section 09 30 00	Ceramic Tile
Section 09 51 00	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
Section 09 65 19	Resilient Floor Tile
Section 09 68 13	Carpet Tile
Section 09 91 00	Painting

## **DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

Section 10 28 13	Toilet and Bath Accessories
------------------	-----------------------------

## **DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING SYSTEMS**

Section 14 42 00 Wheelchair Lifts

## **DIVISION 15 – MECHANICAL**

Section 15010	General Requirements
Section 15050	Basic Materials & Methods
Section 15080	Mechanical Insulation
Section 15140	Domestic Water Piping
Section 15145	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
Section 15150	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
Section 15155	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
Section 15183	Refrigerant Piping
Section 15195	Facility Natural-Gas Piping
Section 15410	Plumbing Fixtures
Section 15486	Water Heaters
Section 15530	Furnaces
Section 15550	Breeching Chimneys and Stacks
Section 15671	Condensing Units
Section 15815	Metal Ducts
Section 15820	Duct Accessories
Section 15838	Exhaust Fans
Section 15855	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles
Section 15900	HVAC Instrumentation and Controls
Section 15950	Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

## **DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

Refer to Division 15

## **DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING**

Refer to Division 15

## **DIVISION 25 – INTEGRATED AUTOMATION**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

Section 26 05 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
Section 26 05 19	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
Section 26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 33	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 48	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 53	Identification for Electrical Systems
Section 26 24 16	Panelboards
Section 26 27 26	Wiring Devices
Section 26 28 13	Fuses
Section 26 28 16	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
Section 26 29 13	Enclosed Controllers

## **DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATION**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

Section 32 13 13	Cement Concrete Pavement
Section 32 14 00	Unit Paving

## **DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES**

Not Used

## **DIVISION 34 thru DIVISION 48**

Not Used

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**



# **GENERAL CONDITIONS**

May 25, 2005

## **Table of Contents**

### **ARTICLE 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS.**

#### 1.1 Basic Definitions.

### **ARTICLE 2. DFCM.**

#### 2.1 Information and Services Required of the DFCM.

- 2.1.1 DFCM's Representative.
- 2.1.2 Specialists and Inspectors.
- 2.1.3 Surveys and Legal Description.
- 2.1.4 Prompt Information and Services.
- 2.1.5 Copies of Drawings and Project Manuals (For Construction).
- 2.1.6 Other Duties.

#### 2.2 Construction By DFCM or By Separate Contractors

- 2.2.1 DFCM's Right To Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts.
  - (1) In General.
  - (2) Coordination and Revisions.
- 2.2.2 Mutual Responsibility.
  - (1) Contractor Coordination.
  - (2) Reporting Problems to DFCM.
  - (3) Costs.
  - (4) Contractor Remedial Work.

### **ARTICLE 3. A/E**

#### 3.1 A/E's Administration of the Contract.

- 3.1.1 In General.
- 3.1.2 Site Visits.
- 3.1.3 Communications Facilitating Contract Administration.
- 3.1.4 A/E May Reject Work, Order Inspection, Tests.
- 3.1.5 A/E Review Contractor's Submittals.

#### 3.2 Ownership and Use of A/E's Drawings, Specifications and Other Documents.

### **ARTICLE 4. CONTRACTOR**

#### 4.1 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions By Contractor.

- 4.1.1 Reviewing Contract Documents, Information, Reporting Errors, Inconsistencies or Omissions.
- 4.1.2 Field Conditions.
- 4.1.3 Perform in Accordance with Contract Documents and Submittals.
- 4.1.4 Performance to Produce the Complete System and Intended Results.
- 4.1.5 Intent and Hierarchy.
- 4.1.6 Dividing Work and Contractor Representation.
- 4.1.7 Planning and Priority.

#### 4.2 Supervision and Construction Procedures.

- 4.2.1 Supervision and Control.
- 4.2.2 Responsibility.
- 4.2.3 Not Relieved of Obligations.
- 4.2.4 Inspections and Approvals.

#### 4.3 Labor and Materials.

- 4.3.1 Payment by Contractor.
- 4.3.2 Discipline and Competence.

#### 4.4 Taxes and Other Payments to Government.

#### 4.5 Permits, Fees, Notices, Labor and Materials.

- 4.5.1 Permits and Fees.
- 4.5.2 Compliance With Public Authorities, Notices.
- 4.5.3 Correlation of Contract Documents and Enactments.

- 4.5.4 Failure to Give Notice.
- 4.6 Superintendent.
- 4.7 Time and Contractor's Construction Schedules.
  - 4.7.1 Progress and Completion.
    - (1) Time Is of the Essence; Complete Within Contract Time.
    - (2) Notice to Proceed and Insurance.
  - 4.7.2 Schedule Preparation.
  - 4.7.3 Initial Contract Time.
  - 4.7.4 Interim Completion Dates and Milestones.
  - 4.7.5 Schedule Content Requirements.
  - 4.7.6 DFCM's Right to Take Exceptions.
  - 4.7.7 Float Time.
  - 4.7.8 Initial Schedule Submission.
  - 4.7.9 Updates.
  - 4.7.10 Schedule of Submittals.
  - 4.7.11 Schedule Recovery.
  - 4.7.12 Schedule Changes and Modifications.
    - (1) Contract Time Change Requires Modification.
    - (2) Contractor Reordering, Resequencing and Changing Activity Durations.
    - (3) Changes In Contract Time.
  - 4.7.13 Excusable Delay.
    - (1) In General.
    - (2) Weather-Related Excusable Delays.
  - 4.7.14 Compensable Delay, Suspension or Interruption.
    - (1) Basic Conditions.
    - (2) Compensable Delay Formula.
    - (3) Period of Compensable Delay, Suspension or Interruption
    - (4) Concurrent Delay.
  - 4.7.15 Time Extension Requests.
  - 4.7.16 Liquidated Damages.
    - (1) In General.
    - (2) No Waiver of DFCM's Rights.
- 4.8 Documents and Samples at the Site, Certifying "As-Built".
- 4.9 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples.
  - 4.9.1 Not Contract Documents.
  - 4.9.2 Promptness.
  - 4.9.3 Not Perform Until A/E Approves.
  - 4.9.4 Representations by Contractor.
  - 4.9.5 Contractor's Liability.
  - 4.9.6 Direct Specific Attention to Revisions.

- 4.9.7 Informational Submittals.
- 4.9.8 Reliance on Professional Certification.
- 4.10 Use of Site.
  - 4.10.1 In General.
  - 4.10.2 Access to Neighboring Properties.
- 4.11 Access to Work.
- 4.12 Royalties and Patents.
- 4.13 Indemnification.
  - 4.13.1 In General.

#### **ARTICLE 5. SUBCONTRACTORS.**

- 5.1 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts For Portions of the Work.
  - 5.1.1 Approval Required.
  - 5.1.2 Business and Licensing Requirements.
  - 5.1.3 Subsequent Changes.
  - 5.1.4 Bonding of Subcontractors.
- 5.2 Subcontractual Relations.
  - 5.2.1 Comply With Contract Documents.
  - 5.2.2 Rights.
  - 5.2.3 Sub-Subcontractors.
  - 5.2.4 Document Copies.
- 5.3 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts.
  - 5.3.1 Conditions for Assignment to DFCM.

#### **ARTICLE 6. PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY.**

- 6.1 Safety of Persons and Property.
  - 6.1.1 Contractor Responsibility.
  - 6.1.2 Safety Program, Precautions.
  - 6.1.3 Compliance With Laws.
  - 6.1.4 Erect and Maintain Safeguards.
  - 6.1.5 Utmost Care.
  - 6.1.6 Prompt Remedy.
  - 6.1.7 Safety Designee.
  - 6.1.8 Load Safety.
  - 6.1.9 Off-Site Responsibility.
  - 6.1.10 Emergencies.
- 6.2 Hazardous Materials.
- 6.3 Historical and Archeological Considerations.
- 6.4 Contractor Liability.

#### **ARTICLE 7. MODIFICATIONS, REQUEST FOR INFORMATION, PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER, PRELIMINARY RESOLUTION EFFORTS AND CLAIMS PROCESS.**

- 7.1 Modifications: In General.
  - 7.1.1 Types of Modifications and Limitations.
  - 7.1.2 By Whom Issued.
  - 7.1.3 Contractor to Proceed Unless Otherwise Stated.
  - 7.1.4 Adjusting Unit Prices.

7.1.5 Special Notices Required In Order to Be Eligible For Any Contract Modification.

- (1) Concealed or Unknown Conditions.
- (2) Increase in Contract Time.

7.2 Contractor Initiated Requests.

7.2.1 The Request for Information, RFI, Process and Time to File.

7.2.2 Proposed Change Order ("PCO").

7.3 Proposal Request Initiated by DFCM.

7.3.1 If Agreement, Change Order Issued.

7.3.2 If Disagreement.

7.4 Evaluation of Proposal For Issuing Change Orders.

7.4.1 Adjusting Sum Based Upon Agreement.

7.4.2 DFCM Resolution of Sum and Standards in the Absence of an Agreement Under Paragraph 7.4.1.

7.4.3 Credits.

7.5 Construction Change Directives.

7.5.1 When Used and Contractor's Right to Challenge.

7.5.2 Proceed With Work and Notify DFCM About Adjustment Method.

7.5.3 Interim Payments by DFCM.

7.6 A/E's Supplemental Instruction

7.7 Procedure For Preliminary Resolution Efforts.

7.7.1 Request For Preliminary Resolution Effort (Pre).

7.7.2 Time For Filing.

7.7.3 Content Requirement.

7.7.4 Supplementation.

7.7.5 Subcontractors.

7.7.6 Pre Resolution Procedure.

7.7.7 Contractor Required to Continue Performance.

7.7.8 Decision.

7.7.9 Decision Final Unless Claim Submitted.

7.7.10 Extension Requires Mutual Agreement.

7.7.11 If Decision Not Issued.

7.7.12 Payment for Performance.

7.8 Resolution of Claim.

7.8.1 Claim.

7.8.2 Subcontractors.

7.8.3 Time for Filing.

7.8.4 Content Requirement.

7.8.5 Extension of Time to Submit Documentation.

7.8.6 Contractor Required to Continue Performance.

7.8.7 Agreement of Claimant on Method and Person(s) Evaluating the Claim.

7.8.8 The Evaluation Process,

7.8.9 Timeframes of Evaluator(s), Director's Determination, Administrative Appeal to the Executive Director and Judicial Review.

7.8.9 Appeal Process Prerequisite for Further Consideration or Judicial Review.

7.9 Payment of Claim.

7.10 Allocation of Costs of Claim Resolution Process.

7.11 Alternative Procedures.

7.12 Impact on Future Selections.

7.13 Report to Building Board.

7.14 DFCM's Right to Have Issues, Disputes or Claims Considered

**ARTICLE 8. PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION.**

8.1 Schedule of Values.

8.2 Applications for Payment.

8.2.1 In General.

8.2.2 Payment for Material and Equipment.

8.2.3 Warranty of Title.

8.2.4 Holdback by DFCM.

8.3 Certificates for Payment.

8.3.1 Issued by A/E.

8.3.2 A/E's Representations.

8.4 Decisions to Withhold Certification.

8.4.1 When Withheld.

8.4.2 Certification Issued When Reasons For Withholding Removed.

8.4.3 Continue Work Even if Contractor Disputes A/E's Determination.

8.4.4 DFCM Not in Breach.

8.5 Progress Payments.

8.5.1 In General, Interest on Late Payments.

8.5.2 Contractor and Subcontractor Responsibility.

8.5.3 Information Furnished by A/E or DFCM to Subcontractor.

8.5.4 DFCM and A/E Not Liable.

8.5.5 Certificate, Payment or Use Not Acceptance of Improper Work.

8.6 Payment Upon Substantial Completion.

8.7 Partial Occupancy or Use.

8.7.1 In General.

8.7.2 Inspection.

8.7.3 Not Constitute Acceptance.

8.8 Final Payment.

8.8.1 Certificate for Payment.

8.8.2 Conditions for Final Payment.

8.8.3 Waiver of Claims: Final Payment.

8.8.4 Delays Not Contractor's Fault.

8.8.5 Waiver by Accepting Final Payment.



**ARTICLE 9. TESTS AND INSPECTIONS,  
SUBSTANTIAL AND FINAL COMPLETION,  
UNCOVERING, CORRECTION OF WORK AND  
GUARANTY PERIOD.**

- 9.1 Tests and Inspections.
  - 9.1.1 In General.
  - 9.1.2 Failure of an Inspector to Appear.
  - 9.1.3 Nonconforming Work.
  - 9.1.4 Certificates.
  - 9.1.5 A/E Observing.
  - 9.1.6 Promptness.
- 9.2 Inspections: Substantial and Final.
  - 9.2.1 Substantial Completion Inspection.
  - 9.2.2 Final Completion Inspection.
- 9.3 Uncovering of Work.
  - 9.3.1 Uncover Uninspected Work.
  - 9.3.2 Observation Prior to Covering.
  - 9.3.3 When an Inspector Fails to Appear or A/E or DFCM Did Not Make Prior Request.
- 9.4 Correction of Work and Guaranty Period.
  - 9.4.1 Contractor Correct the Work.
  - 9.4.2 Guaranty and Correction After Substantial Completion.
  - 9.4.3 Removal of Work.
  - 9.4.4 Not Limit Other Obligations.
- 9.5 Additional Warranties.
  - 9.5.1 In General.
  - 9.5.2 Exclusion.
  - 9.5.3 Furnish Evidence on Request.
- 9.6 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work.

**ARTICLE 10. INSURANCE AND BONDS.**

- 10.1 Liability Insurance.
  - 10.1.1 In General.
  - 10.1.2 Configurations.
  - 10.1.3 Contractor Liability.
  - 10.1.4 Certificate, Notice Requirements, Additional Insured.
  - 10.1.5 Deductible Liability.
  - 10.1.6 Additional Requirements:
- 10.2 "Builder's Risk" Property Insurance.
  - 10.2.1 In General.
  - 10.2.2 Inspections, Recommendations.
  - 10.2.3 Deductible.
  - 10.2.4 Adjusted With and Payable to Risk Manager as Trustee.
  - 10.2.5 Waiver.
  - 10.2.6 Special Hazards.
- 10.3 Performance Bond and Payment Bond.

**ARTICLE 11. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.**

- 11.1 A/E's Responsibilities.
- 11.2 Successors and Assigns.
- 11.3 Written Notice.
  - 11.3.1 Personal Delivery and Registered or Certified Mail.

- 11.3.2 Fax.
- 11.4 Rights and Remedies.
  - 11.4.1 Not Limit.
  - 11.4.2 Not Waiver.
- 11.5 Commencement of Statutory Limitation Period.
  - 11.5.1 Before Substantial Completion.
  - 11.5.2 Between Substantial Completion and Final Certification for Payment.
  - 11.5.3 After Final Certification for Payment.
  - 11.5.4 Exception.
- 11.6 Not Discriminate, No Sexual Harassment.
- 11.7 Applicable Laws.
- 11.8 Interpretation.
- 11.9 Venue.
- 11.10 Severability.
- 11.11 Construction of Words.
- 11.12 No Third Party Rights.

**ARTICLE 12. TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION  
OF THE CONTRACT.**

- 12.1 Termination by Contractor.
  - 12.1.1 In General.
  - 12.1.2 Notice.
- 12.2 Termination by the DFCM for Cause.
  - 12.2.1 In General.
  - 12.2.2 DFCM's Right to Carry Out the Work.
  - 12.2.3 Items Required to Be Transferred or Delivered.
  - 12.2.4 Payment.
  - 12.2.5 DFCM Protection if Liable.
  - 12.2.6 Credits and Deficits.
  - 12.2.7 If Contractor Found Not in Default or Excusable.
  - 12.2.8 Rights and Remedies Not Exclusive.
- 12.3 Suspension, Delay or Interruption of Work by the DFCM for Convenience.
  - 12.3.1 By DFCM in Writing.
  - 12.3.2 Time Period for Claims.
  - 12.3.3 Adjustments.
- 12.4 Termination for Convenience of the DFCM.
  - 12.4.1 In General.
  - 12.4.2 Contractor Obligations.
  - 12.4.3 Termination Claim.
  - 12.4.4 Agreed Upon Payment.
  - 12.4.5 Payment Not Agreed Upon.
  - 12.4.6 Deductions.
  - 12.4.7 Partial Termination.
  - 12.4.8 Partial Payments.
  - 12.4.9 Preserve and Make Available Records.
- 12.5 DFCM's Right to Stop the Work.



# **GENERAL CONDITIONS**

May 25, 2005

## **ARTICLE 1. GENERAL PROVISIONS.**

### **1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS.**

**A/E** (including all design professionals). "A/E" means the person lawfully licensed to practice architecture or engineering or an entity lawfully practicing architecture or engineering identified as such in the A/E's Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The term "A/E" also means the A/E's representative and its subconsultants. When these General Conditions are part of a Contract in which the design professional is an interior designer, landscape subconsultant or other design professional, the term "A/E" as used in these General Conditions shall be deemed to refer to such design professional. A license is not required when the type of design professional is one which is not subject to a professional license, but such professional must meet the prevailing standards in the State of Utah for such practice. For projects where there is no A/E hired by DFCM, the references in the General Conditions to A/E shall be deemed to refer to DFCM as may be practicably applied.

**ADDENDA.** "Addenda" means the written or graphic instruments issued prior to the opening of Bids which clarify, correct or change the bidding documents or the Contract Documents.

**ASI.** "ASI" shall mean a Supplemental Instruction issued by the A/E to the Contractor which may result in clarifications or minor changes in the Work and does not affect the contract time or the contract amount.

**BID.** "Bid" means the offer or proposal of the bidder submitted on the prescribed form setting forth the prices for the Work to be performed.

**BONDS.** "Bonds" mean the bid bond, performance and payment bonds and other instruments of security.

**CHANGE ORDER.** "Change Order" means a written instrument signed by the DFCM and Contractor, stating their agreement for changes of the Contract as specified on the required DFCM's change order form.

**CLAIM.** "Claim" means a dispute, demand, assertion or other matter submitted by the Contractor, including a Subcontractor at any tier subject to the provisions of these General Conditions. The claimant may seek, as a matter of right, modification, adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. A request for Preliminary Resolution Effort (PRE) shall not be considered a "Claim." A requested amendment, requested change order, or a Construction Change Directive (CCD) is not a PRE or Claim unless agreement cannot be reached and the procedures of these General Conditions are followed.

**CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE.** A "Construction Change Directive" means a written order signed by the DFCM, directing a change in the Work and stating a proposed basis for adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The DFCM may by Construction Change Directive, without

invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions; even if it may impact the Contract Sum and Contract Time.

**CONTRACT.** The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The term "Contract" represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the A/E and Contractor, (2) between the DFCM and a Subcontractor or (3) between any persons or entities other than the DFCM and Contractor.

**CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.** The term "Contract Documents" means the Contractor's Agreement between the DFCM and Contractor (hereinafter referred to as "Contractor's Agreement"), the Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), the Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, other documents listed in the Contractor's Agreement and Modifications issued after execution of the Contractor's Agreement. The Contract Documents shall also include the bidding/proposal documents, including the Instructions to Bidders/Proposers, Notice to Contractors and the Bid/Proposal Form, to the extent not in conflict with the other above-stated Contract Documents and other documents and oral presentations as part of the Selection which are documented as an attachment to the Contract.

**CONTRACT SUM.** The term "Contract Sum" means the Contract Sum as stated in the Contractor's Agreement and, including authorized and signed adjustments to this agreement (modifications), is the total amount payable by the DFCM to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

**CONTRACT TIME.** "Contract Time", unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, means the period of time, including authorized and signed adjustments (modifications), stated in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**CONTRACTOR.** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the DFCM Contractor's Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative. When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case, shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate DFCM Contractor Agreement.

**CONTRACTOR'S AGREEMENT.**

"Contractor's Agreement" means, unless the context requires otherwise, the agreement executed by the Contractor and DFCM for the Project.

**DAY.** The term "day" or "days" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

**DEFECTIVE.** "Defective" is an adjective which when modifying the word "Work" refers to Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents, or does not meet the requirements of any inspection, referenced standard, code, test or approval referred to in the Contract Documents, or has been damaged.

**DFCM REPRESENTATIVE.**

"DFCM Representative" means the Division of Facilities Construction and Management person directly assigned to work with the Contractor on a regular basis. Unless the context requires otherwise, the "DFCM Representative" is the "Owner's Representative."

**DIRECTOR.** "Director" means the Director of the Division of Facilities Construction and Management unless the context requires otherwise. Director may include a designee selected by the Director for the particular function referred to in the General Conditions.

**DFCM.** "DFCM" means the Division of Facilities Construction and Management established pursuant to Utah Code Annotated Section 63A-5-201 et seq. Unless the context requires otherwise, DFCM is the "Owner" as that term is commonly referred to in the construction industry.

**DRAWINGS.** The "Drawings" are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents, wherever located and whenever issued, showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, and generally include the drawings, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams.

**EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR.**

"Executive Director" means the Executive Director of the Department of Administrative Services, including unless otherwise stated, his/her duly authorized designee.

**INSPECTION.** The word "inspection" or its derivatives shall mean a review of the Project, including but not limited to a visual review of the Work completed to date to ascertain if the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, including all applicable building codes and construction standards.

**MODIFICATION.** A "Modification" is (1) a Change Order (2) Construction Change Directive or (3) ASI. The Contract may be amended or modified only by (1) a written amendment executed by both the DFCM and Contractor, or (2) by a Modification.

**NOTICE TO PROCEED.** A "Notice to Proceed" is a document prepared by the DFCM and by its terms authorizes the Contractor to commence Work on the Project. It is deemed issued upon being sent by the DFCM to the Contractor's specified address within the bid or proposal.

**PARTIAL USE.** "Partial Use" means placing a portion of the Work in service for the purpose for which it is intended (or a related purpose) before reaching Substantial Completion for all the Work. This partial use does not constitute "substantial completion".

**PRELIMINARY RESOLUTION EFFORT.**

"Preliminary Resolution Effort" or "PRE" means the processing of a request for preliminary resolution or any similar notice about a problem that could potentially lead to a Claim and is prior to reaching the status of a Claim.

**PRODUCT DATA.** "Product Data" means illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**PROJECT.** The "Project" means the total construction of the Work performed under the Contract Documents.

**PROJECT MANUAL (FOR**

**CONSTRUCTION).** The "Project Manual" is the volume assembled for the Work and may include the bidding/proposal requirements, sample forms, General or Supplementary Conditions of the Contract and Specifications.

**PROPOSAL REQUEST OR "PR."**

A "Proposal Request" or "PR" is a proposal request filed with the Contractor for the purposes of seeking a proposal in order to resolve an issue as part of the Change Order or Contract Modification process.

**PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER.** A "Proposed Change Order" ("PCO"), is an informal request by the Contractor filed with the DFCM Representative, in an effort to commence the Contract Modification Process. It shall not be considered a "PRE" or a "Claim." The PCO may be related to any potential, or actual delay, disruption, unforeseen condition or materials or any other matter in which the Contractor intends to seek additional monies or time.

**REQUEST FOR INFORMATION or RFI.**

A "Request for Information" or "RFI" is a request filed by the Contractor with the A/E regarding any request for information, direction or clarification related to the Contract Documents, plans or specifications.

**RESOLUTION OF THE CLAIM.**

"Resolution of the Claim" means the final resolution of the Claim by the Director, but does not include any administrative appeal, judicial review or judicial appeal thereafter.

**RULE.** "Rule," unless the context requires otherwise, shall mean a Rule of the Utah Administrative Code.

**SALES TAX and/or USE TAX.** Sales Tax and/or Use Tax, unless the context requires otherwise, shall mean the sales tax and/or use tax collected or to be collected by the Utah State Tax Commission and shall include any sales and/or use tax that the Utah State Tax Commission collects on behalf of any special district, local government or political subdivision.

**SAMPLES.** "Samples" mean physical examples, which illustrate materials, equipment or workmanship and establishes standards by which the Work will be judged.

**SHOP DRAWINGS.** "Shop Drawings" means drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**SPECIFICATIONS.** The "Specifications" are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, construction systems, standards, installation and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related systems and services.

**SUBCONTRACTOR.** "Subcontractor" means the person or entity that has a direct contract with the Contractor, including any trade contractor or specialty contractor, or with another Subcontractor at any tier to provide labor or materials for the work but does not include suppliers who provide only materials, equipment or supplies to a contractor or subcontractor. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the text in which the term is used may provide for the exclusion of Subcontractors of other Subcontractors or the exclusion of suppliers. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The Term "Subcontractor" does not include a separate contractor or subcontractors of a separate contractor.

**SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION.** "Substantial Completion" is the date certified in accordance with Article 9.2 and means the date the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete,

and any lack of completion or performance does not reasonably interfere with the DFCM's intended use of the Project, in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the DFCM can occupy and use the Work for its intended use. DFCM's "intended use" or "occupy" as used in this definition, shall include any intended use or occupation by any agency or entity for which DFCM has intended to so occupy the Project.

## **SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS OR SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL**

**CONDITIONS.** "Supplementary Conditions" or "Supplementary General Conditions" means the part of the Contract Documents which amends or supplements these General Conditions.

**WORK.** The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all labor, materials, equipment and services provided, or to be provided, by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations.

## **ARTICLE 2. DFCM.**

### **2.1 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE DFCM.**

#### **2.1.1 DFCM'S REPRESENTATIVE.**

The DFCM shall designate a DFCM Representative authorized to act in the DFCM's behalf with respect to the Project. The DFCM or such authorized representative shall render decisions within a reasonable time pertaining to documents submitted by the A/E and/or Contractor in order to avoid a compensable delay in the orderly and sequential progress of the Project.

#### **2.1.2 SPECIALISTS AND**

**INSPECTORS.** The DFCM will provide certified building inspection services in accordance with the adopted Building Codes. This includes 'routine' and 'special' inspections unless otherwise noted in the A/E Agreement. The DFCM may assign an inspector or specialist to note deviations from, or necessary adjustments to, the Contract Documents or to report deficiencies or defects in the Work. The inspector or specialist's activities in no way relieves the

Contractor of the responsibilities set forth in the Contract Documents.

### **2.1.3 SURVEYS AND LEGAL**

**DESCRIPTION.** The DFCM shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall review this information, including the surveys and any provided soils tests, and compare such information with observable physical conditions and the Contract Documents.

**2.1.4 PROMPT INFORMATION AND SERVICES.** Upon receipt of a written request from the Contractor, the DFCM shall furnish information or services under the DFCM's control with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in the orderly progress of the Work.

### **2.1.5 COPIES OF DRAWINGS AND PROJECT MANUALS**

**(FOR CONSTRUCTION).** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor will be furnished, free of charge, such copies of Drawings and Project Manuals (for construction) as are reasonably necessary for execution of the Work. DFCM's Web Page may also provide referenced documents for the Project.

**2.1.6 OTHER DUTIES.** The foregoing is in addition to other duties and responsibilities of the DFCM enumerated herein and especially those in respect to Article 2.2 (Construction by DFCM or by Separate Contractors), Article 8 (Payments and Completion) and Article 10 (Insurance and Bonds).

## **2.2 CONSTRUCTION BY DFCM OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **2.2.1 DFCM'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS.**

**(1) IN GENERAL.** The DFCM reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the DFCM's own forces, and to award separate contracts in connection with other portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site under Conditions of the Contract identical or

substantially similar to these including those portions related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**(2) COORDINATION AND REVISIONS.** The DFCM shall provide for coordination of the activities of the DFCM's own forces and of each separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with other separate contractors and the DFCM in reviewing their construction schedules when directed to do so. The Contractor shall make any revisions to the construction schedule and Contract Sum deemed necessary after a joint review and agreement by the DFCM. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, separate contractors and the DFCM until subsequently revised.

### **2.2.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY.**

**(1) CONTRACTOR COORDINATION.** The Contractor shall afford the DFCM and separate contractor(s) a reasonable opportunity for delivery and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**(2) REPORTING PROBLEMS TO DFCM.** If part of the Contractor's Work depends on work by the DFCM or a separate contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly report in writing to the DFCM apparent defects in workmanship that would render it unsuitable for proper execution. Failure of the Contractor to make said report shall constitute an acknowledgment that the DFCM's or separate contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work, except as to defects in workmanship not then reasonably discoverable.

**(3) COSTS.** Costs caused by delays or by improperly timed activities or defective construction shall be borne by the responsible party in accordance with the procedures and provisions of the Contract Documents.

**(4) CONTRACTOR**

**REMEDIAL WORK.** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage caused by the Contractor to completed or partially completed Work or to property of the DFCM or separate contractors and subcontractors as provided in Article 6.

**ARTICLE 3. A/E.**

**3.1 A/E'S ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT.**

**3.1.1 IN GENERAL.** The A/E assists the DFCM with the administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents. The A/E shall have the authority to act on behalf of the DFCM only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents or A/E's Agreement.

**3.1.2 SITE VISITS.**

(1) Site visits or inspections by the A/E, the DFCM or any DFCM representative shall in no way limit or affect the Contractor's responsibility to comply with all the requirements and the overall design concept of the Contract Documents as well as all applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, resolutions, codes, rules, regulations, orders and decrees.

**(2) WRITTEN REPORT.**

The A/E shall promptly submit to the DFCM a written report subsequent to each site visit.

**3.1.3 COMMUNICATIONS  
FACILITATING CONTRACT**

**ADMINISTRATION.** Except as authorized by the DFCM Representative or as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, including these General Conditions, the A/E and Contractor shall communicate through the DFCM Representative on issues regarding the timing of the Work, cost of the Work or scope of the Work. Contractor shall comply with communication policies agreed upon at any pre-construction meeting with the DFCM. Communications by and with the A/E subconsultants shall be through the A/E. Communications by and with Subcontractors shall be through the Contractor. Communications

by and with separate contractors shall be through the DFCM.

**3.1.4 A/E MAY REJECT WORK, ORDER INSPECTION, TESTS.** The A/E shall have the responsibility and authority to reject Work which, based upon the A/E's knowledge or what may be reasonably inferred from the A/E's site observations and review of data, does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the A/E considers it necessary or advisable for implementation of the intent of the Contract Documents, the A/E shall have the responsibility and authority to require additional inspections or testing of the Work in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed, provided, however, the A/E must obtain the DFCM's prior written approval of any such additional inspections or testing. However, neither this authority of the A/E nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the A/E to the Contractor, Subcontractors, their agents or employees or other persons performing portions of the Work, including separate contractors. If the Contractor disputes the rejection of any Work and the correction thereof shall involve additional cost or time, it shall be the DFCM's option to accept such Work whether it be conforming or nonconforming.

**3.1.5 A/E REVIEW CONTRACTOR'S SUBMITTALS.**

(1) Contractor shall submit shop drawings, product data, and samples and other submittals required by the Contract Documents to the A/E as required by the approved submittal schedule.

(2) The A/E shall review and approve or take other appropriate action upon Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples, but only for the purpose of checking for conformance with the information and design concepts expressed in the Contract Documents. A/E action taken on a submittal shall not constitute a Modification of this Agreement.

(3) The A/E's action shall be taken no later than 15 days following A/E's receipt of the submittal, unless agreed to otherwise by Contractor and DFCM, in order to avoid a delay in the Work of the Contractor or of separate contractors while allowing sufficient time in the A/E's professional judgment to permit adequate review.

(4) Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents.

(5) The A/E's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under the Contract Documents.

(6) The A/E's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the A/E, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures.

(7) The A/E's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

(8) When professional certification of performance characteristics of materials, systems or equipment is required by the Contract Documents, the A/E shall be entitled to rely upon such certifications to establish that the materials systems or equipment will meet the performance criteria required by the Contract Documents.

**3.2 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF A/E'S DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS.** All Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the A/E are and shall remain the property of the DFCM, and DFCM shall retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights with respect thereto. Said documents were prepared and are intended for use as an integrated set for the Project which is the subject of this Contractor's

Agreement. The Contractor shall not modify or use Contract Documents on any other project without the prior written consent of the DFCM and A/E. Any such non-permissive use or modification, by Contractor, the Contractor's Subcontractors at any tier or anyone for whose acts the Contractor is liable, shall be at Contractor's sole risk. Contractor shall hold harmless and indemnify the DFCM from and against any and all claims, actions, suits, costs, damages, loss, expenses and attorney fees arising out of such non-permissive use or modification by the Contractor. The Contractor and Subcontractors are granted a limited license to use and reproduce applicable portions of the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the A/E appropriate to and for use in the execution of their Work under the Contract Documents. All copies made under this license shall bear the statutory copyright notice, if any, shown on the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the A/E. Submittals or distributions necessary to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes relating to completion of the Project are not to be construed as a publication in derogation of the DFCM's copyright or other reserved rights.

#### **ARTICLE 4. CONTRACTOR**

##### **4.1 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR.**

**4.1.1 REVIEWING CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, INFORMATION, REPORTING ERRORS, INCONSISTENCIES OR OMISSIONS.** The Contractor shall carefully study and compare the Contract Documents with each other and with information furnished by the DFCM pursuant to Article 2.1 hereinabove and shall at once report to the DFCM and A/E errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered. The Contractor shall not be liable to the DFCM or A/E for damage resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omission in the Contract Documents, unless the Contractor recognized such error, inconsistency or omission or a Contractor of ordinary skill and expertise for the type of Work involved would have readily so recognized such error, inconsistency or omission, and the Contractor



failed to report such to the DFCM and A/E. If the Contractor performs any construction activity without such notice to the DFCM and A/E and prior to the resolution of the error, inconsistency or omission, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such performance and shall bear an appropriate amount of the attributable costs for correction.

**4.1.2 FIELD CONDITIONS.** The Contractor shall take field measurements and verify field conditions and shall carefully compare such field measurements and conditions and other information known to the Contractor, or information which a Contractor of ordinary skill and expertise for the type of Work involved would have known, before commencing activities. Errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered shall be reported to the DFCM and A/E at once. If the Contractor performs any construction activity without such notice to the DFCM and A/E and prior to the resolution of the error, inconsistency or omission, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such performance and shall bear an appropriate amount of the attributable costs for correction.

**4.1.3 PERFORM IN ACCORDANCE WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND SUBMITTALS.** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and submittals approved in accordance with the Contract Documents

**4.1.4 PERFORMANCE TO PRODUCE THE COMPLETE SYSTEM AND INTENDED RESULTS.** Performance by the Contractor shall be required to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents as being necessary to allow the system to function within its intended use.

**4.1.5 INTENT AND HIERARCHY.** The Contract Documents should be read as a whole and wherever possible, the provisions should be construed in order that all provisions are operable. The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are

complimentary, and what is required by one Document or provisions thereof shall be as binding as if required by all the Documents or provisions thereof. In case of an irreconcilable conflict between provisions within a Contract Document or between Contract Documents, the following priorities shall govern as listed below:

(1) A particular Modification shall govern over all Contract Document provisions or Modifications issued prior to said particular Modification.

(2) Attachments to the Contractor's Agreement resulting from the Selection process including any management plan or documented interview information shall govern over addenda, the General Conditions, plans and specifications.

(3) A particular Addendum shall govern over all other Contract Document provisions issued prior to said particular Addendum. Subsequent Addenda shall govern over all prior Addenda.

(4) The Supplementary General Conditions shall govern over the General Conditions.

(5) These General Conditions shall govern over all other Contract Documents except for the Supplementary General Conditions, Addenda, Modifications and Attachments resulting from the selection process.

(6) The drawings and specifications shall not govern over any of the documents listed above.

(7) In case of a conflict or ambiguity within the same level of hierarchy of described documents, DFCM reserves the right to select the most stringent requirement unless the preponderance of the contract indicates the less stringent requirement.

#### **4.1.6 DIVIDING WORK AND CONTRACTOR REPRESENTATION.**

Organization of the specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings, shall not control the Contractor in

dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade. Contractor represents that the Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, manufacturers and suppliers engaged or to be engaged by it are and will be familiar with the requirements for performance by them of their obligations.

#### **4.1.7 PLANNING AND PRIORITY.**

The Contractor shall plan and schedule its work to facilitate the Project and shall maintain a work schedule to place proper priority to sequence work to complete the project timely.

### **4.2 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES.**

**4.2.1 SUPERVISION AND CONTROL.** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract, except to the extent that the Contract Documents expressly and specifically state otherwise.

#### **4.2.2 RESPONSIBILITY.**

The Contractor shall be responsible to the State of Utah and DFCM for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors, and their agents and employees, and other persons performing portions of the Work under a contract with the Contractor or on behalf of the Contractor.

**4.2.3 NOT RELIEVED OF OBLIGATIONS.** The Contractor shall not be relieved of obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the DFCM or its agents in the DFCM's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons other than the Contractor or for those that the Contractor is liable.

#### **4.2.4 INSPECTIONS AND APPROVALS.**

(1) The Contractor is responsible for requesting inspections for various

stages and portions of the Work required under the Contract Documents in a timely manner.

(2) If any of the Work is required to be inspected or approved by the terms of the Contract Documents by any public authority, the Contractor shall timely request such inspection or approval to be performed in accordance with Article 9. Except as provided in Article 9, work shall not proceed without any required inspection and the associated authorization to proceed. Contractor shall promptly notify DFCM if the inspector fails to appear at the site.

### **4.3 LABOR AND MATERIALS.**

**4.3.1 PAYMENT BY CONTRACTOR.** Except to the extent it is otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipments, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities, supplies, consumables and services necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**4.3.2 DISCIPLINE AND COMPETENCE.** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees, its Subcontractors, agents, representatives and other persons performing under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not skilled in tasks assigned to them.

**4.4 TAXES AND OTHER PAYMENTS TO GOVERNMENT.** The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use, employment-related and similar taxes related to the Work or portions thereof provided by the Contractor which are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect. The Contractor shall comply with the laws and regulations regarding the payment of Sales and/or Use Tax and any exemptions. The procurement documents may have a provision regarding specific items which are exempt from State of Utah Sales Tax and/or Use Tax. Any such

exemption shall be used only for the items and the project specified in the procurement documents. Any such exemption does not apply to taxes levied by the federal government or any taxing entity outside of the State of Utah. If a Contractor properly relies upon a provision(s) of the bidding or proposal documents, and if State of Utah Sales and/or Use Tax subsequently becomes due, then the Contractor shall be paid such tax amount not included in the bid/proposal amount due to the reliance upon such provision.

#### **4.5 PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES, LABOR AND MATERIALS.**

**4.5.1 PERMITS AND FEES.** Unless required in the Supplementary General Conditions or an Addendum, it will not be necessary for the Contractor to obtain or pay for local building permits, plan check fees, electrical permits, plumbing permits, connection fees, or impact fees, nor will it be necessary to pay fees for inspections pertaining thereto.

**4.5.2 COMPLIANCE WITH PUBLIC AUTHORITIES, NOTICES.** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by laws, ordinances, resolutions, rules, regulations and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on the performance of the Work.

**4.5.3 CORRELATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND ENACTMENTS.** It is not the Contractor's responsibility to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, resolutions, building codes, and rules and regulations. Notwithstanding this, if the Contractor observes, or if such is readily observable to a Contractor of ordinary skill and expertise for the type of Work involved, that a portion of the Contract Documents is at variance therewith, the Contractor shall promptly notify the A/E and DFCM in writing, and necessary changes shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification.

**4.5.4 FAILURE TO GIVE NOTICE.** If the Contractor, or any Subcontractor thereof performs Work without complying with the requirements of this Article 4.5 hereinabove, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility

for such Work and shall bear the appropriate amount of the attributable costs.

**4.6 SUPERINTENDENT.** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor. Important communications shall be confirmed in writing. Other communications shall be similarly confirmed on written request in each case.

#### **4.7 TIME AND CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES.**

##### **4.7.1 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION.**

(1) **TIME IS OF THE ESSENCE; COMPLETE WITHIN CONTRACT TIME.** Time is of the essence. By executing the Contractor's Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is adequate to perform the Work. The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces to achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

(2) **NOTICE TO PROCEED AND INSURANCE.** The Contractor shall not prematurely commence operations on the site or elsewhere prior to the issuance of a Notice to Proceed by the DFCM or prior to the effective date of insurance required by Article 10 to be furnished by the Contractor, whichever is the latter.

**4.7.2 SCHEDULE PREPARATION.** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall prepare and submit for the DFCM's and A/E's review, a reasonably detailed CPM schedule for the Work. The schedule shall indicate the order, sequence, and interdependence of all items known to be necessary to complete the Work including construction, procurement, fabrication, and delivery of materials and equipment, submittals and approvals of samples, shop drawings, procedures, or other documents. Work items of the DFCM, other Contractors, utilities and other third parties that may affect or

be affected by the Contractor shall be included. If the DFCM is required, by the Contract Documents, to furnish any materials, equipment, or the like, to be incorporated into the Work by the Contractor, Contractor shall submit, with the first schedule submittal, a letter clearly indicating the dates that such items are required at the Project Site. The critical path should be identified, including the critical paths for interim completion dates and milestones. The CPM schedule shall be developed using Primavera, MS Project, or Suretrack unless otherwise authorized by the DFCM Representative. The Contractor's schedule shall be updated at least once a month and submitted with each pay request.

#### **4.7.3 INITIAL CONTRACT TIME.**

Unless otherwise specified in the bidding documents, the initial Contract Time is the time identified in the Contractor's Agreement.

**4.7.4 INTERIM COMPLETION DATES AND MILESTONES.** The schedule must include contractually specified interim completion dates and milestones. The milestone completion dates indicated are considered essential to the satisfactory performance of this Contract and to the coordination of all Work on the Project. The milestone dates listed are not intended to be a complete listing of all Work under this Contract or of interfaces with other Project Contractors.

**4.7.5 SCHEDULE CONTENT REQUIREMENTS.** The schedule shall indicate an early completion date for the Project that is no later than the Project's required completion date. The schedule, including all activity duration's shall be given in calendar days. The Schedule shall also indicate all of the following:

- (1) Interfaces with the work of outside contractors (e.g., utilities, power and with any separate Contractor);
- (2) Description of activity including activity number/numbers;
- (3) Estimated duration time for each activity;

(4) Early start, late start, early finish, late finish date, and predecessor/successors including stop-start relationships with lead and lag time for each activity;

(5) Float available to each path of activities;

(6) Actual start date for each activity begun;

(7) Actual finish date for each activity completed;

(8) The percentage complete of each activity in progress or completed;

(9) Identification of all critical path activities;

(10) The critical path for the Project, with said path of activities being clearly and easily recognizable on the time-scaled network diagram. The path(s) with the least amount of float must be identified. Unless otherwise authorized by the DFCM Representative, no more than 40% of all activities may be identified as critical path items. The relationship between non-critical activities and activities on the critical path shall be clearly shown on the network diagram;

(11) Unless otherwise authorized by the DFCM Representative, all activities on the schedule representing construction on the site may not have a duration longer than 14 days. Construction items that require more than 14 days to complete must be broken into identifiable activities on the schedule with durations less than 14 days. The sum of these activities represents the total length required to complete that construction item; and

(12) Additional requirements as specified in the Supplemental General Conditions.

**4.7.6 DFCM'S RIGHT TO TAKE EXCEPTIONS.** The DFCM reserves the right to take reasonable exception to activity duration, activity placement, construction logic or time frame for any element of the Work to be scheduled.

**4.7.7 FLOAT TIME.** Float or slack time is defined as the amount of time between the earliest start date and the latest start date or between the earliest finish date and the latest finish date of a chain of activities on the Schedule. By a proposal request or modification delivered to the Contractor, the DFCM has the right to use the float time for non-critical path activities until the Contractor has reallocated such time on a newly submitted schedule.

**4.7.8 INITIAL SCHEDULE SUBMISSION.** No progress payments will be approved until the Contractor has submitted a Project detailed CPM schedule covering the first 90 days of the Work with a general CPM schedule for the entire project. The detailed schedule for the entire project is to be completed prior to the second pay request unless otherwise authorized in writing by the DFCM Representative.

**4.7.9 UPDATES.** Prior to any approval of a pay request, the DFCM, A/E and Contractor shall review the Contractor's schedule compared to the Work completed. The DFCM approves the amount of Work completed as supported by the schedule of values and as verified by the determination of Work completed. If necessary, the Contractor shall then update and submit to the DFCM the schedule with the pay request; all of which in accordance with the DFCM's approval. All updates shall be provided in electronic and hard copy formats. At each scheduled meeting with the DFCM Representative, the Contractor shall provide a "three week look ahead" with long lead items identified.

**4.7.10 SCHEDULE OF SUBMITTALS.** The Contractor shall prepare and keep current, for the A/E's and DFCM's review, a schedule of submittals required under the Contract Documents which is coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule and allows the A/E a reasonable time to review the submittals. This submittal schedule is to be included as part of the construction schedule. Submittals requiring expedited review must be clearly identified as such in the schedule of submittals.

**4.7.11 SCHEDULE RECOVERY.** If the Work represented by the critical path falls behind

more than 7 days, the project schedule shall be redone within 14 days showing how the Contractor shall recover the time. A narrative that addresses the changes in the schedule from the previously submitted schedule shall be submitted along with the schedule in both hard copy (appropriate report formats to be determined by the DFCM Representative) and electronic copy. The Contractor shall comply with the most recent schedules.

#### **4.7.12 SCHEDULE CHANGES AND MODIFICATIONS.**

**(1) CONTRACT TIME CHANGE REQUIRES MODIFICATION.** The Contract Time may only be shortened or extended by a written modification fully executed by the DFCM.

**(2) CONTRACTOR REORDERING, RESEQUENCING AND CHANGING ACTIVITY DURATIONS.** Should the Contractor, after approval of the complete detailed construction schedule, desire to change his plan of construction, he shall submit his requested revisions to the DFCM and the A/E along with a written statement of the revisions including a description of the sequence and duration changes for rescheduling the work, methods of maintaining adherence to intermediate milestones and the contract completion date and the reasons for the revisions. If the requested changes are acceptable to the DFCM, which acceptance shall not be unreasonably withheld, they will be incorporated into the Schedule in the next reporting period. If after submitting a request for change in the Contract Schedule, the DFCM does not agree with the request, the DFCM will schedule a meeting with the Contractor to discuss the differences.

**(3) CHANGES IN CONTRACT TIME.** The critical path schedule as the term is used in the provisions herein shall be based on the current version of the Contractor's schedule for the Project and accepted by the DFCM just prior to the commencement of the modification, asserted delay, suspension or interruption. If the Contractor believes it is entitled to an extension of Contract Time under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall submit a

PCO in accordance with Article 7.2 to the A/E and the DFCM Representative accompanied by an analysis ("Requested Time Adjustment Schedule") in accordance with the Contract Documents for time extensions. The "Requested Time Adjustment Schedule" shall include "fragnets" that represent the added or changed work to the Schedule. The impact on unchanged activities caused by the changes and/or delays being analyzed shall be included in these fragnets.

A "fragnet" as used in these General Conditions and when used in the context of project scheduling is a subset of project activities that are inter-related by predecessor and successor relationships that are tied into the main schedule with identified start and completion points. Each fragnet may or may not be on the critical path. An entire schedule consists of a series of inter-related fragnets.

#### **4.7.13 EXCUSABLE DELAY.**

(1) **IN GENERAL.** If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the progress of the Work on the critical path schedule by an act or neglect of the DFCM or other causes beyond the Contractor's control or by other causes which the DFCM determines may justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended by Change Order. The Contractor shall immediately take all steps reasonably possible to lessen the adverse impact of such delay. Notwithstanding the above, to the extent any of the causes for delay were caused by the Contractor, reasonably foreseeable by the Contractor or avoidable by the Contractor, then to such extent the delay shall not be cause for extension of the Contract Time. For purposes of this paragraph, Contractors shall include all subcontractors and others under the responsibility of the Contractor.

The determination of the total number of days extension will be based upon the current construction schedule in effect at the inception of the change and/or delay and upon all data relevant to the extension as it exists in the project record. Once approved, such data shall be incorporated in the next monthly update of the schedule.

Contractor acknowledges and agrees that delays in work items which, according to the schedule analysis, do not affect any milestone dates or the

Contract completion dates shown on the CPM at the time of the delay, will not be the basis for a contract extension.

(2) **WEATHER-RELATED EXCUSABLE DELAYS.** Completion time will not be extended for normal bad weather or any weather that is reasonably foreseeable at the time of entering into the contract. The time for completion as stated in the contract documents includes due allowance for calendar days on which Work cannot be performed out of doors. The Contractor acknowledges that it may lose days due to weather conditions. Contract time may be extended at no cost to the DFCM if all of the following are met which must be established by the Contractor:

(a) That the weather prevented Work from occurring that is on the critical path for the project based upon a critical path schedule previously submitted to the DFCM and to the extent accepted by the DFCM;

(b) There are no concurrent delays attributed to the Contractor;

(c) The Contractor took all reasonable steps to alleviate the impact of the weather and took reasonable attempts to prevent the delay and despite such reasonable actions of Contractor, the weather impacted the critical path as described above; and

(d) One of the following occurred:

1. The weather was catastrophic, such as a tornado, hurricane, severe wind storm, severe hail storm; or

2. Based on the full history of information published from the closest station as indicated from the Western Regional Climate Center (Desert Research Institute 2215 Raggio Parkway Reno, Nevada 89512, and as may be described on the website at <http://www.wrcc.dri.edu/summary/>), one or more of the following occurred:

a. For any day between November 1 and March 31, the

minimum temperature fell below the average minimum temperature plus the extreme low temperature recorded for the month divided by 2.

b. For any day between November 1 and March 31, the maximum temperature fell below the monthly average for the minimum temperature.

c. The daily precipitation exceeded 75% of the historical one day maximum for the month.

d. The snowfall for the month exceeded 175% of the historical average snow fall for the month.

#### **4.7.14 COMPENSABLE DELAY, SUSPENSION OR INTERRUPTION.**

##### **(1) BASIC CONDITIONS.**

In addition to the other requirements of the Contract Documents, a compensable delay, suspension or interruption of the work occurs only when the following are met:

(a) Is wholly unanticipated by the parties at the time of execution of the Contractor's Agreement or is caused by the breach of a fundamental obligation of the Contract Documents attributable to the DFCM; and

(b) The Contractor delivers a written notice to A/E and DFCM within seven (7) days that the Contractor knows or should have known of the condition giving rise to the purported compensable delay, disruption, suspension or interruption, and said continuation affects the Contract Time as indicated by the last submitted and reasonable critical path schedule.

**(2) COMPENSABLE DELAY FORMULA.** To the extent of the compensable delay, the Contractor's total entitlement for all compensable delay damages is the computed result of the following formula: Contract Sum divided by Contract Time (in calendar days); the result of which is then multiplied by 0.05; and the result of which is multiplied by the number of calendar days of compensable days allowed under these General Conditions that are beyond the Contract

Time. Notwithstanding any other provision of these General Conditions or the Contract Documents, to the extent the Contractor is entitled to receive the 10% or 15% markup under Article 7.4, this provision shall be inapplicable and the markup shall be deemed to include all the compensable delay damages provided by this paragraph.

**(3) PERIOD OF COMPENSABLE DELAY, SUSPENSION OR INTERRUPTION.** The length and extent of compensable delay, shall be determined, with the use of the Project's critical path schedule, by ascertaining the number of additional days to the Contract Time that are needed in order to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents as a result of the continuation of the aforesaid delay, disruption, suspension or interruption after receipt of the written notice received by the A/E and DFCM under Section 4.7.14(1)(b) above.

**(4) CONCURRENT DELAY.** Notwithstanding any other provision of these General Conditions, to the extent a non-compensable delay occurs at the same time as a compensable delay, the DFCM shall not be responsible for any compensation for the period of the non-compensable delay.

**4.7.15 TIME EXTENSION REQUESTS.** Any time extension shall be requested within 21 days after the Contractor knew or should have known about the delay and shall be supported by the critical path schedule analysis.

#### **4.7.16 LIQUIDATED DAMAGES.**

**(1) IN GENERAL.** Should the Contractor fail to complete the Work within the Contract Time, there shall be deducted from any amount due or that may become due the Contractor, the sum as stated in the Contractor's Agreement. Such sum is fixed and agreed upon by the DFCM and Contractor as liquidated damages due the DFCM by reason of the inconvenience and added costs of administration, engineering, supervision and other costs resulting from the Contractor's default, and not as a penalty. Actual damages related to delay can not be ascertained at

the time of execution of the Contract. To the extent that the liquidated damages exceed any amounts that would otherwise be due the Contractor, the Contractor shall be liable for such excess to the DFCM. DFCM may seek enforcement of such obligation by legal action, and if such is necessary, shall recover the related costs and attorney fees. Notwithstanding any other provision of these General Conditions, the availability of liquidated damages to the DFCM shall not limit the DFCM's right to seek damages or other remedies available under law or equity to the extent such damages or remedies are not based upon delay.

**(2) NO WAIVER OF DFCM'S RIGHTS.** Permitting the Contractor to continue any part of the Work after the time fixed for completion or beyond any authorized extension thereof, shall in no way operate as a waiver or estoppel on the part of the DFCM of any of its rights under the Contract Documents, including the right to liquidated damages or any other remedies or compensation.

**4.8 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE, CERTIFYING "AS-BUILTS".** The Contractor shall maintain at the site for the DFCM, one record copy of the Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders and other Modifications, in good order and marked weekly to record changes and selections made during construction, as well as approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals. These aforesaid items shall be available to the A/E and shall be delivered to the A/E for submittal to the DFCM upon completion of the Work, signed by the Contractor, certifying that they show complete and exact "as-built" conditions, stating sizes, kind of materials, vital piping, conduit locations and similar matters. All notes of encountered or changed conditions shall be included.

#### **4.9 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES.**

**4.9.1 NOT CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. The submittal shall demonstrate, for those portions of the Work for which the submittal is required,

the way the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**4.9.2 PROMPTNESS.** The Contractor shall review, approve and submit to the A/E, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work, or the activities of the DFCM or separate contractors.

**4.9.3 NOT PERFORM UNTIL A/E APPROVES.** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work requiring submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals until the respective submittal has been approved in writing by the A/E. Such Work shall be in accordance with the approved submittals.

**4.9.4 REPRESENTATIONS BY CONTRACTOR.** By approving and submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals, the Contractor represents that the Contractor has determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, and has checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**4.9.5 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY.** The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the A/E's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the A/E in writing of such deviation at the time of the submittal and the A/E has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals by the A/E's review and comment.

**4.9.6 DIRECT SPECIFIC ATTENTION TO REVISIONS.** The Contractor shall direct specific attention in writing to all revisions on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals, except those



requested by the A/E and indicated on previous submittals.

#### **4.9.7 INFORMATIONAL**

**SUBMITTALS.** Informational submittals upon which the A/E is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents.

#### **4.9.8 RELIANCE ON**

**PROFESSIONAL CERTIFICATION.** When professional certification of performance criteria of materials, systems or equipment is required by the Contract Documents, the DFCM and A/E shall be entitled to rely upon the accuracy and completeness of such calculations and certifications. If a professional stamp is required, the professional shall be licensed in the State of Utah unless otherwise approved by the DFCM in writing. Likewise, the Contractor is entitled to rely upon the accuracy and completeness of the calculations made by the A/E in developing the Contract Documents, unless a Contractor of ordinary skill and expertise for the type of Work involved would know that such is inaccurate or incomplete and therefore must immediately notify the DFCM in writing.

#### **4.10 USE OF SITE.**

**4.10.1 IN GENERAL.** The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by the Contract Documents, law, ordinances, resolutions, rules and regulations, and permits and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. Contractor shall take all reasonable means to secure the site, protect the site and protect the Work from any damage. The site shall be left free and clear of refuse, equipment, materials, etc. and the site shall not be subject to spilled liquids and chemicals, toxic or otherwise. Should such an incident occur while the Contractor has control of the site, the Contractor shall be responsible to clean the site and pay all associated costs, fines and penalties. Notwithstanding this, Contractor is not responsible for any damage to the site or the Work to the extent caused by the DFCM or the DFCM's agents.

**4.10.2 ACCESS TO NEIGHBORING PROPERTIES.** The Contractor shall not, except

as provided in the Contract Documents or with the DFCM's advance written consent when necessary to perform the Work, interfere with access to properties neighboring the Project site by the owners of such properties and their respective tenants, agents, invitees and guests.

**4.11 ACCESS TO WORK.** The Contractor shall provide the DFCM and A/E access to the Work in preparation and progress, wherever located.

**4.12 ROYALTIES AND PATENTS.** The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of patent rights and shall hold the DFCM and A/E harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for such defense or loss when a particular design, process or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents. However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process or product is an infringement of a patent, the Contractor shall be responsible for such loss unless such information is promptly furnished to the DFCM in writing.

#### **4.13 INDEMNIFICATION.**

##### **4.13.1 IN GENERAL.**

(1) To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the State of Utah, the State of Utah's institutions, agencies, departments, divisions, authorities, and instrumentalities, boards, commissions, elected or appointed officers, employees, agents, authorized volunteers (hereinafter the above listing of entities and persons is referred to as "indemnities") from and against every kind and character of claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, and including those events covered under the blanket Contractual Liability Coverage required under the Contract Documents, arising out of or resulting from any act or omission in the performance of the Work including the work of all the Subcontractors and their employees, provided that any such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in whole or in part by the negligent or wrongful act or omission

of the Contractor, any Subcontractor, and their employees, provided that any such claim, damage loss or expense is caused in whole or in part by the negligent or intentional act or omission of the Contractor, any Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed or the agent of any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, regardless of whether or not it is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. The Contractor shall defend all actions brought upon such matters to be indemnified hereunder and pay all costs and expenses incidental thereto, but the State of Utah shall have the right, at its option, to participate in the defense of any such action without relieving the Contractor of any obligation hereunder. Notwithstanding any of the above, to the extent the Contractor is complying with a written directive from the DFCM, that is not based on the Contractor's recommendation, the Contractor shall not be held liable under the indemnification provision of this Agreement if the Contractor has promptly disagreed with the written directive by delivering such objection to the DFCM in writing.

(2) Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or otherwise reduce any other right or obligation of indemnity which would otherwise exist as to any party or person under Contract Documents.

(3) In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Article 4.13 by an employee of the Contractor, Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under this Article 3.13 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or Subcontractor under workers' or workmen's compensation acts, disability benefits acts or other employee benefit acts.

## **ARTICLE 5. SUBCONTRACTORS.**

### **5.1 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS AND OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK.**

#### **5.1.1 APPROVAL REQUIRED.**

(1) Listing of Subcontractors shall be as required by U.C.A. 63A-5-208 as amended and/or as stated in the Contract Documents, including but not limited to the "DFCM Subcontractors List Form".

(2) The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the DFCM has made a reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

**5.1.2 BUSINESS AND LICENSING REQUIREMENTS.** All Subcontractors used by the Contractor shall comply with all applicable business and licensing requirements.

**5.1.3 SUBSEQUENT CHANGES.** After the lapse of twenty-four (24) hours from the bid opening, the Contractor may change its listed Subcontractors only in accordance with Rule R 23-1 and the Contract Documents and with written approval of the Director of the Division of Facilities Construction and Management.

(1) DFCM will pay the additional costs for a DFCM requested change in subcontractor if all of the following are met:

(a) If the DFCM in writing requests the change of a subcontractor;

(b) The original subcontractor is a responsible subcontractor that meets the requirements of the Contract Documents; and

(c) The original subcontractor did not withdraw as a subcontractor on the project.

(2) In all other circumstances, the Contractor shall pay the additional cost for a change in a subcontractor.

**5.1.4 BONDING OF SUBCONTRACTORS.** Subcontractors as identified by DFCM in the procurement documents, may be required to submit

performance and payment bonds to cover the full extent of their portion of the Work. This provision does not in any way limit the right of the Contractor to have subcontractors at any tier be required to have a performance and/or payment bond.

## **5.2 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS.**

**5.2.1 COMPLY WITH CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.** By appropriate enforceable agreement, and to the extent it can be practically applied, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to be bound to the Contractor by the terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities which the Contractor, by these Documents, assumes towards the DFCM and A/E.

**5.2.2 RIGHTS.** Each Subcontractor agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the DFCM and A/E under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the Subcontractor agreement, the benefit of all rights and remedies against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the DFCM.

**5.2.3 SUB-SUBCONTRACTORS.** The Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with its Subcontractors which complies with the requirements of Paragraphs 5.2.1 and 5.2.2 hereinabove.

**5.2.4 DOCUMENT COPIES.** The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound. Subcontractors shall similarly make copies of applicable portions of the Contract Documents available to their respective proposed Subcontractors.

## **5.3 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS.**

**5.3.1 CONDITIONS FOR ASSIGNMENT TO DFCM.** Each subcontract agreement for a subcontractor at any tier for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the DFCM provided that the assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the DFCM for cause pursuant to Article 12.2 or stoppage of the Work by DFCM pursuant to Article 12.5, and only for those subcontract agreements which the DFCM accepts by notifying the Subcontractor in writing. The subcontract shall be equitably adjusted to meet the new conditions of the work.

## **ARTICLE 6. PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY.**

### **6.1 SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY.**

**6.1.1 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall be solely responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract. The Contractor shall take all reasonable precautions for the safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to:

(1) Employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;

(2) The Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody or control of the Contractor or a Subcontractor; and

(3) Other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures and utilities not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction.

**6.1.2 SAFETY PROGRAM, PRECAUTIONS.** The Contractor shall institute a safety program at the start of construction to minimize accidents. Said program shall continue to the final completion of the Project and conform to applicable laws and regulations including the Utah Occupational Safety and Health Rules and

Regulations as published by the Utah Industrial Commission - UOSH Division. The Contractor shall post signs, erect barriers, and provide those items necessary to implement the safety program. As soon as the Contractor proceeds with the Work, the Contractor shall have all workers and all visitors on the site wear safety hard hats, as well as all other appropriate safety apparel such as safety glasses and shoes, and obey all safety rules and regulations and statutes. The Contractor shall post a sign in a conspicuous location indicating the necessity of wearing hard hats and the Contractor shall loan such hats to visitors.

#### **6.1.3 COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS.**

The Contractor shall give notices and comply with applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury or loss. In particular, the Contractor shall comply with all applicable provisions of Federal, State and municipal safety laws, rules and regulations as well as building codes to prevent accidents or injury to persons on, about, or adjacent to the premises where the Work is being performed.

**6.1.4 ERECT AND MAINTAIN SAFEGUARDS.** The Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including effective fences, posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards, promulgating safety regulations and notifying owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities.

**6.1.5 UTMOST CARE.** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**6.1.6 PROMPT REMEDY.** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Paragraph 6.1.1 of these General Conditions caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by

anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under said Paragraph 6.1.1, except to the extent such damage or loss is directly due to errors in the Contract Documents or caused by agents or employees of the A/E or DFCM. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under the Contract Documents.

**6.1.7 SAFETY DESIGNEE.** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents, damage, injury or loss. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the DFCM and A/E.

**6.1.8 LOAD SAFETY.** The Contractor shall not load or permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to endanger its safety.

**6.1.9 OFF-SITE RESPONSIBILITY.** In addition to its other obligations under this Article 6, the Contractor shall, at its sole cost and expense, promptly repair any damage or disturbance to walls, utilities, streets, ways, sidewalks, curbs and the property of the State and third parties (including municipalities and other governmental agencies) resulting from the performance of the Work, whether by it or by its Subcontractors at any tier. The Contractor shall not cause materials, including soil and debris, to be placed or left on streets or ways.

**6.1.10 EMERGENCIES.** In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss. Contractor shall promptly notify the DFCM Representative of the action taken.

**6.2 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.** In the event the Contractor encounters on the site material reasonably believed to be asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) or any other hazardous waste or substance which may endanger the health of those persons performing the Work or being on the site, the Contractor shall immediately stop Work in the area affected and

immediately report the condition to the DFCM Representative and A/E by phone with a follow-up document in writing. The Work in the affected area shall be resumed when written direction is provided by the DFCM Representative. Except to the extent provided otherwise in the Contract Documents or if the presence of hazardous materials is due to the fault of the Contractor, the Contractor shall not be required to perform without the Contractor's consent, any Work relating to asbestos, polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) or any other hazardous waste or substance.

DFCM shall procure a licensed abatement contractor qualified to remove the hazardous material. The abatement contractor shall submit notification of demolition to the Utah Division of Air Quality. Abatement contractor shall pay the notification fee. A copy of the hazardous material survey report shall be available to all persons who have access to the construction site.

### **6.3 HISTORICAL AND**

**ARCHEOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS.** In the event the Contractor knows or should have known of any cultural, historical or archeological material that is either recognized as an item to be protected under Federal, State, or local law or regulation, or is an item of obvious value to the State of Utah, the Contractor shall cease any work that would interfere with such discovery and immediately report the condition to the DFCM Representative and A/E by phone with a follow-up document in writing. Work shall resume based upon the direction of the DFCM Representative. Contractor cooperation with any DFCM recognized archaeologist or other cultural/historical expert is required.

**6.4 CONTRACTOR LIABILITY.** If the Contractor fails in any of its obligations in Articles 6.1 through 6.3 above, the Contractor shall be liable to any damages to DFCM, the State of Utah or any third party resulting from such noncompliance. The Contractor shall also be liable for any mitigation or restoration effort resulting from such noncompliance. To the extent all the following is met, the Contractor may treat the discovery of such material similarly to an unforeseen condition:

6.4.1 The discovery of such material is reasonably unforeseeable given the site conditions that the Contractor should have been aware;

6.4.2 The presence of such material was not identified in any part of the Contract Documents;

6.4.3 The Contractor has undertaken all proper action to mitigate any impact of such discovery on the critical path or monies related to the Project;

6.4.4 The discovery affects the critical path or contract price from that which was contemplated by the Contract Documents; and

6.4.5 The requirements of 7.1.5 and the Contract documents are met.

## **ARTICLE 7. MODIFICATIONS, REQUEST FOR INFORMATION, PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER, PRELIMINARY RESOLUTION EFFORTS AND CLAIMS PROCESS.**

### **7.1 MODIFICATIONS: IN GENERAL.**

**7.1.1 TYPES OF MODIFICATIONS AND LIMITATIONS.** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or ASI, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor must have a written Modification executed by DFCM under this Article 7 prior to proceeding with any Work sought to be an extra.

**7.1.2 BY WHOM ISSUED.** A Change Order or Construction Change Directive shall be issued by the DFCM Representative. An ASI is issued by the A/E or by the DFCM Representative.

The A/E shall prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives with specific documentation and data for the DFCM's approval and execution in accordance with the Contract Documents, and may issue ASIs not involving an adjustment in the contract sum or an extension of the Contract Time which are not

inconsistent with the intent of the Contract Documents.

**7.1.3 CONTRACTOR TO PROCEED UNLESS OTHERWISE STATED.**

Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, and the Contractor shall proceed promptly, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive or ASI.

**7.1.4 ADJUSTING UNIT PRICES.** If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are so changed in a proposed Change Order or Construction Change Directive that application of such unit prices to quantities of Work proposed will cause a substantial inequity to the DFCM or Contractor, the applicable unit prices may be equitably adjusted.

**7.1.5 SPECIAL NOTICES REQUIRED IN ORDER TO BE ELIGIBLE FOR ANY CONTRACT MODIFICATION.** In order to be eligible for any Modification under this Article 7, the Contractor must have met the following special notice requirements:

**(1) CONCEALED OR UNKNOWN CONDITIONS.** The Contractor must file a written notice with the DFCM Representative within seven (7) calendar days of that the Contractor knew or should have known of a site condition described below or the Contractor shall be deemed to waive any right to file any PCO, PRE or Claim for additional monies or time related to such condition:

(a) If the Contractor encounters unknown and reasonably unforeseeable subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions, including hazardous or historical/cultural materials under Article 6, which differ materially from those indicated by the Contract Documents or a site inspection; or

(b) If the Contractor encounters unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature which differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized

as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents.

**(2) INCREASE IN CONTRACT TIME.** If the Contractor encounters a situation in which the Contractor knows or should have known that such situation would cause a delay, disruption, interruption, suspension or the like to the Project, the Contractor must file a notice with the DFCM Representative within seven (7) working days of when the Contractor knew or should have known of such circumstance or the Contractor shall be deemed to waive any right to file any PCO, PRE or Claim for additional monies or time related to such circumstance. To the extent the DFCM and/or the State of Utah is damaged by the failure of the Contractor to provide such notice after the Contractor knows or should have known of such circumstance, the Contractor shall be liable for liquidated damages attributable thereto, as well as any damages to the State of Utah and/or DFCM that are allowable in addition to liquidated damages.

**7.2 CONTRACTOR INITIATED REQUESTS.**

**7.2.1 THE REQUEST FOR INFORMATION, RFI, PROCESS AND TIME TO FILE.** The Contractor may file an RFI with the A/E regarding any concern which will assist the Contractor in the proper completion of the Work including, but not limited to issues related to the Contract Documents, plans and specifications. The RFI shall be filed with the A/E in a timely manner so as not to prejudice the DFCM as to the quality, time or money related to the Work.

**7.2.2 PROPOSED CHANGE ORDER ("PCO").** Within twenty-one (21) days after the Contractor knows or should have known of a situation or concern where the Contractor is going to request additional monies or time, the Contractor must file a Proposed Change Order ("PCO") with the DFCM Representative, or the Contractor shall be deemed to waive any right to claim additional monies or time related to such situation or concern. The PCO shall include all available documentation supporting the PCO available to the Contractor at the time of filing and the Contractor shall thereafter diligently pursue the

supplementation(s) of such documentation and promptly deliver such supplementation(s) to the DFCM Representative.

(1) **DFCM**

**REPRESENTATIVE RESPONSE.** One of the following may occur after a PCO is filed with the DFCM Representative:

(a) The DFCM Representative, after considering any input by the A/E, may reach an agreement with the Contractor and issue a Change Order.

(b) The DFCM, after considering any input by the A/E, may issue a Construction Change Directive.

(c) If the DFCM Representative, after considering any input by the A/E, disagrees with the Contractor's PCO, the DFCM representative may seek additional information or verification from the Contractor, the A/E or other sources, may negotiate with the Contractor, may issue a Change Order upon such later agreement, may retract the PR, or may issue a Construction Change Directive.

(d) If a Construction Change Directive is issued which identifies the DFCM Representative's position in regard to the subject contract sum and/or time adjustment or if the PCO is denied by the DFCM Representative, the Contractor must file a PRE under Article 7.7 below no later than twenty-one (21) days after the Contractor's receipt of the Construction Change Directive or such denial of the PCO. Failure to file a PRE in these instances shall be deemed to waive any right to additional time or money related to the PCO, Construction Change Directive or denial of the PCO. Such waiver shall entitle the DFCM to convert the Construction Change Directive into a Change Order, whether or not executed by the Contractor.

If the Construction Change Directive leaves open the determination of additional time or money related to the directed change, then the time period for commencement of filing the PRE shall not accrue until such time as the DFCM has conveyed to the Contractor a position as to the time and money owing as a result of the directed change.

The A/E must continually work with the DFCM in providing data, documentation and efforts to resolve the issues related to the PR.

**7.3 PROPOSAL REQUEST INITIATED BY DFCM.** DFCM may file a Proposal Request with the Contractor seeking information, data and/or pricing relating to a change in the contract time and or monies owing for particular scope changes or other modifications to the Contract Documents. The PR shall provide a time limit for the Contractor to file a response with the A/E and the DFCM Representative. If a proposal is not timely provided by the Contractor, DFCM may calculate the Change Order under Article 7.4.2 below. Upon such timely receipt of the proposal, one of the following shall occur:

**7.3.1 IF AGREEMENT, CHANGE ORDER ISSUED.** The DFCM Representative, after considering any input by the A/E, may reach an agreement with the Contractor and issue a Change Order.

**7.3.2 IF DISAGREEMENT.** If the DFCM Representative disagrees with the Contractor's proposal, after considering any input from the A/E, the DFCM representative may seek additional information or verification from the Contractor or other sources, may negotiate with the Contractor, may issue a Change Order upon such later agreement, may retract the PR, or may issue a Construction Change Directive. If a Construction Change Directive is issued which identifies the DFCM representative's position in regard to the subject contract sum and/or time adjustment, the Contractor must file a PRE within twenty-one (21) days of the Contractor's receipt of the Construction Change Directive, or the Contractor shall be deemed to waive any such request for additional time or money as a result of the issuance of the Construction Change Directive. Such waiver shall entitle the DFCM to convert the Construction Change Directive into a Change Order, whether or not executed by the Contractor. If the Construction Change Directive leaves open the determination of additional time or money related to the directed change, then the time period for commencement of filing the PRE shall not accrue until such time as the DFCM has conveyed

to the Contractor a position as to the time and money owing as a result of the directed change.

#### **7.4 EVALUATION OF PROPOSAL FOR ISSUING CHANGE ORDERS.**

**7.4.1 ADJUSTING SUM BASED UPON AGREEMENT.** If the Change Order provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on the mutual agreement of the Contractor and DFCM, including any terms mandated by unit price agreements or other terms of the Contract Documents.

#### **7.4.2 DFCM RESOLUTION OF SUM AND STANDARDS IN THE ABSENCE OF AN AGREEMENT UNDER PARAGRAPH 7.4.1.**

In the absence of an agreement under Paragraph 7.4.1 above, the adjustment shall be based on an itemized accounting of costs and savings supported by appropriate data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Paragraph shall be limited to the following:

(1) All direct and indirect costs of labor; including workers compensation insurance, social security and other federal and state payroll based taxes, and payroll based fringe benefits paid by Contractor so long as they are reasonable and no higher than that charged to other clients;

(2) Costs of materials, on-site temporary facilities, supplies and equipment (except hand tools) required for or incorporated into the work;

(3) Rental costs of machinery, equipment, tools (except hand tools), and on-site temporary facilities, whether rented from the Contractor or others;

(4) Costs of permits and other fees, sales, use or similar taxes related to the Work;

(5) Additional costs of field supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change; and

(6) Overhead and profit by the following liquidated formula which is not a penalty but a reasonable calculation agreed upon at the time of execution of the Contractor's Agreement, and provided by formula herein due to the fact that the actual amount due for said overhead and profit cannot easily be ascertained at the time of such execution. The markups in 7.4.2(6)(a) and (b) below are to cover the Contractor's additional payment and performance bond premiums, insurance premiums not specified under Paragraph 7.4.2(1), home office and on-site overhead and profit. Overhead and profit includes, but is not limited to the Contractor's Project Manager and Cost Estimator. Each request for pricing shall stand on its own and not be combined with other requests for pricing in determining the allowed markup described below. A particular request for pricing shall include all items reasonably related together and determinable at the time of the request. If several unrelated requests for pricing are grouped together in a single Change Order, each request for pricing will be considered separately for purposes of calculating the markup under the following formula:

(a) A markup of 15% shall be applied to the cost of each individual charge up to \$20,000 in cost, but in no case shall the markup be less than \$150;

(b) A markup of 10% shall be applied to the portion of the cost of each individual charge in excess of \$20,000;

(c) Subcontractors at any tier shall be entitled to markup their costs related to a Change Order with the same percentages as specified in Paragraphs 7.4.2(6)(a) and (b) above, except that the minimum markup shall be \$50 for any individual change.

**7.4.3 CREDITS.** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the DFCM for a deletion or change which results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed to DFCM based upon corroboration by an appropriate source.



## **7.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES.**

### **7.5.1 WHEN USED AND CONTRACTOR'S RIGHT TO CHALLENGE.**

A Construction Change Directive may be issued by the DFCM Representative in the case of a need for the Work to commence. If the Construction Change Directive leaves open the determination of additional time or money related to the directed change, then the Construction Change Directive shall indicate the timeframe(s) in which further information is to be provided to resolve the matter. At any time that the DFCM and the Contractor agree upon the time and money related to a Construction Change Directive, a Change Order shall be executed by the parties. Additionally, the Construction Change Directive may be converted to a Change Order under Paragraph 7.2.2 or Article 7.3 above.

**7.5.2 PROCEED WITH WORK AND NOTIFY DFCM ABOUT ADJUSTMENT METHOD.** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved.

**7.5.3 INTERIM PAYMENTS BY DFCM.** Pending the final determination of the total cost of the Construction Change Directive, DFCM shall pay any undisputed amount to the Contractor.

**7.6 A/E'S SUPPLEMENTAL INSTRUCTION (Commonly referred to as an "ASI").** The A/E may at any time that is consistent with maintaining the quality, safety, time, budget and function of the Work, issue to the Contractor a supplemental instruction ("ASI") after approval from the DFCM Representative is obtained. The Contractor must file with the DFCM Representative a PCO under Paragraph 7.2.2 above, within 21 calendar days of the Contractor's receipt of the ASI, or the Contractor shall be deemed to have waived any right to additional time or monies as a result of such ASI.

## **7.7 PROCEDURE FOR PRELIMINARY RESOLUTION EFFORTS.**

**7.7.1 REQUEST FOR PRELIMINARY RESOLUTION EFFORT (PRE).** A Contractor raising an issue related to a breach of contract or an issue concerning time or money shall file a PRE as a prerequisite for any consideration of the issue by the DFCM. The labeling of the notice or request shall not preclude the consideration of the issue by the DFCM.

**7.7.2 TIME FOR FILING.** The PRE must be filed in writing with the DFCM Representative within twenty-one (21) days of any of the following:

(1) Issuance of a Construction Change Directive that defines the time and sum due the Contractor but the Contractor disagrees with such assessment;

(2) Issuance of DFCM's position in regard to a Construction Change Directive that originally left open the time and/or sum due to the Contractor;

(3) Issuance of a denial of a PCO by DFCM;

(4) In the case of a Subcontractor, after the expiration of the time period for the Contractor/Subcontractor PRE process under Paragraph 7.7.5 below; or

(5) When the Contractor knows or should have known about any other issue where the Contractor seeks additional monies, time or other relief from the State of Utah or DFCM.

**7.7.3 CONTENT REQUIREMENT.** The PRE shall be required to include in writing to the extent information is reasonably available at the time of such filing:

- (1) A description of the issue;
- (2) The potential impact on cost and time or other breach of contract; and
- (3) An indication of the relief sought.

#### **7.7.4 SUPPLEMENTATION.**

Additional detail of the content requirement under Paragraph 7.7.3 above shall be provided later if the detail is not yet available at the initial filing as follows:

(1) While the issue is continuing or the impact is being determined, the Contractor shall provide a written updated status report every 30 days or as otherwise reasonably requested by the DFCM Representative; and

(2) After the scope of work or other factors addressing the issue are completed, the complete information, including any impacts on time, cost or other relief requested, must be provided to the DFCM Representative within twenty-one (21) days of such completion.

#### **7.7.5 SUBCONTRACTORS.**

(1) Under no circumstances shall any provision of these Contract Documents be intended or construed to create any contractual relationship between the DFCM and any Subcontractor.

(2) The Contractor must include the provisions of this Paragraph 7.7.5 in its contract with the first tier Subcontractor, and each Subcontractor must do likewise. At the Contractor's discretion, the Contractor may allow a Subcontractor at the 2<sup>nd</sup> tier and beyond to submit the PRE directly with the Contractor.

(3) In order for a Subcontractor at any tier to be involved with the PRE of the DFCM, the following conditions and process shall apply:

(a) The Subcontractor must have attempted to resolve the issue with the Contractor including the submission of a PRE with the Contractor.

(b) The Subcontractor must file a copy of the PRE with the DFCM Representative;

(c) The PRE to the Contractor must meet the time, content and supplementation requirements of Paragraphs 7.7.2, 7.7.3 and 7.7.4. The triggering event for a

Subcontractor to file a PRE shall be the time at which the issue cannot be resolved through the normal business practices associated with the contract, excluding arbitration and litigation;

(d) The PRE submitted to the Contractor shall only be eligible for consideration in the DFCM's PRE process to the extent the issue is reasonably related to the performance of the DFCM or an entity for which the DFCM is liable;

(e) The Contractor shall resolve the PRE to the satisfaction of the Subcontractor within sixty (60) days of its submittal to the Contractor or such other time period as subsequently agreed to by the Subcontractor in writing. If the Contractor fails to resolve the PRE with the Subcontractor within such required time period, the Subcontractor may submit in writing the PRE with the Contractor and the DFCM. In order to be eligible for DFCM consideration of the PRE, the Subcontractor must submit the PRE within twenty-one (21) days of the expiration of the time period for the Contractor/Subcontractor PRE process. The DFCM shall consider the PRE as being submitted by the Contractor on behalf of the Subcontractor;

(f) Upon such PRE being submitted, the Contractor shall cooperate with the DFCM Representative in reviewing the issue;

(g) The DFCM shall not be obligated to consider any submission which is not in accordance with any provision of this Article 7.7;

(h) The Subcontractor may accompany the Contractor in participating with the DFCM regarding the PRE raised by the Subcontractor. The DFCM is not precluded from meeting with the Contractor separately and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to keep the Subcontractor informed of any such meetings; and

(i) Notwithstanding any provision of this Paragraph 7.7.5, a Subcontractor shall be entitled to pursue a payment bond claim.

#### **7.7.6 PRE RESOLUTION**

**PROCEDURE.** The DFCM Representative may request additional information and may meet with the parties involved with the issue.

**7.7.7 CONTRACTOR REQUIRED TO CONTINUE PERFORMANCE.** Pending the final resolution of the issue, unless otherwise agreed upon in writing by the DFCM Representative, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the DFCM shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**7.7.8 DECISION.** The DFCM shall issue to the Contractor, and any other party brought into the process by the DFCM Representative as being liable to the DFCM, a written decision providing the basis for the decision on the issues presented by all of the parties within thirty (30) days of receipt of all the information required under Paragraphs 7.7.3 and 7.7.4.

**7.7.9 DECISION FINAL UNLESS CLAIM SUBMITTED.** The decision by the DFCM shall be final, and not subject to any further administrative or judicial review (not including judicial enforcement) unless a Claim is submitted in accordance with these General Conditions.

**7.7.10 EXTENSION REQUIRES MUTUAL AGREEMENT.** Any time period specified in this Article 7.7 may be extended by mutual agreement of the Contractor and the DFCM.

**7.7.11 IF DECISION NOT ISSUED.** If the decision is not issued within the thirty (30) day period, including any agreed to extensions, the issue may be pursued as a Claim.

#### **7.7.12 PAYMENT FOR PERFORMANCE.**

(1) Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, any final decision where the DFCM is to pay additional monies to the Contractor, shall not be delayed by any PRE, Claim or appeal by another party.

(2) Payment to the Contractor of any final decision shall be made by the DFCM in accordance with the contract for the completed work.

(3) Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents, payment to the Contractor shall be subject to any set-off, claims or counterclaims of the DFCM.

(4) Payment to the Contractor for a Subcontractor issue submitted by the Contractor shall be paid by the Contractor to the Subcontractor in accordance with the contract between the Contractor and the Subcontractor.

(5) Any payment or performance determined owing by the Contractor to the DFCM shall be made in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **7.8. RESOLUTION OF CLAIM.**

**7.8.1 CLAIM.** If the decision on the PRE is not issued within the required timeframe or if the Contractor is not satisfied with the decision, the Contractor or other party brought into the process by the DFCM, may submit a Claim in accordance with this Article 7.8 as a prerequisite for any further consideration by the DFCM or the right to any judicial review of the issue giving rise to the claim.

**7.8.2 SUBCONTRACTORS.** In order for a Subcontractor to have its issue considered in the Claim process by the DFCM, the Subcontractor that had its issue considered under Paragraph 7.7.5 may submit the issue as a Claim by filing it with the Contractor and the DFCM within the same timeframe and with the same content requirements as required of a Claim submitted by the Contractor under this rule. The DFCM shall consider the Claim as being submitted by the Contractor on behalf of the Subcontractor. Under no circumstances shall any provision of these General Conditions or the Contract Documents be intended or construed so as to create any contractual relationship between the DFCM and any Subcontractor.

(1) Upon such Claim being submitted, the Contractor shall fully cooperate

with the Director, the person(s) evaluating the claim and any subsequent reviewing authority.

(2) The Director shall not be obligated to consider any submission which is not in accordance with this Paragraph 7.8.2.

(3) The Subcontractor may accompany the Contractor in participating with the Director, the person(s) evaluating the Claim and any subsequent reviewing authority regarding the Claim. The Director, the person(s) evaluating the Claim and any subsequent reviewing authority is not precluded from meeting with the Contractor separately, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to keep the Subcontractor informed of any such meetings and matters discussed.

(4) Notwithstanding any provision of this Article 7.8, a Subcontractor shall be entitled to pursue a payment bond claim.

**7.8.3 TIME FOR FILING.** The Claim must be filed in writing promptly with the Director, but in no case more than twenty-one (21) days after the decision is issued on the PRE under Paragraph 7.7.8 or no more than twenty-one (21) days after the thirty (30) day period under Paragraph 7.7.11 has expired with a decision not issued, whichever is later.

**7.8.4 CONTENT REQUIREMENT.** The written Claim shall include:

(1) A description of the issues in dispute;

(2) The basis for the Claim, including documentation and analysis required by the contract and applicable law and rules that allow for the proper determination of the Claim;

(3) A detailed cost estimate for any amount sought, including copies of any related invoices; and

(4) A specific identification of the relief sought.

**7.8.5 EXTENSION OF TIME TO SUBMIT DOCUMENTATION.** The time period for submitting documentation and any

analysis to support a Claim may be extended by the Director upon written request of the claimant showing just cause for such extension, which request must be included in the initial Claim submittal.

**7.8.6 CONTRACTOR REQUIRED TO CONTINUE PERFORMANCE.** Pending the final determination of the Claim, including any judicial review or appeal process, and unless otherwise agreed upon in writing by the Director, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the DFCM shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**7.8.7 AGREEMENT OF CLAIMANT ON METHOD AND PERSON(S) EVALUATING THE CLAIM.** The Director shall first attempt to reach agreement with the claimant on the method and person(s) to evaluate the Claim. If such agreement cannot be made within fourteen (14) days of filing of the Claim, the Director shall select the method and person(s), considering the purposes described in Rule R23-26-1. Unless agreed to by the Director and the claimant, any selected person shall not have a conflict of interest or appearance of impropriety. Any party and the person(s) evaluating the Claim has a duty to promptly raise any circumstances regarding a conflict of interest or appearance of impropriety. If such a reasonable objection is raised, and unless otherwise agreed to by the Director and the claimant, the Director shall take appropriate action to eliminate the conflict of interest or appearance of impropriety. The dispute resolution methods and person(s) may include any of the following:

(1) A single expert and/or hearing officer qualified in the field that is the subject of the Claim;

(2) An expert panel, consisting of members that are qualified in a field that is the subject of the Claim;

(3) An arbitration process which may be binding if agreed to by the parties to the Claim;

(4) A mediator; or

(5) Any other method that best accomplishes the purposes set forth in Rule R23-26-1.

**7.8.8 THE EVALUATION PROCESS, TIMEFRAMES OF EVALUATOR(S), DIRECTOR'S DETERMINATION, ADMINISTRATIVE APPEAL TO THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR AND JUDICIAL REVIEW.** The Claim shall be evaluated, the timeframe for specific events related to the person(s) evaluating the Claim, the Director's determination, any appeal to the Executive Director and any judicial review shall be subject to the provisions of Rule R23-26-5(8), R23-26-5(9), R23-26-6 and R23-26-8. A copy of these Administrative Rules are available at DFCM.

**7.8.9 APPEAL PROCESS PREREQUISITE FOR FURTHER CONSIDERATION OR JUDICIAL REVIEW.** The administrative appeal to the Executive Director is a prerequisite for any further consideration by the State of Utah, or to judicial review of the issue giving rise to the Claim. It shall be considered that the Contractor, or another party brought into the process by the DFCM, has not exhausted its administrative remedies if such an administrative appeal is not undertaken.

## **7.9 PAYMENT OF CLAIM.**

7.9.1 When a stand alone component of a Claim has received a final determination, and is no longer subject to review or appeal, that amount shall be paid in accordance with the payment provisions of the Contract Documents or judicial order.

7.9.2 When the entire Claim has received a final determination, and is no longer subject to review or appeal, the full amount shall be paid within fourteen (14) days of the date of the final determination unless the work or services has not been completed, in which case the amount shall be paid in accordance with the payment provisions of the Contract Documents to the point that the work or services is completed.

7.9.3 The final determination date is the earlier of the date upon which the claimant accepted the settlement in writing with an

executed customary release document and waived its rights of appeal, or the expiration of the appeal period, with no appeal filed, or the determination made resulting from the final appeal.

7.9.4 Any final determination where the Division is to pay additional monies to the Contractor shall not be delayed by any appeal or request for judicial review by another party brought into the process by the Division as being liable to the DFCM.

7.9.5 Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents, payment of all or part of a Claim is subject to any set-off, claims or counterclaims of the DFCM.

7.9.6 Payment to the Contractor for a Subcontractor issue (Claim) deemed filed by the Contractor, shall be paid by the Contractor to the Subcontractor in accordance with the contract between the Contractor and the Subcontractor.

7.9.7 The execution of a customary release document related to any payment may be required as a condition of making the payment.

## **7.10 ALLOCATION OF COSTS OF CLAIM RESOLUTION PROCESS.**

7.10.1 In order to file a Claim, a claimant must pay a \$1500 filing fee to the DFCM. When the Claim is a pass-through from a Subcontractor in accordance with Paragraph 7.7.5, the payment of the fee shall be made by the Subcontractor.

7.10.2 Unless otherwise agreed to by the parties to the Claim, the costs of resolving the Claim shall be allocated among the parties on the same proportionate basis as the determination of financial responsibility for the Claim.

7.10.3 The costs of resolving the Claim that are subject to allocation include the claimant's filing fee, the costs of any person(s) evaluating the Claim, the costs of making any required record of the process, and any additional testing or inspection procured to investigate and/or evaluate the Claim.

7.10.4 Each party is responsible for its own attorney fees.

**7.11 ALTERNATIVE PROCEDURES.** To the extent otherwise permitted by law, if all parties to a Claim agree in writing, a protocol for resolving a Claim may be used that differs from the process described in this Article 7.

**7.12 IMPACT ON FUTURE SELECTIONS.**

7.12.1 The presentation of a good faith and non-frivolous issue or Claim shall not be considered by the DFCM's selection process for a future award of contract; and

7.12.2 The submission of a bad faith and frivolous issue or Claim, or the failure by a Contractor to facilitate resolution of a Claim, may be considered in the DFCM's evaluation of performance.

**7.13 REPORT TO BUILDING BOARD.** The DFCM may report on the claim to the Utah State Building Board.

**7.14 DFCM'S RIGHT TO HAVE ISSUES, DISPUTES OR CLAIMS CONSIDERED.** As stated in Rule R23-26-1(6), Articles 7.7 through 7.13 above do not limit the right of DFCM to have any of its issues, disputes or claims considered. DFCM reserves all rights to pursue its issues, disputes or claims in law or equity including, but not limited to, any or all of the following: damages, delay damages and impacts, losses, liability, patent or latent defects, or failure to perform under the Contract Documents. If the Director appoints an expert or a panel to consider any such issue(s), dispute(s) or claim(s) of DFCM, the Contractor shall cooperate with such expert or panel process.

**ARTICLE 8. PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION.**

**8.1 SCHEDULE OF VALUES.** With the first Application for Payment, the Contractor shall submit to the A/E and the DFCM Representative a schedule of values allocated to all the various portions of the Work. The Schedule of Values shall be submitted on the form approved and provided by DFCM. The A/E shall make recommendations to the DFCM Representative

regarding the Schedule of Values including any suggested modifications. When approved, including any approved modifications, by the DFCM Representative, it shall be the basis for future Contractor Applications for Payments. The Contractor shall not be entitled to payment until receipt and acceptance of the Schedule of Values.

**8.2 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT.**

**8.2.1 IN GENERAL.** The following general requirements shall be met:

(1) The Contractor shall submit to the A/E an itemized Application for Payment for Work completed in accordance with the schedule of values and that reflects retainage as provided for in the Contractor's Agreement. The Application for Payment shall be on a special form approved and provided by DFCM.

(2) Such application shall be supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the DFCM or A/E may require. Said data may include, but is not limited to, copies of requisitions from Subcontractors.

(3) Such applications may include requests for payment pursuant to approved Change Orders or Construction Change Directives.

(4) Such applications may not include requests for payment for portions of the Work performed by a subcontractor when the Contractor does not intend to pay to a Subcontractor because of a dispute or other reason.

(5) In executing the Application for Payment, the Contractor shall attest that subcontractors involved with prior applications for payment have been paid, unless the Contractor provides a detailed explanation why such payment may not have occurred. DFCM reserves the right to require the Contractor to submit a payment waiver from one or more subcontractors.

**8.2.2 PAYMENT FOR MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT.** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment

delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the DFCM and A/E, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the DFCM to establish the DFCM's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the DFCM's interest, and shall include applicable insurance, storage and transportation to the site for such materials and equipment stored off the site. The DFCM may require copies of invoices or other suitable documentation.

**8.2.3 WARRANTY OF TITLE.** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the DFCM no later than the time for payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment, all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the DFCM shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, or other persons or entities making a claim by reason of having provided labor, materials and/or equipment relating to the Work.

**8.2.4 HOLDBACK BY DFCM.** Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in the Contract Documents, the DFCM may, as a result of the claims resolution process, withhold any payment to the Contractor hereunder if and for so long as the Contractor fails to perform any of its obligations hereunder or otherwise is in default under any of the Contract Documents.

### **8.3 CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT.**

**8.3.1 ISSUED BY A/E.** The A/E shall within ten (10) days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either issue to the DFCM a Certificate for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the A/E determines due, or notify the Contractor and DFCM in writing of the A/E's reasons for withholding certification in whole or in part as

provided in Paragraph 8.4.1. If the A/E fails to act within said ten (10) day period, the Contractor may file the Application for Payment directly with the DFCM Representative and the DFCM will thereafter have twenty (20) days from the date of the DFCM's receipt to resolve the amount to be paid and to pay the undisputed amount. The accuracy of the Contractor's Applications for Payment shall be Contractor's responsibility, not A/E's.

#### **8.3.2 A/E'S REPRESENTATIONS.**

The A/E's issuance of a Certificate for Payment shall constitute a representation to the DFCM that to the best of the A/E's knowledge, information and belief, based upon the A/E's observations at the site, the data comprising the Application for Payment, and what is reasonably inferable from the observations and data, that the Work has progressed to the point indicated in the Application and that the quality of the work is in accordance with the Contract Documents. The foregoing representations are subject to minor deviations from the Contract Documents correctable prior to completion and to specific qualifications expressed by the A/E. The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will further constitute a representation that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment shall not be a representation that the A/E has (a) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work, (b) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, (c) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and material suppliers and other data requested by the DFCM to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment, (d) ascertained how or for what purpose the Contractor used money previously paid on account of Contract Sum, or (e) any duty to make such inquiries.

### **8.4 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION.**

**8.4.1 WHEN WITHHELD.** The A/E may decide not to certify payment and may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the DFCM, if in the A/E's judgment the representations to the DFCM required in

Paragraph 8.3.2 above can not be made. If the A/E is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the A/E shall notify the Contractor and DFCM as provided in Paragraph 8.3.1 above. If the Contractor and A/E can not agree on a revised amount, the A/E shall promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount to which the A/E makes such representations to the DFCM. The A/E may also decide not to certify payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence or observations, may nullify the whole or part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the A/E's opinion to protect the DFCM from loss because of:

- (1) Defective Work not remedied;
- (2) Third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims;
- (3) Failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or for labor, materials or equipment;
- (4) Reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- (5) Damage to the DFCM or another contractor;
- (6) Reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- (7) Failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**8.4.2 CERTIFICATION ISSUED WHEN REASONS FOR WITHHOLDING REMOVED.** When the reasons stated in Paragraph 8.4.1 for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for such related amounts.

**8.4.3 CONTINUE WORK EVEN IF CONTRACTOR DISPUTES A/E'S DETERMINATION.** If the Contractor disputes

any determination by the A/E or the result of the claims resolution process with regard to any Certification of Payment, the Contractor nevertheless shall expeditiously continue to prosecute the Work.

**8.4.4 DFCM NOT IN BREACH.** The DFCM shall not be deemed to be in breach of this Contract by reason of the withholding of any payment pursuant to any provision of the Contract Documents provided the DFCM's action or such withholding is consistent with the results of the dispute resolution process.

## **8.5 PROGRESS PAYMENTS.**

### **8.5.1 IN GENERAL, INTEREST OR LATE PAYMENTS.**

(1) Except as provided in Paragraph 8.3.1, the DFCM shall pay any undisputed amount within thirty (30) days of the date that the application for payment was submitted to the A/E. In no event shall DFCM be required to pay any disputed amount.

(2) Except as otherwise provided by law, if any payment is late based upon the provisions of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be paid interest in an amount equal to the published Wall Street Journal prime rate plus 2%. The published Wall Street Journal Prime Rate shall be determined using such rate that is published closest to the 1<sup>st</sup> of the month for each month of the late period. The amount of payment of interest shall be apportioned using such rate(s) for the late period.

**8.5.2 CONTRACTOR AND SUBCONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY.** The Contractor shall promptly pay each Subcontractor, upon receipt of payment from the DFCM, out of the amount paid to the Contractor on account of such Subcontractor's portion of the Work, the amount to which said Subcontractor is entitled. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payment to its Subcontractors in a similar manner.



**8.5.3 INFORMATION FURNISHED BY A/E OR DFCM TO SUBCONTRACTOR.**

The A/E or DFCM shall, on request, furnish to the Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the A/E and DFCM on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**8.5.4 DFCM AND A/E NOT LIABLE.**

Neither the DFCM or A/E shall have an obligation to pay, monitor or enforce the payment of money to a Subcontractor, except to the extent as may otherwise be required by law.

**8.5.5 CERTIFICATE, PAYMENT OR USE NOT ACCEPTANCE OF IMPROPER WORK.**

A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the DFCM shall not constitute acceptance of Work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**8.6 PAYMENT UPON SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION.**

Upon Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof and upon application by the Contractor and certification by the A/E, the DFCM shall make payment, reflecting adjustment in retainage, if any, for such Work or portion thereof as provided in the Contract Documents. To the extent allowed by law, the DFCM may retain up to 200% of the fair market value of the work that has not been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**8.7 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE.**

**8.7.1 IN GENERAL.** The DFCM may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is Substantially Complete, provided the DFCM and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the

Work and commencement of the warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion to be substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the A/E as previously provided for herein. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. Contractor shall have continuing responsibility to protect the site and the Work during such partial occupancy and shall be responsible for damage except to the extent caused solely by the DFCM during such partial occupancy or use.

The stage of progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the DFCM and Contractor.

**8.7.2 INSPECTION.** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the DFCM, Contractor and A/E shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

**8.7.3 NOT CONSTITUTE ACCEPTANCE.** Except to the extent it is agreed upon in writing by the DFCM, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portion of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirement of the Contract Documents.

**8.8 FINAL PAYMENT.**

**8.8.1 CERTIFICATE FOR PAYMENT.** The A/E's final Certificate for Payment shall constitute a further representation that the conditions listed in Paragraph 8.8.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

**8.8.2 CONDITIONS FOR FINAL PAYMENT.** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the A/E the following to the extent required by the DFCM Representative:

(1) An affidavit that payrolls, bills for material and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the DFCM or the State of Utah's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts

withheld by DFCM) have been paid or otherwise satisfied;

(2) A current or additional certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect and will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days prior written notice, by certified mail, return receipt requested, has been given to the DFCM;

(3) A written statement that the Contractor knows of no substantial reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents;

(4) If requested by surety in a timely manner or by DFCM, consent of surety, to final payment;

(5) Receipt of Record Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders and other Modifications maintained at the site; the warranties, instructions, operation and maintenance manuals, and training videos required to be furnished by the Contract Documents;

(6) Other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts, releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the DFCM. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the DFCM, the DFCM may require consent of Surety to the final payment. If such liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances remain unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the DFCM all money that the DFCM may be compelled to pay in discharging such lien, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees; and

(7) A written statement demonstrating how the Contractor will distribute interest earned on retention to Subcontractors as required by Section 13.8.5, U.C.A.

**8.8.3 WAIVER OF CLAIMS: FINAL PAYMENT.** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the-DFCM except those arising from:

(1) Liens, Claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;

(2) Failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;

(3) Terms of warranties required by the Contract Documents; or

(4) The one-year guaranty period and any corrected Work.

**8.8.4 DELAYS NOT CONTRACTOR'S FAULT.** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, the DFCM shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the A/E, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of claims. Unless otherwise stated by the DFCM in writing, the making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of claims by the DFCM as provided in Paragraph 8.8.3 for that portion of that Work fully completed and accepted by the DFCM.

**8.8.5 WAIVER BY ACCEPTING FINAL PAYMENT.** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor or a Subcontractor shall constitute a waiver of Claims by that payee except those Claims previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment. Such waivers shall be in addition to the waiver described in Paragraph 8.8.3.

**ARTICLE 9. TESTS AND INSPECTIONS, SUBSTANTIAL AND FINAL COMPLETION, UNCOVERING, CORRECTION OF WORK AND GUARANTY PERIOD.**

**9.1 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS.**

**9.1.1 IN GENERAL.** Tests, inspections and approvals of portions of the Work required by the Contract Documents or by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, resolutions or orders of public authorities having jurisdiction shall be made at an appropriate time. Unless otherwise specifically set forth in the Contract Documents or agreed to by the DFCM in writing, the DFCM shall contract for such tests, inspections and approvals with an independent entity, or with the appropriate public authority, and the DFCM shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections and approvals except as provided below. If any of the Work is required to be inspected or approved by the terms of the Contract Documents or by any public authority, the Contractor shall, at least two working days prior to the time of the desired inspection, and following the procedures established by the DFCM, request such inspection or approval to be performed. The Contractor shall give the A/E timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the A/E may observe such procedures.

**9.1.2 FAILURE OF AN INSPECTOR TO APPEAR.** Work shall not proceed without any required inspection and the associated authorization by DFCM to proceed unless the following procedures and requirements have been met:

(1) The inspection or approval was requested in a timely manner as provided in Paragraph 9.1.1;

(2) The Contractor received written confirmation from the inspection entity that the inspection was scheduled;

(3) The Contractor has contacted or attempted to contact the inspector to confirm that the inspector is unable to perform the inspection as scheduled;

(4) If the inspector has confirmed that it is unable to perform the inspection as scheduled or if the Contractor is unable to contact the inspector, the contractor shall attempt to contact the State Building Official or DFCM Representative for instruction; and

(5) The Contractor has documented the condition of the work prior to being covered through photos or other means.

**9.1.3 NONCONFORMING WORK.** If such procedures for testing, inspection or approval under Paragraph 9.1.1 reveal failure of portions of the Work to comply with the requirements established by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall bear all costs made necessary by such failure including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the DFCM's expenses, including the cost of retesting for verification of compliance if necessary, until the DFCM accepts the Work in question as complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**9.1.4 CERTIFICATES.** Required certificates of testing, inspection or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the A/E.

**9.1.5 A/E OBSERVING.** If the A/E is to observe tests, inspections or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the A/E shall do so with reasonable promptness and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**9.1.6 PROMPTNESS.** Tests, inspections and arrangements for approvals conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## **9.2 INSPECTIONS: SUBSTANTIAL AND FINAL.**

**9.2.1 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION INSPECTION.** Prior to requesting a substantial completion inspection, the Contractor shall prepare a comprehensive initial punchlist, including unresolved items from prior inspections, for review by the DFCM and A/E to determine if the Project is ready for a substantial completion inspection. If the DFCM determines that the initial punchlist indicates that the Project is not substantially complete, the initial punchlist will be returned to the Contractor with written comments. If the DFCM determines that the initial punchlist indicates that the Project may be substantially complete, the A/E shall promptly organize and

perform a Substantial Completion inspection in the presence of the DFCM and all appropriate authorities.

(1) If the A/E reasonably determines that the initial punchlist prepared by the Contractor substantially understates the amount of the Work remaining to be completed and the Project is not substantially complete, the A/E shall report this promptly to the DFCM, and upon concurrence of the DFCM, the Contractor will be assessed the costs of the inspection and punchlist preparation incurred by the A/E and the DFCM.

(2) When the Work or designated portion thereof is Substantially Complete, the A/E shall prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion which shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; shall establish responsibilities of the DFCM and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the work and insurance; and shall fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the punchlist accompanying the Certificate. The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall require approval by the DFCM Representative. If there is a punchlist, the Contractor shall proceed promptly to complete and correct items on the list. Failure to include an item on the punchlist does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

(3) Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof except to the extent as provided otherwise in the Contract Documents or if such warranty is related to an item where the work is not complete. Such warranty documents shall state the length of the warranty, which must comply with the Contract Documents.

(4) The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted by the A/E to the DFCM and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in such Certificate.

(5) Except to the extent the DFCM Representative otherwise approves in

advance and in writing, the Contractor shall submit the following documents in order to achieve Substantial Completion: written warranties, guarantees, operation and maintenance manuals, and all complete as-built drawings. The Contractor must also provide or obtain any required approvals for occupancy. The Contractor is responsible for the guaranty of all Work, whether performed by it or by its Subcontractors at any tier.

### **9.2.2 FINAL COMPLETION**

**INSPECTION.** Prior to requesting a final inspection, the Contractor shall verify all punchlist items are corrected/completed. Once all punchlist items are corrected/completed the Contractor shall notify the DFCM and request a final inspection. The DFCM shall notify the A/E and perform a final inspection. Two final inspections may be allowed due to required weather changes required to complete some items. When all punchlist items are completed a final pay request will be provided by the Contractor, authorized by the A/E and processed by the DFCM.

### **9.3 UNCOVERING OF WORK.**

**9.3.1 UNCOVER UNINSPECTED WORK.** Except as provided in Paragraph 9.3.3, if a portion of the Work is covered prior to an Inspector's approval to proceed, it must, be uncovered for the Inspector's inspection and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**9.3.2 OBSERVATION PRIOR TO COVERING.** Except as provided in Paragraph 9.3.3, if the DFCM or the A/E has requested in writing to observe conditions prior to any Work being covered or if such observation is specified in the Contract Documents, and the Work is covered without such observation, the Contractor shall be required to uncover and appropriately replace the Work at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time. If the Contractor requests an inspection and the DFCM or A/E, including any inspector of each, does not appear, the Contractor shall immediately notify the DFCM of such lack of appearance, but shall not cover the Work without such inspection.

**9.3.3 WHEN AN INSPECTOR FAILS TO APPEAR OR A/E OR DFCM DID NOT MAKE PRIOR REQUEST.**

If Work is performed by the Contractor without an inspection as provided in Paragraph 9.1.2 or if a portion of the Work has been covered which the A/E or DFCM has not specifically requested to observe prior to its being covered or such observation is not specified by the Contract Documents, the A/E or DFCM may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, costs of uncovering and replacement, shall, by appropriate Change Order, be charged to the DFCM. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall pay such costs unless the condition was caused by the DFCM or a separate contractor in which event the DFCM shall be responsible for payment of such costs.

**9.4 CORRECTION OF WORK AND GUARANTY PERIOD.**

**9.4.1 CONTRACTOR CORRECT THE WORK.** The Contractor shall correct Work rejected by the A/E, Inspector or DFCM, or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether observed before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. The Contractor shall bear the costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections and compensation for the A/E's and Inspector's services and expenses made necessary thereby.

**9.4.2 GUARANTY AND CORRECTION AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION.** If within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof, or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Paragraph 9.2.1 or by terms of an applicable special warranty or guaranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, including failure to perform for its intended purpose, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the DFCM to do so unless the DFCM has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The period of one

year shall be extended with respect to portions of the Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual performance of the Work. This obligation of the Contractor under this Paragraph 9.4.2 shall be operative notwithstanding the acceptance of the Work under the Contract, the final certificate of payment, partial or total occupancy and/or termination of the Contract. The DFCM shall give notice of observed defects with reasonable promptness, however, failure to give such notice shall not relieve the Contractor of its obligation to correct the Work at the cost that the Contractor would have incurred if the DFCM did so report with reasonable promptness. All corrected Work shall be subject to a one-year guaranty period the same in all respects as the original Work, except that such guaranty period shall commence from the time of Substantial Completion of the corrected Work. This guaranty period does not affect the DFCM's right to pursue any available remedies against Contractor.

**9.4.3 REMOVAL OF WORK.**

(1) The Contractor shall promptly remove from the premises all Work that the DFCM and/or the A/E determines as being in nonconformance with the Contract Documents, whether incorporated or not.

(2) The Contractor shall promptly replace and re-execute the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and without expense to the DFCM.

(3) The Contractor shall bear the expense of correcting destroyed or damaged construction, whether completed or partially completed, of the DFCM or of other contractors destroyed or damaged by such removal or replacement.

(4) If the Contractor does not remove such rejected Work within a reasonable time, fixed by written notice, the DFCM may have the materials removed and stored at the expense of the Contractor.

(5) If the Contractor does not correct the nonconforming Work within a

reasonable time, fixed by written notice, the DFCM may correct it in accordance with Paragraph 12.2.2 of these General Conditions.

**9.4.4 NOT LIMIT OTHER OBLIGATIONS.** Nothing contained in this Article 9.4 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations which the Contractor may have under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the time period of one year as described in Paragraph 9.4.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

## **9.5 ADDITIONAL WARRANTIES.**

**9.5.1 IN GENERAL.** In addition to any other provisions of this Article 9, the following warranties shall apply:

(1) The Contractor warrants to the DFCM that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new, except to the extent otherwise required or expressly permitted by the Contract Documents.

(2) The Contractor also warrants to the DFCM that the Work will be free from defects not inherent in the quality required or permitted and that the Work will conform with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Work not conforming to said requirements, including substitutions not properly approved and authorized, may be considered defective at the DFCM's option.

**9.5.2 EXCLUSION.** Unless due to the negligent or intentional act or omission of the Contractor or those under the Contractor's control, or as otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor's guaranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, modifications not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear under normal usage.

**9.5.3 FURNISH EVIDENCE ON REQUEST.** If requested by the A/E or DFCM, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the type and quality of materials and equipment.

**9.6 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK.** If the DFCM prefers to accept Work which is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the DFCM may do so in writing instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum shall be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 10. INSURANCE AND BONDS.**

### **10.1 LIABILITY INSURANCE.**

**10.1.1 IN GENERAL.** To protect against liability, loss and/or expense arising from damage to property or injury or death of any person or persons incurred in any way out of, in connection with or resulting from the Work provided hereunder, Contractor shall obtain and maintain in force during the entire period of this Contract without interruption, at its own expense, the following insurance from insurance companies authorized to do business in the State of Utah in a form and content satisfactory to the DFCM and rated "A-" or better with a financial size category of (a) Class X or larger where the Contract Sum is \$1,000,000 or greater or (b) Class VII or larger where the Contract Sum is under \$1,000,000. Said rating and financial size category shall be as published by A.M. Best Company at the time the Contract is executed.

(1) Workers' Compensation Insurance and Employers' Liability Insurance. Worker's Compensation Insurance shall cover full liability under the Worker's Compensation Laws of the jurisdiction in which the Project is located at the statutory limits required by said jurisdiction's laws. Employer's Liability Insurance shall provide the following limits of liability: \$100,000 for each accident; \$500,000 for Disease-Policy Limit; and \$100,000 for Disease-Each Employee. The Contractor shall require all Subcontractors to take

and maintain similar policies of Workers' Compensation Insurance.

(2) Commercial General Liability Insurance.

a. Commercial General Liability Insurance, on an "occurrence basis," including insurance for operations, independent contractors, subcontractors at any tier, products/completed operations and contractual liability specifically designating the Indemnity provisions of these General Conditions as an insured contract on the Certificate of Insurance. Such Commercial General Liability Insurance must be endorsed with a Broad Form Property Damage Endorsement (including Completed Operations) and afford coverage for explosion, collapse and underground hazards. Such Commercial General Liability Insurance shall be in limits not less than the following:

\$2,000,000 General Aggregate, plus:

i. If the Construction Value is \$25,000,000 or more, an additional \$5,000,000 umbrella policy (which covers aggregate and per occurrence) is required; or

ii. if the Construction Value is \$10,000,000 or more but less than \$25,000,000, an additional \$2,000,000 umbrella policy (which covers aggregate and per occurrence) is required.

\$1,000,000	Products-Completed Operations Aggregate
\$1,000,000	Personal and Advertising Injury
\$1,000,000	Each Occurrence

b. For purposes of this subparagraph 2(a), Construction Value means:

i. the Contract Sum if the work is being performed under a Standard Construction Contractor's Agreement;

ii. the Fixed Limit of Construction Costs if the work is being performed under a Construction Manager/General Contractor Agreement; or

iii. the Guaranteed Fixed contract Amount if the work is to be performed under a Design/Build Agreement.

(3) Automobile liability insurance for claims arising from the ownership, maintenance, or use of a motor vehicle. The insurance shall cover all owned, non-owned, and hired automobiles used in connection with the Work, with the following minimum limits of liability:

\$1,000,000 Combined Single Limit Bodily Injury and Property Damage Per Occurrence

(4) Aircraft Use. Contractor using its own aircraft, or employing aircraft in connection with the Work performed under this Agreement shall maintain Aircraft Liability Insurance with a combined single limit of not less than \$1,000,000 per occurrence. Said certificate shall state that the policy required by this paragraph has been endorsed to name the State of Utah as Additional Insureds.

(5) Unless otherwise provided by the procurement documents, the insurance requirements in 10.1.1(1) through (4) above do not apply to subcontractors or suppliers at any tier under the Contractor and any insurance requirements of subcontractors and suppliers at any tier is a matter between the General Contractor and such subcontractor or supplier.

**10.1.2 CONFIGURATIONS.** Any policy required by this Article may be arranged under a single policy for the full limit required, or by a combination of underlying policies with the balance provided by an Excess or Umbrella Liability Policy.

**10.1.3 CONTRACTOR LIABILITY.** Irrespective of the requirements as to insurance to be carried by Contractor as provided herein; insolvency, bankruptcy or failure of any insurance company to pay all claims accruing, shall not be held to relieve Contractor of any obligations hereunder.

**10.1.4 CERTIFICATE, NOTICE REQUIREMENTS, ADDITIONAL INSURED.** Before the Contract Agreement is executed,

certificates evidencing coverages as specified above are in effect, shall be furnished to the DFCM. Such insurance certificates shall contain provisions that no cancellation, material change therein or non-renewal shall become effective except upon thirty (30) days prior written notice to the DFCM as evidenced by return receipt, certified mail sent to DFCM. The Contractor shall notify the DFCM within thirty (30) days of any claims(s) against the Contractor, and if such claim(s) exceed 20% of the applicable required insured limits, the DFCM may require the Contractor to re-instate the policy to provide full protection at the original limits. For any risk not covered by the Worker's Compensation Policy, the State of Utah shall be named as additional insured parties. All insurance policies provided shall be primary and non-contributing with, and not in excess of, any other insurance or self-insurance available to the State of Utah.

#### **10.1.5 DEDUCTIBLE LIABILITY.**

Any and all deductibles in the above described policies shall be assumed by, for the account of, and at sole risk of Contractor. The allowable deductible for any of the policies required by these General Conditions shall be no more than \$1,000 or 0.1 percent of the Contract Amount, whichever is greater. When there is an FLCC, the FLCC shall be the Contract Amount for purposes of calculating the allowable deductible.

#### **10.1.6 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS:**

(1) Any type of insurance or any increase of limits of liability not described in this Agreement which the Contractor requires for its own protection or on account of any statute, rule or regulation, shall be its own responsibility and at its own expense.

(2) The carrying of any insurance required by this Agreement shall in no way be interpreted as relieving the Contractor or Subcontractors of any other responsibility or liability under this Agreement or any applicable law, statute, rule, regulation or order.

(3) Contractor shall not violate or knowingly permit to be violated any of the

provisions of the policies on insurance required under these General Conditions.

### **10.2 "BUILDER'S RISK" PROPERTY INSURANCE.**

**10.2.1 IN GENERAL.** The State shall provide "Builder's Risk" property insurance to protect the State, as well as all Contractors and Subcontractors, and include them as insureds, with respect to Work performed hereunder at the State's own cost and expense, according to the policies and forms currently in force with insurance carriers selected by the State's Risk Manager or issued by the State of Utah Risk Management Fund. The State of Utah's Risk Manager shall furnish, upon request, all parties in interest with copies of said policies authenticated by authorized agents of the insurers or the State of Utah's Risk Management Fund.

**10.2.2 INSPECTIONS, RECOMMENDATIONS.** DFCM, the Division of Risk Management and the Builder's Risk insurers shall have the right to inspect the Work. The Contractor shall comply with reasonable risk control recommendations made by insurers or the Division of Risk Management. Such inspections or recommendations do not relieve the Contractor of any of its responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**10.2.3 DEDUCTIBLE.** The above described "Builders Risk" policies shall be subject to a total deductible of \$5,000 per loss occurrence, which shall be assumed by all Contractors or Subcontractors, in proportion to their share of the total amount of an insured loss occurrence.

**10.2.4 ADJUSTED WITH AND PAYABLE TO RISK MANAGER AS TRUSTEE.** Any insured property loss is to be adjusted with the State of Utah Risk Manager, and made payable to the State of Utah Risk Manager as trustee for the Contractor and Subcontractors, as their interests may appear, subject to the requirements of any applicable loss payable clause.

**10.2.5 WAIVER.** Contractor, including all Subcontractors, and DFCM hereby waive all rights against each other for damages caused by



perils insured against under the "Builder's Risk" insurance provided by DFCM, except such rights as Contractor may have to the proceeds of such insurance held by the State of Utah's Risk Manager as trustee. The DFCM and the Contractor each shall require similar waivers from their contractors, subcontractors, subconsultants and agents, at any tier.

**10.2.6 SPECIAL HAZARDS.** DFCM shall bear the risk of loss, delay and/or damage due to earthquake and/or flood and may either insure or self-insure that risk. If the Contractor requests in writing that insurance for other special hazards be included in the "Builder's Risk" policy, the State of Utah's Risk Manager shall, if possible, include such insurance in the policy and the cost thereof shall be charged to the Contractor by Change Order.

**10.3 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND.** The Contractor shall submit and maintain in full force and effect as required by law and the Contract Documents, at its own expense, on forms provided by the Division of Facilities Construction and Management, and include as part of the quoted total all costs involved in securing and furnishing, the bonds listed below, based on the completed cost of the Contract and effective upon execution of the Contract. Said bonds shall be from surety companies which are authorized to do business in the State of Utah, listed in the U. S. Department of Treasury Circular 570, Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Sureties on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies, and acting within the limitation listed therein.

10.3.1 A full 100 percent performance bond covering the faithful execution of the Contract in accordance with the Contract Documents; and

10.3.2 A full 100 percent payment bond covering payment of all obligations arising under the Contract Documents, for the protection of each person supplying labor, service, equipment, or material for the performance of the Work.

10.3.3 Any required insurance required under the U.S. Terrorism Risk Insurance Act of

2002, any similar applicable law, or as such Act may be amended.

## **ARTICLE 11. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.**

### **11.1 A/E'S RESPONSIBILITIES.**

These General Conditions are not intended to provide an exhaustive or complete list of the A/E's responsibilities. A separate agreement between the DFCM and A/E incorporates these General Conditions by reference and includes additional Design responsibilities.

**11.2 SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS.** The DFCM and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to the other party hereto and to partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives of such other party in respect to covenants, agreements and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not assign the Contract without the prior written consent of the DFCM, nor shall the Contractor assign any amount due or to become due as well as any rights under the Contract, without prior written consent of the DFCM.

### **11.3 WRITTEN NOTICE.**

#### **11.3.1 PERSONAL DELIVERY AND REGISTERED OR CERTIFIED MAIL.**

Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual or a member of the firm or entity or to an officer of the corporation for which it was intended, or if delivered at or sent by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, to the last business address known to the party giving notice.

**11.3.2 FAX.** Notwithstanding any other provision of these General Conditions, written notice shall also be deemed to have been duly served by verified use of a FAX system by using the known and operative calling number. Service by use of the FAX system is encouraged when timely notice will benefit the—DFCM, A/E or Contractor. Notice shall be considered complete and verified upon the sending and confirmation of delivery using the FAX system, if on the same day notice is also sent by registered or certified mail,

return receipt requested, to the last business address known to the party giving notice, confirming the FAX delivery.

#### **11.4 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES.**

**11.4.1 NOT LIMIT.** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**11.4.2 NOT WAIVER.** Except as expressly provided elsewhere in the Contract Documents, no action or failure to act by the DFCM, A/E or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract Documents, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as any of the above may be specifically agreed to in writing. In no case shall the Contractor or any Subcontractors be entitled to rely upon any waiver of any of these General Conditions unless agreed to in writing by the DFCM.

#### **11.5 COMMENCEMENT OF STATUTORY LIMITATION PERIOD.**

**11.5.1 BEFORE SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION.** Except as provided in 11.5.4 below, as to acts or failures to act occurring prior to the relevant date of Substantial Completion, any applicable statute of limitations shall commence to run and any alleged cause of action shall be deemed to have accrued in any and all events not later than such date of Substantial Completion.

#### **11.5.2 BETWEEN SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION AND FINAL CERTIFICATION FOR PAYMENT.**

Except as provided in Paragraph 11.5.4 below, as to acts or failures to act occurring subsequent to the relevant date of Substantial Completion and prior to issuance of the final Certification for Payment, any applicable statute of limitations shall commence to run and any alleged cause of action shall be deemed to have accrued in any and all events not later than the date of issuance of the final Certification for Payment.

#### **11.5.3 AFTER FINAL CERTIFICATION FOR PAYMENT.**

Except as provided in Paragraph 11.5.4 below, as to acts or failures to act occurring after the relevant date of issuance of the final Certificate for Payment, any applicable statute of limitations shall commence to run and any alleged cause of action shall be deemed to have accrued in any and all events not later than the date of any act or failure to act by the Contractor pursuant to any guaranty provided under Article 9 the date of any correction of the Work or failure to correct the Work by the Contractor under Paragraph 9.4.2, or the date of actual commission of any other act or failure to perform any duty or obligation by the Contractor or DFCM, whichever occurs last.

**11.5.4 EXCEPTION.** Notwithstanding any other provision of this Article 11.5 to the contrary, no applicable statute of limitations shall be deemed to have commenced with respect to any portion of the Work which is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, which would not be visible or apparent upon conducting a reasonable investigation, and which is not discovered by the DFCM until after the date which, but for this Paragraph 11.5.4, would be the date of commencement of the applicable statute of limitations; the applicable statute of limitations instead shall be deemed to have commenced on the date of such discovery by the DFCM.

**11.6 NOT DISCRIMINATE, NO SEXUAL HARASSMENT.** Pursuant to the laws of the State of Utah, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or anyone for whose act any of them may be liable, will take affirmative action to not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, creed, color, sex, religion, ancestry or national origin. To the extent applicable, said persons will comply with all provisions of Executive Order No. 11246 dated September 24, 1965 and rules, regulations, orders, instructions, designations and other directives promulgated pursuant thereto. Contractor, Subcontractors, or anyone for whose act any of them may be liable, shall not act in any manner as would violate the laws, regulations and policies of the United States or the State of Utah prohibiting sexual harassment.

**11.7 APPLICABLE LAWS.** The applicable laws and regulations of the State of Utah, as well as any applicable local laws and regulations not superseded or exempted by State law, shall govern the execution of the Work embodied in the Contract Documents as well as the interpretation of the Contract Documents.

**11.8 INTERPRETATION.** In the interest of brevity, the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as “all” and “any” and articles such as “the” and “an”, but the fact that a modification or an article is absent from the statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

**11.9 VENUE.** In case of any dispute, which may arise under the Contract Documents, the place of venue shall be in the County of Salt Lake, Utah, unless otherwise agreed to by all the parties in writing.

**11.10 SEVERABILITY.** The invalidity of any part, paragraph, subparagraph, phase, provision or aspect of the Contract documents shall not impair or affect in any manner the validity, enforceability or effect of the remainder of the Contract Documents.

**11.11 CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words, which have well-known technical or construction industry meanings, shall be construed as having such recognized meanings. Unless the context requires otherwise, all other technical words shall be construed in accordance with the meaning normally established by the particular, applicable profession or industry. All other words, unless the context requires otherwise, shall be construed with an ordinary, plain meaning.

**11.12 NO THIRD PARTY RIGHTS.** These General Conditions create rights and duties only as between DFCM and Contractor, and DFCM and A/E. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed as creating third party beneficiary contract rights or other actionable rights or duties as between Contractor and A/E, or as between DFCM, Contractor, or A/E on the one hand, and any other person or entity.

## **ARTICLE 12. TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT.**

### **12.1 TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR.**

**12.1.1 IN GENERAL.** If the Work is stopped for a period of sixty (60) days through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons performing portions of the Work under contract with any of the above, the Contractor, may terminate the Contract in accordance with 12.1.2 hereinbelow for any of the following reasons:

(1) Because the DFCM has persistently failed to fulfill fundamental DFCM's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work;

(2) Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction which necessitates such termination, except that where the Contractor has standing, the Contractor must cooperate in efforts to stay and/or appeal such order;

(3) An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, making material unavailable; or

(4) Unavoidable casualties or other similar causes as listed in Paragraph 12.2.2(2) hereinbelow.

**12.1.2 NOTICE.** If one of the reasons for termination in Paragraph 12.1.1 hereinabove exist, the Contractor may, upon ten (10) additional days' written notice to the DFCM and A/E, and such condition giving cause for termination still not cured, terminate the Contract and recover from the DFCM payment for Work executed and for proven loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery, including reasonable overhead, profit and damages associated only with work completed prior to the notice of termination.

### **12.2 TERMINATION BY THE DFCM FOR CAUSE.**

**12.2.1 IN GENERAL.** The DFCM Director or Designee may terminate the Contract if the Contractor fails to cure any of the following within a period of ten (10) days (or longer if the DFCM so approves in writing) after receipt of notice from the DFCM specifying the cause for termination:

(1) The Contractor persistently or repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;

(2) The Contractor fails to make payment to Subcontractors for materials or labor in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors;

(3) The Contractor persistently disregards laws, ordinances, or rules, regulations, resolutions or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction; or

(4) The Contractor fails to perform the Work within the time specified in the Contract Documents or any authorized extension thereof or the Contractor fails to make progress with the Work as to endanger such compliance;

(5) The Contractor fails to perform the Work or is otherwise in breach of a material provision of the Contract Documents;

(6) The Contractor fails to respond promptly to the financial responsibility inquiry under the Contractor's Agreement;

(7) As permissible by law for a reason to terminate, the Contractor is adjudged bankrupt;

(8) As permissible by law for a reason to terminate, the Contractor should make a general assignment for the benefit to creditors;

(9) As permissible by law for a reason to terminate, the Contractor should have a receiver appointed on account of the Contractor's insolvency; or

(10) The Contractor fails to follow the material safety requirements and precautions either as expressly provided in the

Contract Documents or as consistent with the customary practices in the industry.

## **12.2.2 DFCM'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK.**

(1) If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten (10) day period (or longer if approved by the DFCM in writing) after receipt of written notice from the DFCM to cure such default or neglect, the DFCM may without prejudice to other remedies the DFCM may have, correct such deficiencies, including taking over the Work and prosecuting the same to completion, by contract or otherwise, and may take possession of, and utilize in completing the Work, such materials, appliances, and facilities as may be on the site of the Work as well as the site as necessary for its proper completion. In such case, the DFCM shall offset from payments then or thereafter due the Contractor the cost of correcting such deficiencies, including compensation for the A/E, DFCM's staff and legal counsel's additional services and expenses made necessary by such default, neglect or failure. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the DFCM. The Contractor shall continue performance of the Contract to the extent not terminated.

(2) Except with respect to defaults of Subcontractors, the Contractor shall not be liable for any excess costs if the failure to perform the Contract arises out of causes beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor or anyone for whom the Contractor may be liable. Such causes may include, but are not limited to, acts of God or of the public enemy, acts of the State of Utah or federal government in either their sovereign or contractual capacity, fires, floods, epidemics, quarantine restrictions, strikes, freight embargoes, and unusually severe weather; but in every case the failure to perform must be beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor or anyone for whom the Contractor may be liable. If the failure to perform is caused by the default of a Subcontractor, and if such default arises out of causes beyond the control of both the Contractor

and the Subcontractor, and without the fault or negligence of either of them or anyone for whom either may be liable, the Contractor shall not be liable for any excess costs for failure to perform unless the supplies or services to be furnished by the Subcontractor were obtainable from other sources in sufficient time to permit the Contractor to meet the required delivery or completion schedule.

**12.2.3 ITEMS REQUIRED TO BE TRANSFERRED OR DELIVERED.** The DFCM may require the Contractor to transfer title and deliver to the DFCM, in the manner and to the extent directed by the DFCM:

(1) Any completed portion of the Work; and

(2) Any partially completed portion of the Work and any parts, tools, dies, jigs, fixtures, drawings, information, and contract rights (hereinafter called "construction materials") as the Contractor has specifically produced or specifically acquired for the performance of such part of this Contract as has been terminated; and the Contractor shall, upon direction of the DFCM, protect and preserve property in the possession of the Contractor in which the DFCM has an interest.

**12.2.4 PAYMENT.** When the DFCM terminates the Contract for one or more of the reasons stated in Paragraph 12.2.1, the DFCM may withhold payment and/or pursue all available remedies.

**12.2.5 DFCM PROTECTION IF LIENABLE.** When the subject property is lienable, the DFCM may withhold from amounts otherwise due the Contractor for such completed Work or construction materials such sum as the DFCM determines to be necessary to protect the State against loss because of outstanding liens or claims for former lien holders.

**12.2.6 CREDITS AND DEFICITS.** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds the full cost of finishing the Work, including compensation for the A/E's services and expenses made necessary thereby, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such cost exceeds the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to

the DFCM this obligation for payment shall survive the termination of the Contract.

**12.2.7 IF CONTRACTOR FOUND NOT IN DEFAULT OR EXCUSABLE.** If, after notice of termination of the Contract under the provisions of this Article, it is determined for any reason that the Contractor was not in default under the provisions of this Article, or that the default was excusable under the provisions of this Article, the rights and obligations of the parties shall be the same as if the notice of termination had been issued pursuant to the termination for convenience provisions.

**12.2.8 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES NOT EXCLUSIVE.** The rights and remedies of the DFCM provided in this Article 12.2 shall not be exclusive and are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this Contract.

**12.3 SUSPENSION, DELAY OR INTERRUPTION OF WORK BY THE DFCM FOR CONVENIENCE.**

**12.3.1 BY DFCM IN WRITING.** The DFCM may in writing and without cause, order the Contractor to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work in whole or in part for such period of time as the DFCM may determine to be appropriate for the convenience of the DFCM.

**12.3.2 TIME PERIOD FOR CLAIMS.** Any PRE by the Contractor for adjustment under this Article 12.3 must be asserted by the Contractor, in writing, within twenty-one (21) days from the date of termination of such suspension, delay or interruption; provided that the DFCM may, in its sole discretion, receive and act upon any such PRE asserted at any time prior to final payment under this Contract.

**12.3.3 ADJUSTMENTS.** Any adjustment in Contract Sum and Time shall be in accordance with Articles 3, 4, and 7.

**12.4 TERMINATION FOR CONVENIENCE OF THE DFCM.**

**12.4.1 IN GENERAL.**

The performance of Work under this Contract may be terminated by the DFCM in accordance with this Article 12.4 in whole, or from time to time, in part, whenever the DFCM shall determine that such termination is in the best interest of the DFCM or any person for whom the DFCM is acting under this Contract. Any such termination shall be effected by delivery to the Contractor of a notice of termination specifying the extent to which performance of Work under the Contract is terminated, and the date upon which such termination becomes effective.

#### **12.4.2 CONTRACTOR**

**OBLIGATIONS.** After receipt of a notice of termination, and except as otherwise directed by the DFCM in writing, the Contractor shall:

(1) Stop work under the Contract on the date and to the extent specified in the notice of termination;

(2) Place no further orders or subcontracts for materials, services or facilities, except as may be necessary for completion of such portion of the Work under the Contract as is not terminated;

(3) Terminate all orders and subcontracts to the extent that they relate to performance of Work terminated by the notice of termination;

(4) Assign to the DFCM in the manner, at the times, and to the extent directed by the DFCM, all of the right, title and interest of the Contractor under the orders and subcontracts so terminated, in which case the DFCM shall have the right, in its discretion, to settle or pay any or all claims arising out of the termination of such orders and subcontracts;

(5) Settle all outstanding liabilities and all claims arising out of such termination of orders and subcontracts, with the approval or ratification of the DFCM, which approval or ratification shall be final for all the purposes of this Article 12.4;

(6) Transfer title and deliver to the DFCM in the manner, at the times, and to the extent, if any, directed by the DFCM:

(a) The fabricated or unfabricated parts, work in process, completed work, supplies, and other material produced as a part of, or acquired in connection with the performance of the Work terminated by the notice of termination; and

(b) The completed or partially completed drawings, information, and other property which, if the Contract had been completed, would have been required to be furnished to the DFCM;

(7) Use best efforts to sell, in the manner, at the times, to the extent, and at the price or prices directed or authorized by the DFCM, any property of the types referred to in Paragraph 12.4.2(6) above; provided, however, that the Contractor:

(a) Shall not be required to extend credit to any purchaser; and

(b) May acquire any such property under the conditions prescribed by and at a price or prices approved by the DFCM; and provided further that the proceeds of any such transfer of or disposition shall be applied in reduction of any payments to be made by the DFCM to the Contractor under this Contract or shall otherwise be credited to the price or cost of the Work covered by this Contract or paid in such other manner as the DFCM may direct;

(8) Complete performance of such part of the Work as shall not have been terminated by the notice of termination; and

(9) Take such action as may be necessary, or as the DFCM may direct, for the protection and preservation of the property related to this Contract which is in the possession of the Contractor in which the State has or may acquire an interest.

#### **12.4.3 TERMINATION CLAIM.**

After receipt of a notice of termination, the Contractor may submit to the DFCM a PRE, in the form and with certification prescribed by the DFCM. Such PRE shall be submitted promptly

but in no event not later than sixty (60) days from the effective date of termination.

#### **12.4.4 AGREED UPON PAYMENT.**

Subject to the provisions of Paragraph 12.4.3 above, the Contractor and the DFCM may agree upon the amount to be paid to the Contractor by reason of the total or partial termination of Work pursuant to this Article 12.4.

**12.4.5 PAYMENT NOT AGREED UPON.** In the event of the failure of the Contractor and the DFCM to agree, as provided in Paragraph 12.4.4, upon the whole amount to be paid to the Contractor by reason of the termination of Work pursuant to this Article 12.4, the DFCM shall pay to the Contractor the amounts determined by the DFCM as follows, but without duplication of any amounts agreed upon in accordance with Paragraph 12.4.4:

(1) With respect to all Contract Work performed prior to effective date of the notice of termination, the total (without duplication of any items) of:

(a) The cost of such Work including undisputed Claim amounts;

(b) The cost of terminating, settling and paying claims arising out of the termination of Work under subcontracts or orders as provided in Paragraph 12.4.2(5) above, exclusive of the amounts paid or payable on account of supplies or materials delivered or services furnished by Subcontractors prior to the effective date of the notice of termination under this Contract, which amounts shall be included in the cost on account of which payment is made under Paragraph 12.4.5(1)(a) above;

(c) A sum, as overhead and profit on Paragraph 12.4.5(1)(a) above, determined by the DFCM to be fair and reasonable;

(d) The reasonable cost of the preservation and protection of property incurred pursuant to Paragraph 12.4.2(9); and any other reasonable cost incidental to termination of Work under this Contract, including expenses incidental to the determination of the amount due

to the Contractor as the result of the termination of Work under this Contract.

(2) The total sum to be paid to the Contractor under Paragraph 12.4.5(1) above shall not exceed the total Contract Sum as reduced by the amount of payments otherwise made and as further reduced by the Contract price of work not terminated. Except for normal spoilage, and except to the extent that the DFCM shall have otherwise expressly assumed the risk of loss in writing, there shall be excluded from the amounts payable to the Contractor under Paragraph 12.4.5(1) above, the fair value of property which is destroyed, lost, stolen, or damaged so as to become undeliverable to the DFCM, or to a buyer pursuant to Paragraph 12.4.2(7).

**12.4.6 DEDUCTIONS.** In arriving at the amount due the Contractor under this Article 12.4, there shall be deducted:

(1) All unliquidated advance or other payments on account theretofore made to the Contractor, applicable to the terminated portion of this Contract;

(2) Any Claim which the State may have against the Contractor in connection with this Contract; and

(3) The agreed price for, or the proceeds of sale of, any materials, supplies, or other things acquired by the Contractor or sold, pursuant to the provisions of this Article 13.4, and not otherwise recovered by or credited to the DFCM.

**12.4.7 PARTIAL TERMINATION.** If the termination is partial, the Contractor may file with the DFCM a PRE for the amounts specified in the Contract relating to the continued portion of the Contract and such equitable adjustment as may be agreed upon shall be made in such amounts. Any PRE under this Paragraph 12.4.7 must be filed within twenty-one (21) days from the effective date of the notice of termination.

**12.4.8 PARTIAL PAYMENTS.** The DFCM may, from time to time, under such terms and conditions as it may prescribe, make partial payments and payments on account against costs

incurred by the Contractor in connection with the terminated portion of this Contract whenever, in the opinion of the DFCM the aggregate of such payments shall be within the amount to which the Contractor will be entitled hereunder. If the total of such payments is in excess of the amount finally agreed or determined to be due under this Article 12.4, such excess shall be payable by the Contractor to the DFCM upon demand, together with interest at a rate equal to the average rate at the time being received from the investment of state funds, as determined by the State Treasurer, for the period until the date such excess is repaid to the DFCM; provided, however, that no interest shall be charged with respect to any such excess payment attributable to a reduction in the Contractor's claim by reason of retention or other disposition of termination inventory until ten (10) days after the date of such retention or disposition, or such later date as determined by the DFCM by reason of the circumstances.

**12.4.9 PRESERVE AND MAKE AVAILABLE RECORDS.** Unless otherwise provided for in this Contract, or by applicable law, the Contractor shall, from the effective date of termination until the expiration of three years after final settlement under this Contract, preserve and make available to the DFCM at all reasonable times at the office of the Contractor, but without direct charge to the DFCM, all books, records, documents and other evidence bearing on the costs and expenses of the Contractor under this Contract and relating to the Work terminated hereunder, or, to the extent approved by the DFCM Representative, photographs, micrographs, or other authentic reproductions thereof.

**12.5 DFCM'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK.** If the Contractor fails to correct Work or fails to carry out Work, as required by the Contract Documents or fails to comply with all required and customary safety precautions; the DFCM, by written order signed personally or by an agent specifically so empowered by the DFCM in writing, may order the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the DFCM to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the DFCM to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity.





## **DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

Section 01 11 00	Summary
Section 01 26 00	Contract Modification Procedures
Section 01 29 00	Payment Procedures
Section 01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
Section 01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
Section 01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
Section 01 42 19	Definitions and Standards
Section 01 43 00	Quality Control Services
Section 01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
Section 01 60 00	Product Requirements
Section 01 73 00	Execution Requirements
Section 01 73 29	Cutting and Patching
Section 01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
Section 01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
Section 01 78 39	Project Record Documents
Section 01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
Section 01 90 00	Design Selections



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Work covered by the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Type of the Contract.
  - 3. Work phases.
  - 4. Work under other contracts.
  - 5. Products ordered in advance.
  - 6. Owner-furnished products.
  - 7. Use of premises.
  - 8. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - 9. Work restrictions.
  - 10. Specification formats and conventions.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

**1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- A. Project Identification: UVU Murdock Mansion and Guest House Improvements.
  - 1. Project Location: Located on the campus of Utah Valley University in Orem, Utah.
- B. Owner: Utah Valley University.
- C. Project Number: DFCM 08307790.
- D. Architect: Axis Architects.
- E. The Work consists of the following:
  - 1. The Work includes all of the work of Divisions 01 thru 48 for the UVU Murdock Mansion and Guest House Improvement project.

#### **1.4 TYPE OF CONTRACT**

- A. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### **1.5 WORK PHASES**

- A. The Work may be conducted in phases, with each phase substantially complete before beginning the next phase:
- B. Before commencing Work of each phase, submit a schedule showing the sequence, commencement and completion dates, and move-out and -in dates of Owner's personnel for all phases of the Work.

#### **1.6 WORK UNDER OTHER CONTRACTS**

- A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.
- B. Preceding Work: Owner may award separate contract(s) for other construction operations at Project site. Those operations are scheduled to be substantially complete before work under this Contract begins.
- C. Concurrent Work: Owner may award separate contract(s) for the following construction operations at Project site. Those operations will be conducted simultaneously with work under this Contract.
- D. Future Work: Owner may award separate contract(s) for the following additional work to be performed at site after Substantial Completion. Completion of that work will depend on successful completion of preparatory work under this Contract.

#### **1.7 PRODUCTS ORDERED IN ADVANCE**

- A. General: Owner has negotiated Purchase Orders with suppliers of material and equipment to be incorporated into the Work. Owner will assign these Purchase Orders to Contractor. Costs for receiving, handling, storage if required, and installation of material and equipment are included in the Contract Sum.
  - 1. Contractor's responsibilities are same as if Contractor had negotiated Purchase Orders, including responsibility to renegotiate purchase and to execute final Purchase-Order agreements.

#### **1.8 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS**

- A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Work includes providing support systems to receive Owner's equipment and making plumbing, mechanical, and electrical connections.

1. Owner will arrange for and deliver Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples to Contractor.
2. Owner will arrange and pay for delivery of Owner-furnished items according to Contractor's Construction Schedule.
3. After delivery, Owner will inspect delivered items for damage. Contractor shall be present for and assist in Owner's inspection.
4. If Owner-furnished items are damaged, defective, or missing, Owner will arrange for replacement.
5. Owner will arrange for manufacturer's field services and for delivery of manufacturer's warranties to Contractor.
6. Owner will furnish Contractor the earliest possible delivery date for Owner-furnished products. Using Owner-furnished earliest possible delivery dates, Contractor shall designate delivery dates of Owner-furnished items in Contractor's Construction Schedule.
7. Contractor shall review Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples and return them to Architect noting discrepancies or anticipated problems in use of product.
8. Contractor is responsible for receiving, unloading, and handling Owner-furnished items at Project site.
9. Contractor is responsible for protecting Owner-furnished items from damage during storage and handling, including damage from exposure to the elements.
10. If Owner-furnished items are damaged as a result of Contractor's operations, Contractor shall repair or replace them.
11. Contractor shall install and otherwise incorporate Owner-furnished items into the Work.

## 1.9 USE OF PREMISES

- A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of premises for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits.
- B. Use of Site: Limit use of premises to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
  1. Limits: Confine construction operations to Contract limits.
    - a. Limit site disturbance, including earthwork and clearing of vegetation, to 40 feet (12.2 m) beyond building perimeter; 5 feet (1.5 m) beyond primary roadway curbs, walkways, and main utility branch trenches; and 25 feet (7.6 m) beyond pervious paving areas.
  2. Owner Occupancy: Allow for Owner occupancy of Project site.
  3. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
    - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances.
    - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Use of Existing Building: Maintain existing building in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations. Protect building and its occupants during construction period.

## **1.10 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy site and existing adjacent buildings during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- C. Owner Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed areas of building, before Substantial Completion, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and partial occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
  - 1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied before Owner occupancy.
  - 2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before Owner occupancy.
  - 3. Before partial Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of building.
  - 4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of building.

## **1.11 WORK RESTRICTIONS**

- A. On-Site Work Hours: Work shall be generally performed inside the existing building during normal business working hours, except otherwise indicated.
- B. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.

- a. Implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Used)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

(Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 11 00**





**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after Contract award.

**1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

**1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS**

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Proposal Requests issued by Architect are for information only. Do not consider them instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to

- substantiate quantities.
- 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
- 4. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- 5. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

C. Proposal Request Form: Use AIA Document G709 for Proposal Requests.

## **1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES**

- A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

## **1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE**

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Used)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

(Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 26 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing preparation and submittal of Contractor's Construction Schedule and Submittals Schedule.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

**1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets.
    - b. Submittals Schedule.
  - 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Subschedules: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values correlated with each phase of payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the Schedule of Values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the

following for each item listed:

- a. Related Specification Section or Division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value.
    - 1) Percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts, where appropriate.
  4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
  5. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. Include evidence of insurance or bonded warehousing if required.
  6. Provide separate line items in the Schedule of Values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
  7. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
    - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
  8. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

## **1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
  1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction Work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.

2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- E. Transmittal: Submit 4 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- F. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's liens from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested, before deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Waiver Delays: Submit each Application for Payment with Contractor's waiver of mechanic's lien for construction period covered by the application.
    - a. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms, executed in a manner acceptable to Owner.
- G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of Values.
  3. Contractor's Construction Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list.
  5. Schedule of unit prices.
  6. Submittals Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  9. Copies of building permits.
  10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  11. Initial progress report.
  12. Report of preconstruction conference.
  13. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  14. Performance and payment bonds.
  15. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
  16. Initial settlement survey and damage report if required.
- H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After issuing the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.

- I. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
  1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final, liquidated damages settlement statement.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Used)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

(Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 29 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General project coordination procedures.
  - 2. Conservation.
  - 3. Coordination Drawings.
  - 4. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
  - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility will be assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Execution Requirements" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating Contract closeout.

**1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in various Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. If necessary, prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include,



but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.

- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities.
1. Indicate relationship of components shown on separate Shop Drawings.
  2. Indicate required installation sequences.
  3. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" and Division 26 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for specific Coordination Drawing requirements for mechanical and electrical installations.
- B. Staff Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of principal staff assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone.

#### **1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE AND SUPERVISORY PERSONNEL**

- A. General: In addition to Project superintendent, provide other administrative and supervisory personnel as required for proper performance of the Work.
1. Include special personnel required for coordination of operations with other contractors.

#### **1.6 PROJECT MEETINGS**

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within 3

days of the meeting.

- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement. Hold the conference at Project site or another convenient location. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; manufacturers; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Tentative construction schedule.
    - b. Phasing.
    - c. Critical work sequencing.
    - d. Designation of responsible personnel.
    - e. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - f. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - g. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - h. Submittal procedures.
    - i. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - j. Use of the premises.
    - k. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - l. Parking availability.
    - m. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - n. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - o. First aid.
    - p. Security.
    - q. Progress cleaning.
    - r. Working hours.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction. Including, but no limited to: Demolition, concrete, masonry, excavation, mechanical, plumbing, electrical, steel erection and stud framing, roofing drywall and finish work.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related Change Orders.
    - d. Purchases.
    - e. Deliveries.
    - f. Submittals.
    - g. Review of mockups.
    - h. Possible conflicts.
    - i. Compatibility problems.
    - j. Time schedules.
    - k. Weather limitations.

- l. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - m. Warranty requirements.
    - n. Compatibility of materials.
    - o. Acceptability of substrates.
    - p. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - q. Space and access limitations.
    - r. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - s. Testing and inspecting requirements.
    - t. Required performance results.
    - u. Protection of construction and personnel.
  - 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements.
  - 4. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
- 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Status of submittals.
      - 4) Deliveries.
      - 5) Off-site fabrication.
      - 6) Access.
      - 7) Site utilization.
      - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 9) Work hours.
      - 10) Hazards and risks.
      - 11) Progress cleaning.
      - 12) Quality and work standards.
      - 13) Change Orders.
      - 14) Documentation of information for payment requests.
  - 3. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present. Include a brief summary, in narrative form, of progress since the previous meeting and report.
    - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Construction Schedule after each

progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Used)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

(Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 31 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Submittals Schedule.
  - 3. Daily construction reports.
  - 4. Material location reports.
  - 5. Field condition reports.
  - 6. Special reports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical activities are activities on the critical path. They must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the Schedule of Values for the completion of an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum, unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is

- a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- G. Fragnet: A partial or fragmentary network that breaks down activities into smaller activities for greater detail.
- H. Major Area: A story of construction, a separate building, or a similar significant construction element.
- I. Milestone: A key or critical point in time for reference or measurement.
- J. Network Diagram: A graphic diagram of a network schedule, showing activities and activity relationships.
- K. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submittals Schedule: Submit three copies of schedule. Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
1. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  2. Specification Section number and title.
  3. Submittal category (action or informational).
  4. Name of subcontractor.
  5. Description of the Work covered.
  6. Scheduled date for Architect's and Construction Manager's final release or approval.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Submit two opaque copies of initial schedule, large enough to show entire schedule for entire construction period.
- C. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit three copies of each of the following computer-generated reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
  2. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
  3. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from commencement of the Work until most recent Application for Payment.
- D. Daily Construction Reports: Submit one copy at weekly intervals.
- E. Material Location Reports: Submit two copies at monthly intervals.
- F. Field Condition Reports: Submit two copies at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- G. Special Reports: Submit two copies at time of unusual event.

## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittals Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE**

- A. Preparation: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, resubmittal, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.
  - 1. Coordinate Submittals Schedule with list of subcontracts, the Schedule of Values, and Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with preliminary bar-chart schedule or network diagram. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  - 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's Construction Schedule.

### **2.2 REPORTS**

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  - 4. Equipment at Project site.
  - 5. Major material deliveries.
  - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions.
  - 7. Accidents.
  - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
  - 9. Unusual events (refer to special reports).
  - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  - 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  - 12. Emergency procedures.
  - 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
  - 15. Construction or Work Change Directives received and implemented.
  - 16. Services connected and disconnected.
  - 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  - 18. Partial Completions and occupancies.
  - 19. Substantial Completions authorized.



- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site.
- C. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a request for interpretation on CSI Form 13.2A. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

## **2.3 SPECIAL REPORTS**

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one (1) day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE**

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
  - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule monthly.
  - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Actual Completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Construction Manager, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

**END OF SECTION 01 32 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes and for submitting Coordination Drawings.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports and for mockup requirements.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 5. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 6. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting videotapes of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
  - 7. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for submittals in those Sections.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

**1.4 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- B. Submittals Schedule: Provide a prioritized schedule of submittals.

- C. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Construction Manager will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Construction Manager, through Architect, before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  2. Provide a space approximately 5" x 10" on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect and Construction Manager.
    - d. Name and address of Contractor or Subcontractor.
    - e. Name and address of supplier.
    - f. Name of manufacturer.
    - g. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
- E. Deviations: Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- F. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
1. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
- G. Transmittal: Package each submittal appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Construction Manager.
1. Transmittal Form: Use regular transmittal form.
  2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same label information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked "Conforms@."

- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating "Conforms" taken by Architect and Construction Manager.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Prepare and submit Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - d. Standard color charts.
    - e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - g. Printed performance curves.
    - h. Operational range diagrams.
    - i. Mill reports.
    - j. Standard product operation and maintenance manuals.
    - k. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - l. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - m. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - n. Notation of coordination requirements.
  - 4. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  - 5. Number of Copies: Submit four (4) copies of Product Data, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two (2) copies. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products.
    - c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - e. Wiring Diagrams:
      - 1) Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
      - 2) Show field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control

- wiring.
  - f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
  - g. Templates and patterns.
  - h. Schedules.
  - i. Design calculations.
  - j. Compliance with specified standards.
  - k. Notation of coordination requirements.
  - l. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
  - m. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
  - n. Seal and signature of Utah registered professional engineer if specified.
  - o. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 30 by 42 inches (750 by 1000 mm).
  - 3. Number of Copies: Submit copies of each submittal, as follows:
    - a. One set of reproducible vellums and five (5) copies.
    - b. Must be reviewed, approved, stamped, signed and dated by Construction Manager.
    - c. Show Specification Section Number (from Project Manual).
    - d. Show Contractor's name, address, telephone and fax numbers and Contact Person.
    - e. Construction Manager:
      - 1) Shall receive back his one set of reproducible vellum drawings and one print copy, as reviewed by the Architect and/or Engineer.
      - 2) Construction Manager is responsible for print sets and distribution of same.
      - 3) Shop Drawing originals belong to the Construction Manager and shall remain in his files.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
- 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  - 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit two (2) full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected

from manufacturer's product line. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return one submittal with options selected.

5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
  - a. Number of Samples: Submit three (3) sets of Samples. Architect will retain one (1) Sample set; remainder will be returned.
    - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
    - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three (3) sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule or List: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product.
  2. Number and name of room or space.
  3. Location within room or space.
  4. Number of Copies: Submit five (5) copies of product schedule or list, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return three (3) copies.
    - a. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements".
- G. Submittals Schedule: Provide a prioritized schedule of submittals.
- H. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

## **2.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
  1. Number of Copies: Submit two (2) copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.

3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."
- B. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- D. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification (WPS) and Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- F. Installer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- G. Manufacturer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- H. Product Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- I. Material Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- J. Material Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- K. Product Test Reports: Prepare written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- L. Research/Evaluation Reports: Prepare written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
1. Name of evaluation organization.
  2. Date of evaluation.
  3. Time period when report is in effect.
  4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  5. Description of product.
  6. Test procedures and results.
  7. Limitations of use.
- M. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section

"Quality Requirements."

- N. Preconstruction Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- O. Compatibility Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- P. Field Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Maintenance Data: Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- R. Design Data: Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.
- S. Manufacturer's Instructions: Prepare written or published information that documents manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer. Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Preparation of substrates.
  - 2. Required substrate tolerances.
  - 3. Sequence of installation or erection.
  - 4. Required installation tolerances.
  - 5. Required adjustments.
  - 6. Recommendations for cleaning and protection.
- T. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections. Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- U. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits



of coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.

- V. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs): Submit information directly to Owner; do not submit to Architect.
  - 1. Architect will not review submittals that include MSDSs and will return them with no action taken.

## **2.3 DELEGATED DESIGN**

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit three (3) copies of a statement, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 CONSTRUCTION MANAGER'S REVIEW**

- A. Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with review stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Review Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, review stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's review, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and reviewed for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### **3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION**

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Construction Manager's review stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken, as follows:
  - 1. Final Unrestricted Release: When the Architect marks a submittal "Conforms" the work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.
  - 2. Final-But-Restricted Release: When the Architect marks a submittal "Re: Notes", the work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with the notations or corrections on the submittal and requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.

3. Returned For Resubmittal: When the Architect marks a submittal "Revise and Resubmit", do not proceed with work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity. Revise or prepare a new submittal according to the notations; resubmit without delay. Repeat if necessary to obtain different action mark.
    - a. Do not use, or allow others to use, submittals marked "Revise and Resubmit", at the Project Site or elsewhere where work is in progress.
  4. Returned For Alternate Submittal: When Architect marks a submittal "Does Not Conform", do not proceed with work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity. Product was not appropriate or as specified. Prepare a new submittal according to the Contract Documents.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

**END OF SECTION 01 33 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Definitions: Basic Contract definitions are included in the General Conditions.
  - 1. Directed: Terms such as "directed", "requested", "authorized", "selected", "approved", "required", and "permitted" mean "directed by the Architect", "requested by the Architect", and similar phrases. However, no implied meaning shall be interpreted to extend the Architect's responsibility into the Contractor's area of construction supervision.
  - 2. Approve: The term "approved," where used in conjunction with the Architect's action on the Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, is limited to the duties and responsibilities of the Architect as stated in General and Supplementary Conditions. Such approval shall not release the Contractor from responsibility to fulfill Contract requirements unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Furnish: The term "furnish" is used to mean "supply and deliver to the Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations."
  - 4. Install: The term "install" is used to describe operations at project site including the actual "unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations."
  - 5. Provide: The term "provide" means "to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use."
- B. Specification Format and Conventions:
  - 1. Specification Format: The Specifications are organized into Divisions and Sections using the 48-division format and CSI/CSC's "MasterFormat" numbering system.
    - a. Section Identification: The Specifications use section numbers and titles to help cross-referencing in the Contract Documents. Sections in the Project Manual are in numeric sequence; however, the sequence is incomplete. Consult the table of contents at the beginning of the Project Manual to determine numbers and names of sections in the Contract Documents.
    - b. Division 01: Sections in Division 01 govern the execution of the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
  - 2. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for style of language and the intended meaning of terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows.
    - a. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications and other Contract Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate. Words implied, but not stated shall be inferred as the sense requires. Singular words shall be interpreted as plural, and plural words shall be interpreted as singular where applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.
    - b. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by Contractor. Occasionally, the indicative or subjunctive mood may be used in the Section Text for clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by Contractor or by others when so noted.
      - 1) The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence

or phrase.

C. Drawing Symbols:

1. Graphic symbols: Where not otherwise noted, symbols are defined by "Architectural Graphic Standards," published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., eighth edition.
  - a. Mechanical/Electrical Drawings: Graphic symbols used on mechanical and electrical Drawings are generally aligned with symbols recommended by ASHRAE. Where appropriate, they are supplemented by more specific symbols recommended by technical associations including ASME, ASPE, IEEE, and similar organizations. Refer instances of uncertainty to the Architect for clarification before proceeding.

D. Industry Standards:

1. Applicability of Standards: Except where the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference. Individual Sections indicate which codes and standards the Contractor must keep available at the Project Site for reference.
2. Publication Dates: Where the date of issue of a referenced standard is not specified, comply with the standard in effect as of date of Contract Documents.
3. Conflicting Requirements: Where compliance with two or more standards is specified, and they establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, the most stringent requirement will be enforced, unless the Contract Documents indicate otherwise. Refer requirements that are different, but apparently equal, and uncertainties as to which quality level is more stringent to the Architect for a decision before proceeding.
4. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on the Project is required to be familiar with industry standards applicable to that entity's construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - a. Where copies of standards are needed for performance of a required construction activity, the Contractor shall obtain copies directly from the publication source.
  - b. Although copies of standards needed for enforcement of requirements also may, be included as part of required submittals, the Architect reserves the right to require the Contractor to submit additional copies as necessary for enforcement of requirements.
5. Abbreviations and Names: Trade association names and titles of general standards are frequently abbreviated. Where such acronyms or abbreviations are used in the Specifications or other Contract Documents, they mean the recognized name of the trade association, standards generating organization, authority having jurisdiction, or other entity applicable to the context of the text provision.
  - a. A copy of the CSI directory of Construction Industry Associations, Societies, and Institutes, and Abbreviations is on file in the office of the Architect.

**END OF SECTION 01 42 19**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for quality control services.
- B. Quality control services include inspections and tests and related actions including reports, performed by independent agencies, governing authorities, and the Contractor. They do not include Contract enforcement activities performed by the Architect.
- C. Inspection and testing services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities.
  - 2. Inspections, test and related actions specified are not intended to limit the Contractor's quality control procedures that facilitate compliance with Contract Document requirements.
- D. Requirements for the Contractor to provide quality control services required by the Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- E. Related Documents: Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Contractor Responsibilities:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated as the responsibility of another identified entity, Contractor shall provide inspections, tests, and other quality-control services specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents and required by authorities having jurisdiction. Costs for these services shall be included in the Contract Sum.
    - a. Where individual Sections specifically indicate that certain inspections, tests, and other quality-control services are the Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall employ and pay a qualified independent testing agency to perform quality-control services. Costs for these services are included in the Contract Sum.
    - b. Where individual Sections specifically indicate that certain inspections, tests, and other quality-control services are the Owner's responsibility, the Owner will employ and pay a qualified independent testing agency to perform those services.
  - 2. Retesting: The Contractor is responsible for retesting where results of required inspections, tests or similar services prove unsatisfactory and do not indicate compliance with Contract Document requirements, regardless of whether the original test was the Contractor's responsibility.
  - 3. Cost of retesting construction revised or replaced by the Contractor is the Contractor's responsibility, where required tests were performed on original construction.
  - 4. Associated Services: The Contractor shall cooperate with agencies performing required inspections, tests and similar services and provide reasonable auxiliary

services as requested. Notify the agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Auxiliary services required include but are not limited to:

- a. Providing access to the Work and furnishing incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate inspections and tests.
  - b. Taking adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing or assisting the agency in taking samples.
  - c. Providing facilities for storage and curing of test samples, and delivery of samples to testing laboratories.
  - d. Security and protection of samples and test equipment at the Project site.
- B. Owner Responsibilities: The Owner will provide inspections, tests and similar quality control services specified to be performed by independent agencies and not by the Contractor, except where they are specifically indicated as the Contractor's responsibility or are provided by another identified entity. Costs for these services are not included in the Contract Sum.
1. The Owner will employ and pay for the services of an independent agency, testing laboratory or other qualified firm to perform services which are the Owner's responsibility.
- C. Duties of the Testing Agency: The independent testing agency engaged to perform inspections, sampling and testing of materials and construction specified in individual Specification Sections shall cooperate with the Architect and Contractor in performance of its duties, and shall provide qualified personnel to perform required inspections and tests.
1. The agency shall notify the Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. The agency is not authorized to release, revoke, alter or enlarge requirements of the Contract Documents, or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  3. The agency shall not perform any duties of the Contractor.
- D. Coordination: The Contractor and each agency engaged to perform inspections, tests and similar services shall coordinate the sequence of activities to accommodate required services with a minimum of delay. In addition the Contractor and each agency shall coordinate activities to avoid the necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate inspections and tests.
1. The Contractor is responsible for scheduling times for inspections, tests, taking samples and similar activities.

### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. The independent testing agency shall submit a certified written report of each inspection, test or similar service, to the Architect, in duplicate
1. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to the governing authority, when the authority so directs.
  2. Report Data: Written reports of each inspection, test or similar service shall include, but not be limited to:
    - a. Date of issue.
    - b. Project title and number.
    - c. Name, address and telephone number of testing agency.
    - d. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
    - e. Names of individuals making the inspection or test.
    - f. Designation of the Work and test method.
    - g. Identification of product and Specification Section.
    - h. Complete inspection or test data.

- i. Test results and an interpretations of test results.
- j. Ambient conditions at the time of sample-taking and testing.
- k. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
- l. Recommendations on retesting.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualification for Service Agencies: Engage inspection and testing service agencies, including independent testing laboratories, which are prequalified as complying with "Recommended Requirements for Independent Laboratory Qualification" by the American Council of Independent Laboratories, and which specialize in the types of inspections and tests to be performed.
  - 1. Each independent inspection and testing agency engaged on the Project shall be authorized by authorities having jurisdiction to operate in the State in which the Project is located.

#### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Used)

#### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

##### **3.1 TESTS REQUIRED**

- A. Tests required may include but not be limited to the following:
  - 1. Soil compaction per IBC 1802.6.
  - 2. Concrete, per IBC 1704.4 and Table 1704.4.
  - 3. Welding, per IBC 1704.3 and Table 1704.3.
  - 4. High strength bolts, per IBC 1704.3.3.
  - 5. Structural masonry, per IBC 1704.5.

##### **3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample-taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes to eliminate deficiencies, including deficiencies in visual qualities of exposed finishes.
  - 1. Protect construction exposed by or for quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.
  - 2. Repair and protection is the Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for inspection, testing or similar services.

**END OF SECTION 01 43 00**





**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes requirements for temporary facilities and controls, including temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Temporary utilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Sewers and drainage.
  - 2. Water service and distribution.
  - 3. Sanitary facilities, including toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water facilities.
  - 4. Heating and cooling facilities.
  - 5. Ventilation.
  - 6. Electric power service.
  - 7. Lighting.
  - 8. Telephone service.
  - 9. Facsimile machine.
- C. Support facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Temporary roads and paving.
  - 2. Dewatering facilities and drains.
  - 3. Project identification and temporary signs.
  - 4. Waste disposal facilities.
  - 5. Field offices.
  - 6. Storage and fabrication sheds.
  - 7. Lifts and hoists.
  - 8. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities.
  - 9. First aid station.
- D. Security and protection facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Environmental protection.
  - 2. Stormwater control.
  - 3. Tree and plant protection.
  - 4. Pest control.
  - 5. Site enclosure fence.
  - 6. Security enclosure and lockup.
  - 7. Barricades, warning signs, and lights.
  - 8. Covered walkways.
  - 9. Temporary enclosures.
  - 10. Temporary partitions.
  - 11. Fire protection.
- E. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for procedures for submitting copies of implementation and termination schedule and utility reports.

2. Division 01 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning requirements.
3. Divisions 02 through 33 for temporary heat, ventilation, and humidity requirements for products in those Sections.

### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

### **1.4 USE CHARGES**

- A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to Owner or Architect and shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Owner's construction forces.
  2. Occupants of Project.
  3. Architect.
  4. Testing agencies.
  5. Personnel of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer service use charges for sewer usage, by all parties engaged in construction, at Project site.
- C. Water Service: Pay water service use charges, whether metered or otherwise, for water used by all entities engaged in construction activities at Project site.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric power service use charges, whether metered or otherwise, for electricity used by all entities engaged in construction activities at Project site.

### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6, NECA's "Temporary Electrical Facilities," and NFPA 241.
  1. Trade Jurisdictions: Assigned responsibilities for installation and operation of temporary utilities are not intended to interfere with trade regulations and union jurisdictions.
  2. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Temporary Utilities: At earliest feasible time, when acceptable to Owner, change over from use of temporary service to use of permanent service.
  1. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.
- B. Conditions of Use: The following conditions apply to use of temporary services and facilities

by all parties engaged in the Work:

1. Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat.
2. Relocate temporary services and facilities as required by progress of the Work.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide new materials. Undamaged, previously used materials in serviceable condition may be used if approved by Architect. Provide materials suitable for use intended.
- B. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails.
- C. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section "Miscellaneous Carpentry."
- D. Tarpaulins: Fire-resistive labeled with flame-spread rating of 15 or less.
- E. Water: Potable.

### **2.2 EQUIPMENT**

- A. General: Provide equipment suitable for use intended.
- B. Field Offices: Prefabricated or mobile units with lockable entrances, operable windows, and serviceable finishes; heated and air conditioned; on foundations adequate for normal loading.
- C. Fire Extinguishers: Hand carried, portable, UL rated. Provide class and extinguishing agent as indicated or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for exposures.
  1. Comply with NFPA 10 and NFPA 241 for classification, extinguishing agent, and size required by location and class of fire exposure.
- D. Self-Contained Toilet Units: Single-occupant units of chemical, aerated recirculation, or combustion type; vented; fully enclosed with a glass-fiber-reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material.
- E. Drinking-Water Fixtures: Containerized, tap-dispenser, bottled-water drinking-water units, including paper cup supply.
  1. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45 to 55 deg F (7.2 to 12.7 deg C).
- F. Heating Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent heating system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use for type of fuel being consumed.

- G. Electrical Outlets: Properly configured, NEMA-polarized outlets to prevent insertion of 110- to 120-V plugs into higher-voltage outlets; equipped with ground-fault circuit interrupters, reset button, and pilot light.
- H. Power Distribution System Circuits: Where permitted and overhead and exposed for surveillance, wiring circuits, not exceeding 125-V ac, 20-A rating, and lighting circuits may be nonmetallic sheathed cable.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Maintain and modify as required. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### **3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Engage appropriate local utility company to install temporary service or connect to existing service. Where utility company provides only part of the service, provide the remainder with matching, compatible materials and equipment. Comply with utility company recommendations.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
  - 2. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction. Before temporary utility is available, provide trucked-in services.
  - 3. Obtain easements to bring temporary utilities to Project site where Owner's easements cannot be used for that purpose.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary connections to remove effluent that can be discharged lawfully.
  - 1. Filter out excessive soil, construction debris, chemicals, oils, and similar contaminants that might clog sewers or pollute waterways before discharge.
  - 2. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by sewer department officials.
  - 3. Maintain temporary sewers and drainage facilities in a clean, sanitary condition. After heavy use, restore normal conditions promptly.
  - 4. Provide temporary filter beds, settlement tanks, separators, and similar devices to purify effluent to levels acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction until permanent water service is in use. Sterilize temporary water piping before use.
  - 1. Provide rubber hoses as necessary to serve Project site.
  - 2. As soon as water is required at each level, extend service to form a temporary water- and fire-protection standpipe. Provide distribution piping. Space outlets so water can be reached with a 100-foot (30-m) hose. Provide one hose at each outlet.
  - 3. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated

water promptly from pans.

- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water fixtures. Comply with regulations and health codes for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
  - 1. Disposable Supplies: Provide toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups, and similar disposable materials for each facility. Maintain adequate supply. Provide covered waste containers for disposal of used material.
  - 2. Toilets: Install self-contained toilet units. Shield toilets to ensure privacy. Provide separate facilities for male and female personnel.
  - 3. Drinking-Water Facilities: Provide bottled-water, drinking-water units.
    - a. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45 to 55 deg F (7.2 to 12.7 deg C).
- E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment from that specified that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  - 1. Maintain a minimum temperature of 50 deg F (10 deg C) in permanently enclosed portions of building for normal construction activities, and 65 deg F (18.3 deg C) for finishing activities and areas where finished Work has been installed.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment from that specified that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
- G. Electric Power Service: Provide weatherproof, grounded electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics during construction period. Include meters, transformers, overload-protected disconnecting means, automatic ground-fault interrupters, and main distribution switchgear.
  - 1. Install power distribution wiring overhead and rise vertically where least exposed to damage.
  - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by electric company officials.
- H. Electric Distribution: Provide receptacle outlets adequate for connection of power tools and equipment.
  - 1. Provide waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electrical power cords if single lengths will not reach areas where construction activities are in progress. Do not exceed safe length-voltage ratio.
  - 2. Provide warning signs at power outlets other than 110 to 120 V.
  - 3. Provide metal conduit, tubing, or metallic cable for wiring exposed to possible damage. Provide rigid steel conduits for wiring exposed on grades, floors, decks, or other traffic areas.
  - 4. Provide metal conduit enclosures or boxes for wiring devices.
  - 5. Provide 4-gang outlets, spaced so 100-foot (30-m) extension cord can reach each area for power hand tools and task lighting. Provide a separate 125-V ac, 20-A circuit for each outlet.
- I. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination

for construction operations and traffic conditions.

1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
  2. Provide one 100-W incandescent lamp per 500 sq. ft. (45 sq. m), uniformly distributed, for general lighting, or equivalent illumination.
  3. Provide one 100-W incandescent lamp every 50 feet (15 m) in traffic areas.
  4. Provide one 100-W incandescent lamp per story in stairways and ladder runs, located to illuminate each landing and flight.
  5. Install exterior-yard site lighting that will provide adequate illumination for construction operations, traffic conditions, and signage visibility when the Work is being performed.
- J. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service throughout construction period for common-use facilities used by all personnel engaged in construction activities. Install separate telephone line for each field office and first-aid station.
1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
    - a. In field office with more than two occupants, install a telephone for each additional occupant or pair of occupants.
    - b. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer with modem in each field office.
    - c. Provide a separate telephone line for Owner's use.
    - d. Install a telephone on every second or third story of construction.
  2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Architect's office.
    - e. Engineers' offices.
    - f. Owner's office.
    - g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
  3. Provide an answering machine or voice-mail service on superintendent's telephone.
  4. Provide a portable cellular telephone for superintendent's use in making and receiving telephone calls when away from field office.

### **3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with the following:
1. Locate field offices, storage sheds, sanitary facilities, and other temporary construction and support facilities for easy access.
  2. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
  3. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate to support loads and to withstand exposure to traffic during construction period. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide a reasonably level, graded, well-drained subgrade of satisfactory soil material, compacted to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry density in the top 6 inches (150 mm).
  2. Provide gravel paving course of subbase material not less than 3 inches (75 mm)

- thick; roller compacted to a level, smooth, dense surface.
3. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Traffic Controls: Provide temporary traffic controls at junction of temporary roads with public roads. Include warning signs for public traffic and "STOP" signs for entrance onto public roads. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 2 Sections for temporary drainage and dewatering facilities and operations not directly associated with construction activities included in individual Sections. Where feasible, use same facilities. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining property nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  2. Before connection and operation of permanent drainage piping system, provide temporary drainage where roofing or similar waterproof deck construction is completed.
  3. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- E. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Prepare Project identification and other signs in sizes indicated. Install signs where indicated to inform public and persons seeking entrance to Project. Do not permit installation of unauthorized signs.
1. Engage an experienced sign painter to apply graphics for Project identification signs. Comply with details indicated.
  2. Prepare temporary signs to provide directional information to construction personnel and visitors.
  3. Construct signs of exterior-type Grade B-B high-density concrete form overlay plywood in sizes and thicknesses indicated. Support on posts or framing of preservative-treated wood or steel.
  4. Paint sign panel and applied graphics with exterior-grade alkyd gloss enamel over exterior primer.
  5. Provide one 72" high x 96" wide project sign with text as follows:
    - a. Name of Project - allow 2 lines.
    - b. Name of Owner - allow 2 lines.
    - c. Owner's Logo - allow 24" x 16" space.
    - d. Name of Architect - allow 4 lines.
    - e. Architect's Logo - allow (2) 24" x 16" spaces.
    - f. Name of Contractor - allow 2 lines.
    - g. Contractor's Logo - allow 24" x 16" space.
    - h. Allow 24 additional lines.
- F. Waste Disposal Facilities:
1. Establish a system for daily collection and disposal of waste or extraneous materials from all construction areas on site that may present a hazard to the project, its craftsmen and the expeditious construction of the work. The Contractor shall provide to the Owner a satisfactory method to assure clean-up is performed in a timely and expeditious fashion. Enforce requirements strictly. Do not hold collected materials at the site longer than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days when the daily temperature is expected to rise above 80 degrees F. Handle waste materials that are hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary separately from other inert waste by containerizing appropriately. Dispose of waste material in a lawful manner.
    - a. Burying or burning of waste materials on the site will not be permitted.
    - b. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be



- permitted.
    - c. Provide rodent proof containers located on each floor level of construction work, to encourage depositing of lunch garbage and similar wastes by construction personnel.
  - 2. The Owner reserves the right to withhold payments and perform the clean-up, if necessary, at the expense of the Contractor, if unsatisfactory clean-up efforts are not performed in a timely fashion.
- G. Common-Use Field Office: Provide an insulated, weathertight, air-conditioned field office for use as a common facility by all personnel engaged in construction activities; of sufficient size to accommodate required office personnel and meetings of 12 persons at Project site. Keep office clean and orderly.
- 1. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
    - a. Desk and four chairs, four-drawer file cabinet, a plan table, a plan rack, and bookcase.
    - b. Provide a room of not less than 240 sq. ft. (18.0 sq. m) for Project meetings. Furnish room with conference table, 12 folding chairs, and 4-foot- (1.2-m-) square tack board.
  - 2. Provide resilient floor covering and painted gypsum wallboard walls and acoustical ceiling. Provide operable windows with adjustable blinds and insect screens.
  - 3. Provide an electric heater with thermostat capable of maintaining a uniform indoor temperature of 68 deg F (20 deg C). Provide an air-conditioning unit capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of 72 deg F (23 deg C).
  - 4. Provide fluorescent light fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc (215 lx) at desk height. Provide 110- to 120-V duplex outlets spaced at not more than 12-foot (4-m) intervals, 1 per wall in each room.
- H. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment involved, including temporary utility services. Sheds may be open shelters or fully enclosed spaces within building or elsewhere on-site.
- I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities for hoisting materials and personnel. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- J. Temporary Stairs: Provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.

### **3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects. Avoid using tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noisemaking tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near Project site.
- B. Stormwater Control: Provide earthen embankments and similar barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction, sufficient to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- C. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from construction damage. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

- D. Pest Control: Before deep foundation work has been completed, retain a local exterminator or pest-control company to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests. Engage this pest-control service to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Obtain extended warranty for Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- E. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, install chain-link enclosure fence with lockable entrance gates. Locate where indicated, or enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations. Install in a manner that will prevent people, dogs, and other animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
1. Set fence posts in concrete bases.
  2. Provide gates in sizes and at locations necessary to accommodate delivery vehicles and other construction operations.
  3. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel.
- F. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
- G. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with standards and code requirements for erecting structurally adequate barricades. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and public of possible hazard. Where appropriate and needed, provide lighting, including flashing red or amber lights.
1. For safety barriers, sidewalk bridges, and similar uses, provide minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick exterior plywood.
- H. Covered Walkway: Where required, erect a structurally adequate, protective, covered walkway for passage of persons along adjacent public street. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, provide insulated temporary enclosures. Coordinate enclosure with ventilating and material drying or curing requirements to avoid dangerous conditions and effects.
  2. Vertical Openings: Close openings of 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m) or less with plywood or similar materials.
  3. Horizontal Openings: Close openings in floor or roof decks and horizontal surfaces with load-bearing, wood-framed construction.
  4. Install tarpaulins securely using fire-retardant-treated wood framing and other materials.
  5. Where temporary wood or plywood enclosure exceeds 100 sq. ft. (9.2 sq. m) in area, use fire-retardant-treated material for framing and main sheathing.
- J. Temporary Partitions: Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas from fumes and noise.
1. Construct dustproof partitions of not less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) studs,

- 5/8-inch (16-mm) gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and 1/2-inch (13-mm) fire-retardant plywood on construction side.
  - 2. Insulate partitions to provide noise protection to occupied areas.
  - 3. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
  - 4. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - 5. Weatherstrip openings.
- K. Temporary Fire Protection: Until fire-protection needs are supplied by permanent facilities, install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
- 1. Provide fire extinguishers, installed on walls on mounting brackets, visible and accessible from space being served, with sign mounted above.
    - a. Field Offices: Class A stored-pressure water-type extinguishers.
    - b. Other Locations: Class ABC dry-chemical extinguishers or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for exposures.
    - c. Locate fire extinguishers where convenient and effective for their intended purpose; provide not less than one extinguisher on each floor at or near each usable stairwell.
  - 2. Store combustible materials in containers in fire-safe locations.
  - 3. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire-protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for firefighting. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure areas.
  - 4. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition.
  - 5. Permanent Fire Protection: At earliest feasible date in each area of Project, complete installation of permanent fire-protection facility, including connected services, and place into operation and use. Instruct key personnel on use of facilities.
  - 6. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and first-aid fire-protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 7. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### **3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL**

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage caused by freezing temperatures and similar elements.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
  - 2. Prevent water-filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Except for using permanent fire protection as soon as available, do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are the property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  2. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

**END OF SECTION 01 50 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following administrative and procedural requirements: selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; product substitutions; and comparable products.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Definitions and Standards" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties for contract closeout.
  - 3. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and installations specified to be warranted.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation, shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of other named manufacturers.
- D. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

- E. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract Documents, either to extend time limit provided by manufacturer's warranty or to provide more rights for Owner.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product List: Submit a list, in tabular form, showing specified products. Include generic names of products required. Include manufacturer's name and proprietary product names for each product.
1. Coordinate product list with Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
  2. Form: Tabulate information for each product under the following column headings:
    - a. Specification Section number and title.
    - b. Generic name used in the Contract Documents.
    - c. Proprietary name, model number, and similar designations.
    - d. Manufacturer's name and address.
    - e. Supplier's name and address.
    - f. Installer's name and address.
    - g. Projected delivery date or time span of delivery period.
    - h. Identification of items that require early submittal approval for scheduled delivery date.
  3. Initial Submittal: Within 30 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of initial product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
    - a. At Contractor's option, initial submittal may be limited to product selections and designations that must be established early in Contract period.
  4. Completed List: Within 60 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of completed product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
  5. Architect's Action: Architect will respond in writing to Contractor within 15 days of receipt of completed product list. Architect's response will include a list of unacceptable product selections and a brief explanation of reasons for this action. Architect's response, or lack of response, does not constitute a waiver of requirement that products comply with the Contract Documents.
- B. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A.
  2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified material or product cannot be provided.
    - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.

- f. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - g. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - h. Research/evaluation reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's Construction Schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating lack of availability or delays in delivery.
  - j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Form of Acceptance: Change Order.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, product selected shall be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

## **1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for



- handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
- 4. Inspect products on delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- 5. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
- 6. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
- 7. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
- 8. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
- 9. Protect stored products from damage.

## **1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES**

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution. Submit a draft for approval before final execution.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  - 2. Refer to Divisions 2 through 16 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PRODUCT OPTIONS**

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged, and unless otherwise indicated, that are new at time of installation.
  - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  - 5. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is Architect's.
  - 6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish "salient characteristics" of products.
  - 7. Or Equal: Where products are specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal" or "or approved equal" or "or approved," comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

- B. Product Selection Procedures: Procedures for product selection include the following:
1. Product: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Product" name a single product and manufacturer, provide the product named.
    - a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Manufacturer" or "Source" name single manufacturers or sources, provide a product by the manufacturer or from the source named that complies with requirements.
    - a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Products" introduce a list of names of both products and manufacturers, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements.
    - a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Manufacturers: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Manufacturers" introduce a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements.
    - a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Available Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Available Products" introduce a list of names of both products and manufacturers, provide one of the products listed or another product that complies with requirements. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
  6. Available Manufacturers: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Available Manufacturers" introduce a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or another manufacturer that complies with requirements. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
  7. Product Options: Where Specification paragraphs titled "Product Options" indicate that size, profiles, and dimensional requirements on Drawings are based on a specific product or system, provide either the specific product or system indicated or a comparable product or system by another manufacturer. Comply with provisions in "Product Substitutions" Article.
  8. Basis-of-Design Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Basis-of-Design Products" are included and also introduce or refer to a list of manufacturers' names, provide either the specified product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
    - a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
  9. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require matching an established Sample, select a product (and manufacturer) that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches satisfactorily.
    - a. If no product available within specified category matches satisfactorily and complies with other specified requirements, comply with provisions of the Contract Documents on "substitutions" for selection of a matching product.
  10. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected from manufacturer's colors, patterns, textures" or a similar phrase, select a product (and manufacturer) that complies with other specified requirements.
    - a. Standard Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "standard range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include

- premium items.
- b. Full Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "full range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## **2.2 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS**

- A. Timing: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
- B. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - 1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - 2. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - 4. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - 5. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

## **2.3 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS**

- A. Where products or manufacturers are specified by name, submit the following, in addition to other required submittals, to obtain approval of an unnamed product:
  - 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
  - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  - 5. Samples, if requested.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

(Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 60 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. General installation of products.
  - 4. Progress cleaning.
  - 5. Starting and adjusting.
  - 6. Protection of installed construction.
  - 7. Correction of the Work.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for procedures for coordinating field engineering with other construction activities.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" for procedural requirements for cutting and patching necessary for the installation or performance of other components of the Work.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Used)

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of site improvements, utilities, and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning work, investigate and verify the existence and location of mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and points of connection of utility services.

- B. Existing Utilities: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; and underground electrical services.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- C. Acceptance of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
    - a. Description of the Work.
    - b. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
    - c. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
    - d. Recommended corrections.
  - 2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  - 3. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 4. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's and Owner's written permission.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect. Include a detailed description of problem encountered, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

### **3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT**

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor/professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 5. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- D. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### **3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING**

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.



### **3.5 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance as indicated in spaces without a suspended ceiling.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- F. Anchors and Fasteners: Provide anchors and fasteners as required to anchor each component securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
- G. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- H. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### **3.6 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the

entire work area, as appropriate.

- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Cutting and Patching: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.
  - 1. Thoroughly clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
- H. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.
- I. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- J. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- K. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### **3.7 STARTING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding. Adjust equipment for proper operation.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: If a factory-authorized service representative is required to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, comply with qualification requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."

### **3.8 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

### **3.9 CORRECTION OF THE WORK**

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."
  - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

**END OF SECTION 01 73 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Selective Demolition" for demolition of selected portions of the building for alterations.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for patching fire-rated construction.
  - 3. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching individual parts of the Work.
    - a. Requirements in this Section apply to mechanical and electrical installations. Refer to Divisions 22, 23 and 26 Sections for other requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching mechanical and electrical installations.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cutting: Removal of existing construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed.
  - 1. Architect's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
- B. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety, including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Primary operational systems and equipment.
  - 2. Air or smoke barriers.

3. Fire-protection systems.
  4. Control systems.
  5. Communication systems.
  6. Conveying systems.
  7. Electrical wiring systems.
  8. Operating systems of special construction in Division 13 Sections.
- C. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch the following elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
1. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  2. Membranes and flashings.
  3. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
  4. Equipment supports.
  5. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  6. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
- D. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
1. If possible, retain original Installer or fabricator to cut and patch exposed Work. If it is impossible to engage original Installer or fabricator, engage another recognized, experienced, and specialized firm.
- E. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

## **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
- B. Existing Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
  - 1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- B. Protection: Protect existing construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- D. Existing Services: Where existing services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services before cutting to minimize interruption of services to occupied areas.

### **3.3 PERFORMANCE**

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut existing construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Cutting: Cut existing construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Existing Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete/Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 2 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

- C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.

**END OF SECTION 01 73 29**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Warranties.
  - 3. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial and Final Completion.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Execution Requirements" for progress cleaning of Project site.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 5. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.
  - 6. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for the Work in those Sections.

**1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.
  - 1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
  - 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 3. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 5. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 6. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
  - 7. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 8. Complete startup testing of systems.
  - 9. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
  - 10. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups,



- construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 11. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  - 12. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
  - 13. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  - 14. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
- 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

#### **1.4 FINAL COMPLETION**

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:
- 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
  - 2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  - 3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  - 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
  - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training videotapes.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
- 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### **1.5 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)**

- A. Preparation: Submit three copies of list. Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
- 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
  - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:

- a. Project name.
- b. Date.
- c. Name of Architect.
- d. Name of Contractor.
- e. Page number.

## **1.6 WARRANTIES**

- A. Submittal Time: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and

- c. other foreign deposits.
  - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
  - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
  - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
  - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
  - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
  - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - l. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - 1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
  - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - n. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
  - o. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - p. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - q. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
  - r. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
  - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Engage an experienced, licensed exterminator to make a final inspection and rid Project of rodents, insects, and other pests. Prepare a report.
- D. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of lawfully.

#### **END OF SECTION 01 77 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Maintenance manuals for the care and maintenance of products, materials, and finishes systems and equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for preparing Record Drawings for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Initial Submittal: Submit 2 draft copies of each manual at least 15 days before requesting inspection for Substantial Completion. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Architect will return one copy of draft and mark whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- B. Final Submittal: Submit 2 of each manual in final form at least 15 days before final inspection. Architect will return copy with comments within 15 days after final inspection.
  - 1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit 3 copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments.

**1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Where operation and maintenance documentation includes information on installations by more than one factory-authorized service representative, assemble and coordinate

information furnished by representatives and prepare manuals.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY**

- A. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

### **2.2 MANUALS, GENERAL**

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Enclose title page in transparent plastic sleeve. Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name, address, and telephone number of Contractor.
  - 6. Name and address of Architect.
  - 7. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
  - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software diskettes for computerized electronic equipment.
  4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) white bond paper.
  5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
  2. Flood.
  3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.

- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## **2.4 OPERATION MANUALS**

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.
  6. Limiting conditions.
  7. Performance curves.
  8. Engineering data and tests.
  9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Startup procedures.
  2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  4. Regulation and control procedures.
  5. Instructions on stopping.
  6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## **2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## **2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard printed maintenance instructions and bulletins.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential



maintenance procedures:

1. Test and inspection instructions.
  2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training videotape, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include

only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in Record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original Project Record Documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared Record Drawings in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 23**



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Record Submittals as requested by the Owner.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 3. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for Project Record Documents of the Work in those Sections.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one copy of each Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Where Record Product Data is required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit marked-up Product Data as an insert in manual instead of submittal as Record Product Data.
- D. Record Shop Drawings: Provide copies of shop drawings or other submittals as requested by the Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of white prints of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be

- difficult to identify or measure and record later.
  - b. Accurately record information in an understandable drawing technique.
  - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
- 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
  - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
  - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
  - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
  - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
  - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
  - g. Actual equipment locations.
  - h. Duct size and routing.
  - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
  - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
  - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
  - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
  - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
  - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing actual physical conditions, completely and accurately. If Shop Drawings are marked, show cross-reference on the Contract Drawings.
- 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Note related Change Orders, Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.

## 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.

## **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS**

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE**

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and modifications to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store Record Documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's and Owner=s reference during normal working hours.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 39**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training videotapes.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for preinstruction conferences.
  - 2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for products in those Sections.
- C. Unit Price for Instruction Time: Length of instruction time will be measured by actual time spent performing demonstration and training in required location. No payment will be made for time spent assembling educational materials, setting up, or cleaning up.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Instruction Program: Submit two copies of outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. At completion of training, submit two complete training manual(s) for Owner's use.
- B. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in AQuality Assurance® Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners and other information specified.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.
- E. Demonstration and Training Videotapes: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and address of photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.



- d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Date videotape was recorded.
  - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
2. Transcript: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper, punched and bound in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered binders. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding videotape. Include name of Project and date of videotape on each page.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- B. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM**

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
  - 1. Motorized doors, including overhead coiling doors and automatic entrance doors.
  - 2. Equipment, including projection screens, loading dock equipment, food-service equipment, and residential appliances.
  - 3. Fire-protection systems, including fire alarm and fire-extinguishing systems.
  - 4. Intrusion detection systems.
  - 5. Conveying systems, including elevators and wheelchair lifts.

6. Heat generation, including boilers, feedwater equipment, pumps and water distribution piping.
  7. Refrigeration systems, including chillers, cooling towers, condensers, pumps and distribution piping.
  8. HVAC systems, including air-handling equipment, air distribution systems and terminal equipment and devices.
  9. HVAC instrumentation and controls.
  10. Electrical service and distribution, including transformers, switchboards, panelboards, uninterruptible power supplies and motor controls.
  11. Packaged engine generators, including transfer switches.
  12. Lighting equipment and controls.
  13. Communication systems, including intercommunication, surveillance, clocks and programming, voice and data and television equipment.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following:
1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Operating standards.
    - c. Regulatory requirements.
    - d. Equipment function.
    - e. Operating characteristics.
    - f. Limiting conditions.
    - g. Performance curves.
  2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Operations manuals.
    - c. Maintenance manuals.
    - d. Project Record Documents.
    - e. Identification systems.
    - f. Warranties and bonds.
    - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Startup procedures.
    - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    - d. Regulation and control procedures.
    - e. Control sequences.
    - f. Safety procedures.
    - g. Instructions on stopping.
    - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
    - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
    - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
    - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.

- l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
- 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a combined training manual.
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

### **3.2 INSTRUCTION**

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Construction Manager, with at least 14 days' advance notice.
- C. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.
- D. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

### **3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEOTAPES**

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial photographer to record demonstration and training videotapes. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Videotape Format: Provide high-quality VHS color videotape in full-size cassettes.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to show area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
- D. Narration: Describe scenes on videotape by audio narration by microphone while videotape is recorded. Include description of items being viewed. Describe vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

**END OF SECTION 01 79 00**



**SECTION 01 90 00 – DESIGN SELECTIONS**

December 22, 2008

Some design selections are campus standards and should be used for bidding. Alternate substitutions will only be considered during bidding and should be presented to the Owner and Architect for value based consideration.

**Design Selections:****Carpet**

Manufacturer	Interface
Pattern	Chenille Warp
Color	3681 Reflections

**Paint**

Manufacturer	Columbia
Sheen	Walls - Satin
	Wood Trim - Semi gloss
Color	Chalk White 2126-70

**Doors**

Material	Solid Wood
Veneer	Walnut
Finish	Clear Satin

**Tile**

Material	Ceramic 4"x4"
Finish	Wall - Gloss
	Floor - Traffic
Color	From full range of manufacturer's standard colors

**Wall Base**

Material	Rubber
Color	Architect to select from full range of manufacturers standard colors

**Plastic Laminate**

Counter tops	Wilsonart 4584-07 "Brazilian Topaz"
Cabinet doors and boxes	Wilsonart 7909-60 "Fusion Maple"
Cabinet interiors	white melamine

**VCT**

Color	Architect to select from full range of manufacturers standard colors
-------	--

**Toilets**

Manufacturer	Toto
--------------	------

**Faucets**

Manufacturer	Moen
--------------	------

**Ceiling Tile**

Manufacturer	Armstrong
--------------	-----------

**Door Hardware**

Manufacturer	Sargent
--------------	---------



## **DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

Section 02 41 00

Selective Demolition





**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of a building or structure.
  - 2. Repair procedures for selective demolition operations.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Summary" for use of the premises and phasing requirements.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" for cutting and patching procedures for selective demolition operations.
  - 3. Division 23 Sections for demolishing, cutting, patching, or relocating mechanical items.
  - 4. Division 26 Sections for demolishing, cutting, patching, or relocating electrical items.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

**1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP**

- A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to Owner.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

- B. Proposed Dust-Control and Noise-Control Measures: Submit statement or drawing that indicates the measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate.
- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - 2. Interruption of utility services.
  - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 4. Use of elevator and stairs.
  - 5. Locations of temporary partitions and means of egress.
  - 6. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- D. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.
- E. Predemolition Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.
- F. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.
- D. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.

## **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- B. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used

facilities.

1. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Owner assumes no responsibility for condition of areas to be selectively demolished.
1. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  2. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site will not be permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 REPAIR MATERIALS**

- A. Use repair materials identical to existing materials.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used for exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  2. Use materials whose installed performance equals or surpasses that of existing materials.
- B. Comply with material and installation requirements specified in individual Specification Sections.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
- B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
- C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- E. Engage a professional engineer to survey condition of building to determine whether

removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective demolition operations.

- F. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.

### **3.2 UTILITY SERVICES**

- A. Existing Utilities: Maintain services indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
- B. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Owner and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide at least 72 hours' notice to Owner if shutdown of service is required during changeover.
- C. Utility Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utilities serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. If utility services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary utilities that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of service to other parts of building.
  - 3. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
- D. Utility Requirements: Refer to Division 22, 23 and 26 Sections for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utilities. Do not start selective demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.

### **3.3 PREPARATION**

- A. Dangerous Materials: Drain, purge, or otherwise remove, collect, and dispose of chemicals, gases, explosives, acids, flammables, or other dangerous materials before proceeding with selective demolition operations.
- B. Pest Control: Employ a certified, licensed exterminator to treat building and to control rodents and vermin before and during selective demolition operations.
- C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
  - 2. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
  - 4. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
- D. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent

injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.

1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
- E. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of existing building and construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, provide insulated temporary enclosures. Coordinate enclosure with ventilating and material drying or curing requirements to avoid dangerous conditions and effects.
- F. Temporary Partitions: Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas from fumes and noise.
- G. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

### **3.4 POLLUTION CONTROLS**

- A. Dust Control: Use water mist, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations.
1. Do not use water when it may damage existing construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
  2. Wet mop floors to eliminate trackable dirt and wipe down walls and doors of demolition enclosure. Vacuum carpeted areas.
- B. Disposal: Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
1. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- C. Cleaning: Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

### **3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION**

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.

2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
  10. Return elements of construction and surfaces that are to remain to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.
- B. Existing Facilities: Comply with Owner's requirements for using and protecting elevators, stairs, walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during selective demolition operations.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items: Comply with the following:
1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items: Comply with the following:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.
- F. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- G. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.

- H. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- I. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
  - 1. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
- J. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing. Refer to applicable Division 7 Section for new roofing requirements.
- K. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.

### **3.6 PATCHING AND REPAIRS**

- A. General: Promptly repair damage to adjacent construction caused by selective demolition operations.
- B. Repairs: Where repairs to existing surfaces are required, patch to produce surfaces suitable for new materials.
  - 1. Completely fill holes and depressions in existing masonry walls that are to remain with an approved masonry patching material applied according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining construction in a manner that eliminates evidence of patching and refinishing.
- D. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are demolished extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
  - 1. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
  - 2. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
- E. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.

### **3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS**

- A. General: Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

**END OF SECTION 02 41 00**





## **DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

Section 03 30 00

Cast-in-Place Concrete



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcing, mix design, placement procedures, and finishes.
- B. Cast-in-place concrete includes the following:
  - 1. Foundations and footings.
  - 2. Slabs-on-grade.
  - 3. Walls, columns, and beams.
  - 4. Interior utility equipment pads and bases.
- C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 02 Section "Portland Cement Concrete Paving" for concrete paving and walks will be bid in a future bid package.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for proprietary materials and items, including reinforcement and forming accessories, admixtures, patching compounds, waterstops, joint systems, and others as requested by Architect.
- C. Shop drawings for reinforcement detailing fabricating, bending, and placing concrete reinforcement. Comply with ACI 315 "Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures" showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, and arrangement of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcing required for openings through concrete structures.
  - 1. Include shop drawings for all walls indicating locations for all rustication lines. Indicate that all joints in the plywood forms occur at these rustication lines.
- D. Laboratory test reports for concrete materials and mix design test.
- E. Material certificates in lieu of material laboratory test reports when permitted by Architect. Material certificates shall be signed by manufacturer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with or exceeds specified requirements. Provide certification from admixture manufacturers that chloride content complies with specification requirements.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of the most current version of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown

or specified:

1. ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings".
  2. ACI 305 "Hot Weather Concreting."
  3. ACI 306.1 "Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting."
  4. ACI 311 "Recommended Practice For Concrete Inspection".
  5. ACI 315 "Manual Of Standard Practice For Detailing Concrete Reinforcement".
  6. ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete".
  7. ACI 347 "Recommended Practice For Concrete Formwork".
  8. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI), "Manual of Standard Practice".
- B. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a testing agency acceptable to Architect to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.
1. Field Quality Control: The Owner will engage a testing laboratory to perform quality control testing during construction.
  2. Materials and installed work may require testing and retesting at any time during progress of Work. Retesting of rejected materials for installed Work, shall be done at Contractor's expense.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 FORM MATERIALS**

- A. Forms for Exposed Finish Concrete: Forms shall have sufficient wall thickness and or bracing to resist wet concrete loads without deformation.
- B. Form Release Agent: Provide commercial formulation form release agent with a maximum of 350 mg/l volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- C. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, adjustable-length, removable or snap-off metal form ties designed to prevent form deflection and to prevent spalling of concrete upon removal. Provide units that will leave no metal closer than 1-1/2 inches to the plane of the exposed concrete surface.

### **2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS**

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed, except use ASTM A706, grade 60 as noted on drawings.
- B. Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, plain, cold-drawn steel.
- C. Supports for Reinforcement: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire bar-type supports complying with CRSI specifications.
1. For slabs-on-grade, use supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  2. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs that are protected by plastic (CRSI, Class 1) or stainless steel (CRSI, Class 2).
- D. Welded-Wire Fabric: ASTM A185

## 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II (Low Alkali)
- B. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Type F, except maximum loss on ignition is limited to 1% with maximum variation of 0.5%.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33 and as specified. Provide aggregates from a single source for exposed concrete.
  - 1. For exposed exterior surfaces, do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing spalling-causing deleterious substances.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Admixtures, General: Provide concrete admixtures that contain not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.
- F. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures and containing no calcium chloride.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Air-Mix or Perma-Air, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Darex AEA or Daravair, W.R. Grace & Co.
    - c. MB-VR or Micro-Air, Master Builders, Inc.
    - d. Sealtight AEA, W.R. Meadows, Inc.
    - e. Sika AER, Sika Corp.
- G. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Eucon WR-75, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. WRDA, W.R. Grace & Co.
    - c. Pozzolith Normal or Polyheed, Master Builders, Inc.
    - d. Plastocrete 161, Sika Corp.
- H. High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F or Type G.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Super P, Anti-Hydro Co., Inc.
    - b. Eucon 37, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - c. WRDA 19 or Daracem, W.R. Grace & Co.
    - d. Rheobuild or Polyheed, Master Builders, Inc.
    - e. Sikament 300, Sika Corp.
- I. Water-Reducing, Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Accelguard 80, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Polarset, W.R. Grace & Co.
    - c. Pozzutec 20, Master Builders, Inc.
- J. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Eucon Retarder 75, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Daratard-17, W.R. Grace & Co.
    - c. Pozzolith R, Master Builders, Inc.
    - d. Plastiment, Sika Corporation.

## 2.4 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Control: Monomolecular film-forming compound applied to exposed concrete slab surfaces for temporary protection from rapid moisture loss.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Eucobar, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. E-Con, L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.
    - c. Confilm, Master Builders, Inc.
- B. Bonding Agent: Acrylic or Styrene Butadiene base.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "J-40 Bonding Agent"; Dayton Superior Corp.
    - b. "Everbond"; L & M Construction Chemicals.
    - c. "Hornweld"; A.C. Horn, Inc.
    - d. "Sonocrete"; Sonneborn-Rexnord.
    - e. "Acrylic Bondcrete"; The Burke Co.
    - f. "SBR Latex"; Euclid Chemical Co.
    - g. "Daraweld C"; W.R. Grace
    - h. "Proweld Acrylic"; Prokrete Industries
- C. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component material suitable for use on dry or damp surfaces. Provide material type, grade, and class to suit Project requirements. Provide pressure injectable type where conditions require same.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Euco Epoxy System #452 or #620, Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. Conesive Standard Liquid, Master Builders, Inc.
    - c. Rezi-Weld 1000, W.R. Meadows, Inc.
    - d. Epcon System Ceramic 6 Epoxy, ITW Redhead/Ramset.
    - e. Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod, Sika Corp.
- D. Mortar Patching Material: Prepackaged material suitable for use on dry or damp surfaces.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Emaco R350, Master Builders, Inc.
    - b. SikaRepair 223, Sika Corp.

## 2.5 PROPORTIONING AND DESIGNING MIXES

- A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete by laboratory trial batch method as specified in ACI 301. Use an independent testing agency acceptable to Architect for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs.
  - 1. Do not use the same testing agency as that used for field quality control testing.
- B. Submit written reports to Architect of each proposed mix for each class of concrete at least 15 days prior to start of Work. Do not begin concrete production until proposed mix designs have been reviewed by Architect.
- C. Design mixes to provide concrete with the following properties as indicated on drawings:
  - 1. Water-cement ratio = water/(cement + fly ash).
  - 2. Normal weight concrete shall have a total weight of between 145 and 155 lbs. per cu.ft.
  - 3. Light Weight concrete shall have a total dry weight not exceeding 110 lbs. per cu. ft.
  - 4. 4000 psi, 28-day compressive strength; water-cement ratio, 0.45 maximum.

5. 3000 psi, 28-day compressive strength; water-cement ratio, 0.50 maximum.
- D. Slump Limits: Proportion and design mixes to result in concrete slump at point of placement as follows
  1. Ramps, slabs, and sloping surfaces: Not more than 3 inches (75 mm).
  2. Reinforced foundation systems and all site walls: Not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and not more than 4 inches (100 mm).
  3. Concrete containing high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer): Not more than 8 inches (200 mm) after adding admixture to site-verified 2 - 3 inch (50 - 75 mm) slump concrete.
  4. Other concrete: Not more than 4 inches (100 mm).
- E. Adjustment to Concrete Mixes: Mix design adjustments may be requested by Contractor when characteristics of materials, job conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant, at no additional cost to Owner and as accepted by Architect. Laboratory test data for revised mix design and strength results must be submitted to and accepted by Architect before using in Work.
- F. Concrete mixes shall be proportioned to minimize drying shrinkage. Use the largest coarse aggregate size practical and proportion mix designs to minimize total water content.

## **2.6 ADMIXTURES**

- A. Use water-reducing admixture or high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
- B. Use accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50 deg F (10 deg C).
- C. High-range water-reducing admixture may be used in concrete with water-cement ratios below 0.50.
- D. Use air-entraining admixture where indicated. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having total air content with a tolerance of plus or minus 1-1/2 percent within the following limits:
  1. Concrete structures and slabs exposed to freezing and thawing, deicer chemicals, or hydraulic pressure:
    - a. 6.0 percent for 1 inch (25 mm) maximum aggregate.
    - b. 6.5 percent for 3/4 inch (19 mm) maximum aggregate.
  2. Other concrete not exposed to freezing, thawing, or hydraulic pressure, or to receive a surface hardener: 2 to 4 percent air.
- E. Use of additional specified admixtures for water-reducing and set-control is at Contractor's option, at no additional expense to Owner, subject to Architect's approval prior to inclusion in mix designs. Use approved admixtures in strict compliance with manufacturer's directions.

## **2.7 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mix Concrete: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 94, and as herein specified.
  1. Materials handling, batching, and mixing shall conform to applicable provisions of ASTM C 94, except delete references to allowing additional water to be added to material with insufficient slump.



2. When air temperature is between 85 deg F (29 deg C) and 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes, and when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
3. Furnish delivery tickets with each load of concrete delivered to site. In addition to the requirements of ASTM C 94 Section 16.1, provide the following information on delivery tickets:
  - a. Date and time of dispatch.
  - b. Proportions of all materials used.
  - c. Approximate location of final deposit in structure.
  - d. Scale weight of load.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Coordinate the installation of joint materials with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.

### **3.2 FORMS**

- A. General: Design, erect, support, brace, and maintain formwork to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads that might be applied until concrete structure can support such loads. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of correct size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position. Maintain formwork construction tolerances and surface irregularities complying with the following ACI 347 limits:
  1. Provide Class A tolerances for concrete surfaces exposed to view.
  2. All footing shall be formed.
- B. Construct forms to sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions shown and to obtain accurate alignment, location, grades, level, and plumb work in finished structures. Provide for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages and inserts, and other features required in the Work. Use selected materials to obtain required finishes. Solidly butt joints and provide backup at joints to prevent leakage of cement paste. Coordinate with structural steel supplier for placement of embedded steel items and bolts.
- C. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush plates or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like for easy removal.
- D. Provide temporary openings for clean-outs and inspections where interior area of formwork is inaccessible before and during concrete placement. Securely brace temporary openings and set tightly to forms to prevent losing concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- E. Provisions for Other Trades: Provide openings in concrete formwork to accommodate work of other trades. Determine size and location of openings, recesses, and chases from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.
- F. Cleaning and Tightening: Thoroughly clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete.

Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, or other debris just before placing concrete. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

### **3.3 PLACING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars," for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports and as herein specified.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as approved by Architect.
- D. Place reinforcement to maintain minimum coverages as indicated for concrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Splice reinforcing bars in accordance with ACI 318. Splice only where required or permitted by drawings, or where authorized by Architect.

### **3.4 JOINTS**

- A. Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints so they do not impair strength or appearance of the structure, as acceptable to Architect. Refer to Section 03 33 00.
- B. Provide keyways at least 1-1/2 inches deep in construction joints in walls and slabs and between walls and footings. Accepted bulkheads designed for this purpose may be used for slabs.
- C. Place construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints except as indicated otherwise. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements.
- D. Use bonding agent on existing concrete surfaces that will be joined with fresh concrete.
- E. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct isolation joints in slabs-on-ground at points of contact between slabs-on-grade and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Use 15 lb. building paper for isolation joints.
- F. Contraction (Control) Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct contraction joints in slabs-on-ground to form panels of patterns as shown. Use saw cuts 1/4 inch wide by one-fourth of slab depth or inserts 1/4 inch wide by one-fourth of slab depth, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Form contraction joints by inserting premolded plastic, hardboard, or fiberboard strip into fresh concrete until top surface of strip is flush with slab surface. Tool slab edges round on each side of insert. After concrete has cured, remove inserts and clean groove of loose debris.

2. Contraction joints may be formed by saw cuts as soon as possible after slab finishing as may be safely done without dislodging aggregate.
3. If joint pattern is not shown, provide joints not exceeding 10 feet in either direction and located to conform to bay spacing wherever possible (at column centerlines, half bays, third bays).
4. Joint sealants material is specified in Division 07 Sections of these specifications.

### **3.5 INSTALLING EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. General: Set and build into formwork anchorage devices and other embedded items required for other work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, diagrams, instructions, and directions provided by suppliers of items to be attached thereto.
- B. Forms for Slabs: Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and contours in finished surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips using strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

### **3.6 PREPARATION OF FORM SURFACES**

- A. General: Coat contact surfaces of forms with an approved, nonresidual, low-VOC, form-coating compound before placing reinforcement.
- B. Do not allow excess form-coating material to accumulate in forms or come into contact with in-place concrete surfaces against which fresh concrete will be placed. Apply according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Coat steel forms with a nonstaining, rust-preventative material. Rust-stained steel formwork is not acceptable.

### **3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work cooperate with such trades in setting such work.
- B. General: Comply with ACI 304, "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete," and as herein specified.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened sufficiently to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation at its final location.
- D. Placing Concrete in Forms: Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers no deeper than 24 inches and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Where placement consists of several layers, place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic to avoid cold joints.
  1. Consolidate placed concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures for consolidation of concrete complying with ACI 309.
  2. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations no farther than the visible effectiveness of the machine. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and

at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to set. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing segregation of mix.

- E. Placing Concrete Slabs: Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until the placement of a panel or section is completed.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement, other embedded items and into corners.
  - 2. Bring slab surfaces to correct level with a straightedge and strike off. Use bull floats or darbies to smooth surface free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations.
  - 3. Maintain reinforcing in proper position during concrete placement.
- F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with provisions of ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 55 deg F and not more than 75 deg F at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators.
- G. Hot-Weather Placement: When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACI 305 and as herein specified. Hot weather is defined as air temperature exceeding 90 deg F (32 deg C), or any combination of temperature, humidity and wind velocity which causes a rate of evaporation in excess of 0.2 pounds per square foot per hour as determined by ACI C 305R figure 2.1.5.
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement to below 90 deg F (32 deg C). Mixing water may be chilled, or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Use of liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.
  - 3. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel, and subgrade just before concrete is placed.
  - 4. Use water-reducing retarding admixture (type D) when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placing conditions.

### **3.8 FINISH OF FORMED SURFACES**

- A. Rough Form Finish: Formed concrete surfaces not exposed-to-view in the finish work or by other construction, unless otherwise indicated. This is the concrete surface having texture imparted by form facing material used, with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched and fins and other projections exceeding 1/4" in height rubbed down or chipped off.
- B. Smooth Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces exposed-to-view, or that are to be covered with a coating material applied directly to concrete, or a covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, veneer plaster, painting, or other

similar system. This is as-cast concrete surface obtained with selected form facing material, arranged orderly and symmetrically with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch defective areas with fins or other projections completely removed and smoothed.

1. Smooth Rubbed Finish: Provide smooth rubbed finish to concrete surfaces, which have received smooth form finish treatment, not later than one day after form removal.
  - a. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or other abrasive until a uniform color and texture is produced. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces occurring adjacent to formed surfaces, strike-off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.9 MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES**

- A. General: Comply with recommendations in ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: Apply scratch finish to monolithic slab surfaces that are to receive concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material, and as otherwise indicated.
  1. After placing slabs, plane surface to tolerances for floor flatness (F ) of 15 and floor levelness (F ) of 13. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required. After leveling, roughen surface before final set, with stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes.
- C. Float Finish: Apply float finish to monolithic slab surfaces to receive trowel finish and other finishes as hereinafter specified, and slab surfaces which are to be covered with membrane or elastic waterproofing, membrane or elastic roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo, and as otherwise indicated.
  1. After screeding, consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating when surface water has disappeared or when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power-driven floats, or both, Consolidate surface with power-driven floats, or by hand-floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Check and level surface plane to tolerances of F 18 - F 15. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surfaces to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- D. Trowel Finish: Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed-to-view, and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint, or other thin film finish coating system.
  1. After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a power-driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand-troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance, and with surface leveled to tolerances of F 20 - F 17. Grind smooth surface defects which would telegraph through applied floor covering system.
- E. Trowel and Fine Broom Finish: Where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed with thin-set mortar, apply trowel finish as specified, then immediately follow with slightly scarifying surface by fine brooming.

- F. Non-Slip Broom Finish: Apply non-slip broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen concrete surface by brooming with fiber bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### **3.10 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS**

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures for passage of work by other trades, unless otherwise shown or directed, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete as specified to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling shown or required to complete Work.

### **3.11 CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  - 1. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Weather permitting, keep continuously moist for not less than 7 days.
  - 2. Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least 7 days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.
- B. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by curing and sealing compound, by moist curing, by moisture-retaining cover curing, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified.
  - 1. Provide moisture curing by following methods.
    - a. Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and keeping continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4" lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Provide moisture-cover curing as follows:
    - a. Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3" and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - 3. Provide curing and sealing compound to exposed interior slabs and to exterior slabs, walks, and curbs, as follows:
    - a. Apply specified curing and sealing compound to concrete slabs as soon as final finishing operations are complete (within 2 hours). Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power-spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within 3 hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - b. Do not use membrane curing compounds on surfaces which are to be covered with coating material applied directly to concrete, liquid floor hardener, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring (such as ceramic or quarry tile, glue-down carpet), painting, and other coatings and finish materials, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
  - 4. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including undersides of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in

place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

5. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces by application of appropriate curing method.
6. Final cure concrete surfaces to receive liquid floor hardener or finish flooring by use of moisture-retaining cover, unless otherwise directed.
7. Sealer and Dustproofers: Apply a second coat of specified curing and sealing compound only to surfaces given a first coat.

### **3.12 REMOVAL OF FORMS**

- A. General: Formwork not supporting weight of concrete, such as sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the work, may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, provided concrete is sufficiently hard to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.
- B. Formwork supporting weight of concrete, such as beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements, may not be removed in less than 14 days or until concrete has attained at least 75 percent of design minimum compressive strength at 28 days. Determine potential compressive strength of in-place concrete by testing field-cured specimens representative of concrete location or members, at Contractor's expense.
- C. Form-facing material may be removed 4 days after placement only if shores and other vertical supports have been arranged to permit removal of form-facing material without loosening or disturbing shores and supports. Apply curing to formed surfaces upon removal of forms and continue curing.

### **3.13 REUSE OF FORMS**

- A. Re-Used of Forms:
  1. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be re-used in work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form coating compound as specified for new formwork.
  2. When forms are extended for successive concrete placement, thoroughly clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten forms to close joints. Align and secure joint to avoid offsets. Do not use "patched" forms for exposed concrete surfaces, except as acceptable to Architect.

### **3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS**

- A. Patching Defective Areas: Repair and patch defective areas with repair mortar immediately after removing forms, when acceptable to Architect. Refer to Section 03331 for specific requirements.
- B. Perform structural repairs with prior approval of Architect for method and procedure, using specified epoxy adhesive and mortar.

### **3.15 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING DURING CONSTRUCTION**

- A. General: The Owner will employ a testing agency to perform tests and to submit test reports.
- B. Sampling and testing for quality control during concrete placement may include the following,

as directed by Architect.

1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
    - a. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of discharge for every third load. Also verify initial slump when HRWR (superplasticizer) is used.
    - b. Air Content: ASTM C 173, volumetric method for lightweight or normal weight concrete; ASTM C 231, pressure method for normal weight concrete; one for each set of compressive strength test specimens.
    - c. Concrete Temperature: Test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and below, when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and each time a set of compression test specimens is made.
    - d. Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C 31; one set of 4 standard cylinders (plus additional cylinders as required by contractor for post-tensioned concrete) for each compressive-strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory-cured test specimens except when field-cured test specimens are required.
    - e. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each 50 cubic yards, or fraction thereof, of each concrete class placed in any one day, or for each 5000 sq. ft. of surface area placed; one specimens tested at 7 days, two specimens tested at 28 days, and one specimen retained in reserve for later testing if required.
    - f. Slump, air and temperature of concrete used for suspended slabs at parking garage, including exhibition suspended floor slab, shall be tested at point of discharge for every load.
    - g. All steel elements shall be fabricated on premises of a fabricator registered and approved by the building officials per section 1701.7 of the U.B.C.
  2. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five strength tests for a given class of concrete, conduct testing from at least 5 randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than 5 are used.
  3. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing the in-place concrete.
- C. Test results will be reported in writing to Architect and Contractor within 24 hours after tests. Reports of compressive strength tests shall contain the Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing service, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in structure, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7-day tests and 28-day tests.
- D. Additional Tests: The testing agency will make additional tests of in-place concrete when test results indicate specified concrete strengths and other characteristics have not been attained in the structure, as directed by Architect. Testing agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed. Contractor shall pay for such tests when unacceptable concrete is verified.

**END OF SECTION 03 30 00**





## **DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

Section 04 21 13

Brick Masonry Assemblies



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
  - 1. Architectural face brick.
  - 2. Mortar and grout.
  - 3. Reinforcing steel.
  - 4. Masonry joint reinforcement.
  - 5. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Firestopping" for firestopping at tops of masonry walls and at openings in masonry walls.
- C. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section include the following:
  - 1. Steel lintels and shelf angles for unit masonry, furnished under Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."
  - 2. Manufactured reglets in masonry joints for metal flashing, furnished under Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Hollow-metal frames in unit masonry openings, furnished under Division 08 Section "Steel Doors and Frames."

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops the following net-area compressive strengths (f'm) at 28 days. Determine compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.
  - 1. For Brick Unit Masonry: Not less than f'm = 8000 psi (55.2 MPa).

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each different masonry unit, accessory, and other manufactured product specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:
  - 1. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."

- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results of the following for compliance with requirements indicated:
  - 1. Each type of masonry unit required.
    - a. Include test results, measurements, and calculations establishing net-area compressive strength of masonry units.
  - 2. Mortar complying with property requirements of ASTM C 270.
  - 3. Grout mixes complying with compressive strength requirements of ASTM C 476. Include description of type and proportions of grout ingredients.
- D. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following items complies with requirements:
  - 1. Each type of masonry unit required.
    - a. Include test data, measurements, and calculations establishing net-area compressive strength of masonry units.
  - 2. Each cement product required for mortar and grout, including name of manufacturer, brand, type, and weight slips at time of delivery.
  - 3. Each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type. Include statement of net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  - 4. Each material and grade indicated for reinforcing bars.
  - 5. Each type and size of joint reinforcement.
  - 6. Each type and size of anchor, tie, and metal accessory.
- E. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1093 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Payment for these services will be made by Owner. Retesting of materials failing to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
  - 1. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each concrete masonry unit indicated, per ASTM C 140.
  - 2. Mortar Test: For mortar properties per ASTM C 270.
  - 3. Grout Test: For compressive strength per ASTM C 1019.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by another means, as

acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings."

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## **1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
  - 2. Protection shall remain in place until final weatherproof covering has been installed.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in Section 2104.3 of the International Building Code.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect unit masonry work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and grout. Provide artificial

shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required.

1. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F (38 deg C), or 90 deg F (32 deg C) with a wind velocity greater than 8 mph (13 km/h), do not spread mortar beds more than 48 inches (1200 mm) ahead of masonry. Set masonry units within one minute of spreading mortar.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL**

- A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

### **2.2 ARCHITECTURAL FACE BRICK**

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows for each form of brick required:
  1. Provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished for ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces.
- B. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
  1. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
  2. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- C. Hollow Brick: ASTM C 652, Grade SW, Class H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area), Type HBX, and as follows:
  1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 8000 psi (55.2 MPa).
  2. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  3. Surface Coloring: Brick with surface coloring, other than flashed or sand-finished brick, shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from 10 feet (3 m).
  4. Size: Manufactured to the following actual dimensions:
    - a. Modular: 3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm) wide by 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) high by 7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm) long.
  5. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors and textures to match existing masonry.

### **2.3 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144; except for joints less than 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
- D. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- E. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- F. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for structural-clay tile facing units (and approved for such use by manufacturer of the units); in color indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's colors.
- G. Water: Potable.

## **2.4 REINFORCING STEEL**

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M; ASTM A 616/A 616M, including Supplement 1; or ASTM A 617/A 617M, Grade 60 (Grade 400).

## **2.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: ASTM A 951 and as follows:
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire for both interior and exterior walls.
  - 2. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) diameter.
  - 3. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) diameter.
  - 4. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units where indicated.
- B. For single-wythe masonry, provide either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods and cross rods spaced not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.

## **2.6 ADJUSTABLE MASONRY-VENEER ANCHORS**

- A. General: Provide two-piece assemblies that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to metal studs, and as follows:
  - 1. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
- B. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) wide by 3 inches (75 mm) high; with projecting tabs having slotted holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section.
    - a. Plate 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 6 inches (150 mm) long with strap 5/8 inch (16 mm) wide by 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) long; slot clearance formed between face of plate and back of strap shall not exceed diameter of wire tie



- by more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.0677-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
- C. Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 (4.8-mm) diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange by not less than 3 exposed threads, and with the following corrosion protective coating:
1. Organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.

## **2.7 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS**

- A. Anchor Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153, Class C; of diameter and length indicated and in the following configurations:
1. Nonheaded bolts, bent in manner indicated.
- B. Postinstalled Anchors: Anchors as described below, with capability to sustain, without failure, load imposed within factors of safety indicated, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
1. Type: Expansion anchors.
  2. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (5 microns) for Class SC 1 service condition (mild).
  3. For Postinstalled Anchors in Concrete: Capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to four times the loads imposed.
  4. For Postinstalled Anchors in Grouted Masonry Units: Capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the loads imposed.

## **2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS**

- A. Metal Flashing: Fabricate from the following metal complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and below:
1. Copper: 10-oz./sq. ft. (3-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0135 inch (0.34 mm) thick for fully concealed flashing; 16-oz./sq. ft. (5-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0216 inch (0.55 mm) thick elsewhere.
  2. Fabricate metal drip edges from sheet metal indicated above. Extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with a hemmed outer edge bent down 30 degrees.
- B. Contractor's Option for Concealed Flashing: For flashing partly exposed to the exterior, use metal flashing specified above. For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Copper-Laminated Flashing: Manufacturer's standard laminated flashing consisting of 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) sheet copper bonded with asphalt between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
- C. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by the flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

## **2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES**

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Material as indicated below, designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
  - 1. Styrene-Butadiene-Rubber Compound: ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (9-mm) OD by 4 inches (100 mm) long.
- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Not less than 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands and shaped to avoid being clogged by mortar droppings.

## **2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS**

- A. Job-Mixed Detergent Solution: Solution of 1/2-cup (0.14-L) dry measure tetrasodium polyphosphate and 1/2-cup (0.14-L) dry measure laundry detergent dissolved in 1 gal. (4 L) of water.

## **2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES**

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, type as indicated.
- C. Pigmented Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Limit pigments to the following percentages of cement content by weight:
  - 1. For mineral-oxide pigments and portland cement-lime mortar, not more than 10 percent.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476, type as indicated.
- E. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: Mix epoxy pointing mortar to comply with mortar manufacturer's directions.

## **2.12 INFILTRATION BARRIER**

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air retarder; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek CommercialWrap.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 200 g through 1 sq. m of surface in 24 hours per ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  - 3. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.

- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

## **2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform source quality-control testing indicated below:
  - 1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner.
  - 2. Retesting of materials failing to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Concrete Masonry Unit Tests: For each type of concrete masonry unit indicated, units will be tested according to ASTM C 140.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
  - 2. Verify that substrates are within tolerances specified.
  - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  - 4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction to verify actual locations of piping connections.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Thickness: Build single-wythe walls to the actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this Section and in other Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to the opening.
- D. Cut masonry units with motor-driven saws to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units as required to provide a continuous pattern and to fit adjoining construction. Where possible, use full-size units without cutting. Allow units cut with water-cooled saws to dry before placing, unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
  - 1. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq.

in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at the time of laying.

- G. Cover sheathing with infiltration barrier as follows:
  - 1. Install in accordance with Manufacturer=s instructions over exterior sheathing. Seal joints and penetrations through air infiltration barrier with specified tape prior to installation of finish material. Air infiltration barrier shall be air tight and free from holes, tears, and punctures. All window and door penetrations shall be taped.
  - 2. Apply infiltration barrier to cover upstanding flashing with 4-inch overlap.

### **3.3 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and the following:
- B. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), nor 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- C. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), nor 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- D. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as exposed lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), nor 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- E. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm). Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### **3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS**

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Lay exposed masonry in the following bond pattern; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
  - 1. One-half running bond with vertical joint in each course centered on units in courses above and below.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2 inches (50 mm). Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: In each course, rack back one-half-unit length for one-half running bond or one-third-unit length for one-third running bond; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet clay masonry units lightly if required, and remove loose masonry units and mortar before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified under this and other

Sections of the Specifications. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

- F. Fill space between hollow-metal frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  - 2. At fire-rated partitions, install firestopping in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 7 Section "Firestopping."

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow masonry units as follows:
  - 1. With full mortar coverage on horizontal and vertical face shells.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in starting course on footings and in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters, and where adjacent to cells or cavities to be filled with grout.
  - 3. For starting course on footings where cells are not grouted, spread out full mortar bed, including areas under cells.
- B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than the joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Tool exposed joints as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Smooth/standard face masonry, Kerfed/honed face masonry, and Split-Face masonry: Slightly concave using a jointer larger than joint thickness.

### 3.6 CAVITIES

- A. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction.
  - 1. Use wood strips temporarily placed in cavity to collect mortar droppings. As work progresses, remove strips, clean off mortar droppings, and replace in cavity.

### 3.7 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Provide continuous masonry joint reinforcement as indicated. Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings.
    - a. Reinforcement above is in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Cut or interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Provide continuity at corners and wall intersections by using prefabricated "L" and "T" sections. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

### **3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY VENEERS**

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Fasten anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated.
  - 2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches (50 mm) of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
  - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches (458 mm) o.c. vertically and 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. horizontally, with not less than 1 anchor for each 2 sq. ft. (0.2 sq. m) of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches (305 mm) of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches (203 mm), around the perimeter.

### **3.9 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. General: Install control and expansion joints in unit masonry where indicated. Build-in related items as masonry progresses. Do not form a continuous span through movement joints unless provisions are made to prevent in-plane restraint of wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:
  - 1. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
- C. Build in horizontal, pressure-relieving joints where indicated; construct joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry veneer and attached to structure behind masonry veneer.

### **3.10 LINTELS**

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.11 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND VENTS**

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- B. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Unless otherwise indicated, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
- C. Install flashing as follows:
  - 1. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing from exterior face of veneer, through

- veneer, up face of sheathing at least 8 inches (200 mm), and behind air-infiltration barrier or building paper.
  - 2. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 4 inches (100 mm) at ends and turn flashing up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form a pan.
  - 3. Extend sheet metal flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) beyond face of masonry at exterior and turn flashing down to form a drip.
- D. Install weep holes in the head joints in exterior wythes of the first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
- 1. Use round plastic tubing to form weep holes.
  - 2. Space weep holes formed from plastic tubing 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c.

### **3.12 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION**

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
- 1. Construct formwork to conform to shape, line, and dimensions shown. Make it sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained sufficient strength to resist grout pressure.
- 1. Comply with requirements of ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.

### **3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field quality-control testing indicated below.
- 1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner.
  - 2. Retesting of materials failing to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Testing Frequency: Tests and Evaluations listed in this Article will be performed during construction for each 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.
- C. Mortar properties will be tested per ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content, water-repellent admixture and compressive strength.
- D. Grout will be sampled and tested for compressive strength per ASTM C 1019.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Tests: For each type of concrete masonry unit indicated, units will be tested according to ASTM C 140.

### **3.14 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing the surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean brick by the bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes No. 20, using job-mixed detergent solution.

### **3.15 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL**

- A. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess masonry waste and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION 04 21 13**





## **DIVISION 05 - METALS**

Section 05 50 00

Metal Fabrications



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
  - 2. Shelf angles.
  - 3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 5. Miscellaneous metal trim.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for metal framing anchors and other rough hardware.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Paint products.
  - 2. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and erection of each metal fabrication indicated. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
  - 1. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
- D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.
- E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing metal fabrications similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
4. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

## **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Where metal fabrications are indicated to fit walls and other construction, verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Allow for trimming and fitting.

## **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 METALS, GENERAL**

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

### **2.2 FERROUS METALS**

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.
- D. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal channels with flange edges returned toward web and with 9/16-inch- (14.3-mm-) wide slotted holes in webs at 2 inches (51 mm) o.c.
  1. Width of Channels: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
  2. Depth of Channels: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
  3. Metal and Thickness: Uncoated steel complying with ASTM A 570, Grade 33; 0.0677-inch (1.7-mm) minimum thickness.
  4. Finish: Rust-inhibitive, baked-on, acrylic enamel.
- E. Turnbuckles/Clevises: C-1035, SA-182-F-11, Stainless steel, stub ends - hot rolled steel, galvanized finish. Provide clevis pins meeting load requirements of the rod.
  1. Equal to: Cleveland City Forge.

- F. Wire Rope: 7-by-19, or other configuration as detailed, wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
- G. Wire-Rope Fittings: Connectors of types indicated, fabricated from stainless steel, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.
- H. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47, Grade 32510 (ASTM A 47M, Grade 22010).
- I. Gray-Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30 (ASTM A 48M, Class 200), unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.
- J. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type indicated below, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials capable of sustaining, without failure, the load imposed within a safety factor of 4, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M) malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- K. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

## 2.3 ALUMINUM

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy 6063-T6.
- B. Provide aluminum architectural shapes and extrusions, ASTM alloy 6063-T52, for glazing channels and pockets. Equal to J.G. Braun Company, 800-323-4072.

## 2.4 PAINT

- A. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664; selected for good resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, compatibility with finish paint systems indicated, and capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.
  - 1. Refer to Section 09900 - Painting for specific primer required on identified steel items.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for reglazing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-Paint 12, except containing no asbestos fibers, or cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide Type 304 or 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
- D. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- F. Wood Screws: Flat head, carbon steel, ASME B18.6.1.
- G. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
- H. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, carbon steel, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
- I. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
- J. Toggle Bolts: FS FF-B-588, tumble-wing type, class and style as needed.

## **2.6 GROUT**

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

## **2.7 CONCRETE FILL**

- A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 4000 psi (26.67 MPa), unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.8 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs.
- C. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm), unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- E. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water, or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Allow for thermal movement resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening up of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- I. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges.
- J. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed traffic surfaces.
- K. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

## **2.9 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES**

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates after fabrication.

## **2.10 SHELF ANGLES**

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete. Align expansion joints in angles with indicated control and expansion joints in cavity-wall exterior wythe.
- C. Galvanize shelf angles to be installed in exterior walls.



- D. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## **2.11 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports that are not a part of structural-steel framework as necessary to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 8 inches (200 mm) long at 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Furnish inserts if units must be installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports in the following locations:
  - 1. Exterior locations and where miscellaneous items will be concealed from view.

## **2.12 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints, and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work. Provide anchors, welded to trim, for embedding in concrete or masonry construction, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from each end, 6 inches (150 mm) from corners, and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous steel trim in the following locations:
  - 1. Exterior.

## **2.13 FINISHES, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

## **2.14 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES**

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:
  - 1. ASTM A 123, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
  - 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:

1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for shop painting.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## **2.15 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal fabrications to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- E. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

### **3.2 SETTING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES**

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
  - 1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### **3.3 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings, if any.
- B. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
  - 1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated at girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified above for setting and grouting bearing and leveling plates.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION 05 50 00**

## **DIVISION 06 - WOOD AND PLASTICS**

Section 06 10 00	Rough Carpentry
Section 06 10 63	Exterior Rough Carpentry
Section 06 16 00	Sheathing
Section 06 40 23	Interior Architectural Woodwork



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Framing with engineered wood products.
  - 3. Wood blocking and nailers.
  - 4. Plywood backing panels.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing."

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.
- C. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 2. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 3. WWPAA: Western Wood Products Association.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 3. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

- B. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  - 2. Engineered wood products.
  - 3. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 4. Powder-actuated fasteners.
  - 5. Expansion anchors.
  - 6. Metal framing anchors.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations for Engineered Wood Products: Obtain each type of engineered wood product through one source from a single manufacturer.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - 1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## **2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER**

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPAC31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Wood nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood sills, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
  - 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
  - 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## **2.3 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING**

- A. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent.
- B. Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 grade of any species.
- C. Exterior and Load-Bearing Walls: Construction or No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  - 2. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPAC.
  - 3. Douglas fir-south; WWPAC.
  - 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPAC.
  - 5. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
- D. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Construction or No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  - 2. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPAC.
  - 3. Douglas fir-south; WWPAC.
  - 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPAC.
  - 5. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.



## 2.4 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Boise Cascade Corporation.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific.
    - c. Louisiana-Pacific Corporation.
    - d. Weyerhaeuser Company.
  2. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2600 psi (17.9 MPa) for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
  3. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa).
- B. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Provide units complying with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D 5055.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Boise Cascade Corporation.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific.
    - c. Louisiana-Pacific Corporation.
    - d. Weyerhaeuser Company.
  2. Web Material: Either oriented strand board or plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1.
  3. Structural Properties: Provide units with depths and design values not less than those indicated.
  4. Provide units complying with APA PRI-400, factory marked with APA trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA standard.
- C. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
1. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
  2. Material: All-veneer product.
  3. Thickness: 1-1/8 inches (28 mm).
  4. Provide performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401, rim board grade, factory marked with APA trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA standard.

## **2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER**

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content of any species.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## **2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS**

- A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch (13-mm) nominal thickness.

## **2.7 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as

determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.

1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

## **2.8 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.
  2. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  3. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
- B. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.

## **2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal- (38-mm actual-) thickness.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- I. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
- K. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preserved-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### **3.3 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs. Fasten plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches (2438 mm) high, using members of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

**END OF SECTION 06 10 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Elevated decks including wood decking, stairs, railings and support framing.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Boards: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) in thickness and 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater width.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.
- C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) or greater in least dimension.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 2. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - 3. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 4. WWPAA: Western Wood Products Association.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products and metal framing anchors.
  - 1. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
  - 2. For metal framing anchors, include installation instructions.
- B. Material Certificates:
  - 1. For lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  - 2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include

statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Handle and store plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 LUMBER, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
  - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER**

- A. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness.
- B. Exposed Lumber: Provide material hand selected for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
- C. Deck and Stair Framing: No. 1 grade and any of the following species:
  - 1. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWP.
  - 2. Douglas fir-south; WWP.
  - 3. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWP.
  - 4. Douglas fir-larch (North); NLGA.
- D. Dimension Lumber Posts: No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
  - 2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.

- E. Dimension Lumber Decking and Stair Treads: No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- F. Dimension Lumber Railing Members: Construction or No. 2 grade and any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 2. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

## **2.3 BOARDS**

- A. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent.
- B. Provide boards hand selected for freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
- C. Board Decking and Stair Treads: 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) thick radius-edged decking of any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-south, Patio 1, WWPA.
  - 2. Hem-fir, Patio 1, WWPA.
- D. Railing Boards: Any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Douglas fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 2. Hem-fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

## **2.4 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT**

- A. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWPA C2.
- B. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium.
- C. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
- D. After treatment, redry boards and dimension lumber to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- E. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  - 1. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed.



- F. Application: Treat all exterior rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.5 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into wood substrate.
1. Use fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless-steel fasteners.
  3. For wood decking, use stainless-steel fasteners where fasteners are exposed to view.
- B. Nails: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- F. Carbon-Steel Bolts: ASTM A 307 (ASTM F 568M) with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.
- G. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless-steel, chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
1. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

## **2.6 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  2. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  3. USP Structural Connectors.
- B. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated on Drawings. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z270) coating designation.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 316.

- E. Joist Hangers: U-shaped, with 2-inch- (50-mm-) long seat and 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
  - 1. Thickness: 0.062 inch (1.6 mm).
- F. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
  - 1. Strap Width: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: 0.062 inch (1.6 mm).
- G. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post 1 inch (25 mm) above base and with 2-inch- (50-mm-) minimum side cover, socket 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) thick, and standoff and adjustment plates 0.108 inch (2.8 mm) thick.
- H. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
  - 1. Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: 0.062 inch (1.6 mm).
  - 3. Length: As indicated.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Prime lumber to be painted, including both faces and edges. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting."

#### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Set exterior rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit exterior rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install wood decking and stair treads with crown up (bark side down).

- D. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- H. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron (SBX) for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- I. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
- J. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- K. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.

### **3.4 ELEVATED DECK JOIST FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, or 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry. Attach floor joists where framed into wood supporting members by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers. Do not notch joists.
- B. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 48 inches (1200 mm).
- C. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams or girders not less than 4 inches (102 mm) or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness by depth of joist over supports.
- D. Provide solid blocking of 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness by depth of joist at intervals of 96 inches (2438 mm) o.c., between joists.

### **3.5 STAIR INSTALLATION**

- A. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Stringer Size: 2 by 12 inches nominal (38 by 286 mm actual), minimum.
  - 2. Notching: Notch stringers to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) of effective depth.
  - 3. Stringer Spacing: At least three stringers for each 36-inch (914-mm) clear width of stair.
- B. Provide stair framing with no more than 3/16-inch (4.7-mm) variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
- C. Treads and Risers: Secure by gluing and screwing to carriages. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.

### **3.6 RAILING INSTALLATION**

- A. Balusters: Fit to railings, glue, and screw in place. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
- B. Newel Posts: Secure to stringers and risers with through bolts.
- C. Railings: Secure wall rails with metal brackets. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts and glue.

**END OF SECTION 06 10 63**



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wall sheathing.
  - 2. Building wrap.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 3. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
  - 4. For building wrap, include data on air-/moisture-infiltration protection based on testing according to referenced standards.
- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - 1. Preservative-treated plywood.
  - 2. Building wrap.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

### **2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD**

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC9.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

### **2.3 WALL SHEATHING**

- A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm).

### **2.4 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

## **2.5 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING PAPER**

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air retarder; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek CommercialWrap.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 152 g through 1 sq. m of surface in 24 hours per ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  - 3. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

## **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch (0.8 mm).
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.
    - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.
    - c. Protecto Wrap Company.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
- D. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.



- E. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### **3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30S, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - 1. Wall Sheathing:
    - a. Nail to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch (3 mm) apart at edges and ends.

### **3.3 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING-PAPER INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Cover sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper as follows:
  - 1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch (13 mm) on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
  - 2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch (100-mm) overlap, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### **3.4 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
  - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches (100 mm), except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  - 3. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
  - 4. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
  - 5. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

**END OF SECTION 06 16 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wood cabinets (casework).
  - 2. Interior frames and jambs.
  - 3. Plastic-laminate countertops.
  - 4. Shop finishing of woodwork.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 6 Section "Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction prior to woodwork installation.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for each type of product and process specified and incorporated into items of architectural woodwork during fabrication, finishing, and installation.
- C. Shop drawings showing location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
  - 1. Show details full size.
  - 2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcing specified in other Sections.
- D. Samples for verification of the following:
  - 1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, 50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm), for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
  - 2. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished woodwork.
  - 3. Thermoset decorative-overlay surfaced panel products, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with separate samples of unfaced panel product used for core.
  - 4. Plastic-laminate-clad panel products, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.

5. Exposed cabinet hardware, one unit for each type and finish.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing architectural woodwork similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- B. Single-Source Responsibility for Fabrication and Installation: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for fabricating, finishing, and installing woodwork specified in this Section.
- C. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  1. This section includes custom milled plastic laminate cabinets and casework, shelving, brackets, supports, hardware, and other accessory items as detailed or as scheduled.
- D. Mockups: Before fabricating and installing interior architectural woodwork, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  1. Build mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be installed.
  3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting interior architectural woodwork fabrication.
  5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
  7. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect woodwork during transit, delivery, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soilage, and deterioration.
- B. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage, soil, or deteriorate woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas whose environmental conditions meet requirements specified in "Project Conditions."

## **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed,

wet-work is completed, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

- B. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to be fitted to other construction, check actual dimensions of other construction by accurate field measurements before fabrication, and show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Verify locations of concealed framing, blocking, reinforcements, and furring that support woodwork by accurate field measurements before being enclosed. Record measurements on final shop drawings.
  - 2. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 WOODWORK FABRICATORS**

- A. Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide interior architectural woodwork by one of the following:
  - 1. Fabricators bidding the work of this Section 06402 - Interior Architectural Woodwork shall submit for approval prior to bidding.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of the AWI quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade indicated and, where the following products are part of interior woodwork, with requirements of the referenced product standards that apply to product characteristics indicated:
  - 1. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
  - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
  - 3. Softwood Plywood: PS 1.
  - 4. Hardwood Plywood and Face Veneers: HPVA HP-1.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 made with phenol-formaldehyde resins.
- C. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: Species, plain sawn or sliced, as selected by Architect.
- D. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated, or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  - 1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-pressure decorative laminates by one of the following:
    - a. Formica Corporation.
    - b. Laminart.

- c. Nevamar Corp.
  - d. Ralph Wilson Plastics Co.
  - e. Pionite.
- E. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement.
- F. Thermoset Decorative Overlay: Decorative surface of thermally fused polyester or melamine-impregnated web, bonded to specified substrate and complying with ALA 1992.
  - 1. Substrate: Medium-density particleboard.

## 2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
  - 1. Hinges: 2-3/4" five-knuckle hospital-tip 270 degree swing hinge, satin chrome finish. Doors up to 48" in height shall have 2 hinges per door. Doors over 48" in height shall have 3 hinges per door. Hinges which require cutting the edge-banding off the door will not be allowed.
  - 2. Drawer Slides: Drawer slides for standard drawers shall be Blum BS230E or equal with 100 pound rating and baked enamel corrosion resistant finish. File drawers and paper drawer slides shall be KV 1429 or equal full extension with 150 pound rating.
  - 3. Pulls:
    - a. Avante Hardware, semi-circular wire steel pull with satin nickel finish, 128 mm c-to-c, model no. 65128SN.
  - 4. Catches: Friction roller catch.
  - 5. Magnetic Pressure Catches: HAFELE, 245.61.322, black plastic. Provide matching strike as required.
  - 6. Adjustable Shelf Supports:
    - a. Adjustable shelves shall be supported on adjustable shelf supports inserted in shelf holes drilled into the case ends or partitions and adjustable on 32mm (1 1/2") centers. Supports to be KV 346 clips.
  - 7. Locks: Locks for drawers and 3/4" hinged doors shall be National Lock #8053 disc tumbler.
  - 8. Wall Shelf Standards: Heavy-duty, double-tracked, double-formed, 2" based standards. Epoxy powder finish. Equal to Newtech Hardware.
  - 9. Wall Shelf Brackets: 1" wide x 5/8" deep double slotted brackets adjustable on 1-3/4" centers. Equal to Newtech Hardware.
  - 10. File drawer slides: KV 1429 full extension.
  - 11. Cable Grommets: HAFELE, 429.94.310, zinc die-cast, black finish.
  - 12. Round Table Catch: HAFELE, 642.39.827, brass, 57 x 16.
  - 13. Fully Articulated Keyboard Arm: HAFELE, 639.96.305, steel, black epoxy.
  - 14. Keyboard Tray: HAFELE, 639.96.396, 21" x 10-1/2", molded polymer, black.
  - 15. Screws: Reed and Prince square drive screws. Standard wood screws and sheet metal screws are not acceptable.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Screws: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each use. Comply with ASME B18.6.1 for applicable requirements.
  - 1. For metal framing supports, provide screws as recommended by metal-framing

manufacturer.

- C. Nails: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each use. Comply with FS FF-N-105 for applicable requirements.
- D. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed steel or lead expansion bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors.

## **2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Interior Woodwork Grade: Provide interior woodwork complying with the referenced quality standard and of the following grade:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to relative humidity conditions existing during time of fabrication and in installation areas.
- C. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
  - 1. Corners of cabinets and edges of solid-wood (lumber) members and rails: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- D. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, before shipment to Project site to maximum extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  - 1. Trial fit assemblies at the fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved shop drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- E. Shop-cut openings, to maximum extent possible, to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Smooth edges of cutouts and, where located in countertops and similar exposures, seal edges with a water-resistant coating.
- F. Install glass to comply with applicable requirements of Division 8 Section "Glazing" and of FGMA "Glazing Manual." For glass in wood frames, secure glass with removable stops.

## **2.6 WOOD CABINETS (CASEWORK) FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH**

- A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 400 requirements for wood cabinets.
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay.
- C. Wood Species for Exposed Surfaces: Species, clear, kiln-dried, plain sawn or sliced, finished lumber (S4S).

1. Grain Matching: Run and match grain vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
  2. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Book match.
  3. Vertical Matching of Veneer Leaves: End match.
  4. Veneer Matching Within Panel Face: Running match.
- D. Semiexposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:
1. Surfaces Other than Drawer Bodies: Match species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces.
  2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid hardwood lumber, same species indicated for exposed surfaces, shop finished.
  3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood, same species indicated for exposed surfaces, shop finished.
- E. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers except where located directly under tops.

## **2.7 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH**

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: Match species and cut indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. For frames or jambs wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

## **2.8 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH**

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species: Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine.

## **2.9 COUNTERTOPS**

- A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 400 requirements for countertops.
  1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Type of Top: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following:
  1. Grade: GP-50, 0.050-inch (1.270-mm) nominal thickness.
  2. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Match color, pattern, and finish indicated by reference to manufacturer's standard designations for these characteristics.
  3. Edge Treatment: Same as laminate cladding on horizontal surfaces.
  4. Core Material: Medium-density particleboard.

## **2.10 SHOP FINISHING OF INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK**

- A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 1500, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. General: The entire finish of interior architectural woodwork is specified in this Section, regardless of whether shop applied or applied after installation.
  - 1. Shop Finishing: The extent to which the final finish is applied to architectural woodwork at the fabrication shop is the Contractor's option, except shop apply at least the prime/base coat to the greatest extent possible before delivery.
- C. Preparations for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
  - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer compatible with finish coats to concealed surfaces of woodwork, including backs of trim, cabinets, paneling, and ornamental work and the underside of countertops. Apply 2 coats to back of paneling. Concealed surfaces of plastic laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate or thermoset decorative overlay.
- D. Washcoat for Stained Finish: Apply a vinyl washcoat to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
- E. Transparent Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, staining, and sheen, with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. AWI Finish System TR-6: Catalyzed polyurethane.
  - 3. Staining: Match Architect's sample.
  - 4. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply a vinyl wash coat to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
  - 5. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
  - 6. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining (if any), apply paste wood filler to open-grain woods and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
    - a. Apply vinyl wash coat sealer after staining and before filling.
  - 7. Sheen: Satin, 30-50 Gloss units.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas before installing.
- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including back priming and removal of packing.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Quality Standard: Install woodwork to comply with AWI Section 1700 for the same grade specified in Part 2 of this Section for type of woodwork involved.
- B. Install woodwork plumb, level, true, and straight with no distortions. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm) for plumb and level (including tops).
- C. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged



finish at cuts.

- D. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails for exposed nailing, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish where transparent finish is indicated.
- E. Cabinets: Install without distortion so that doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete the installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - 2. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
- F. Tops: Anchor securely to base units and other support systems as indicated. Calk space between backsplash and wall with specified sealant.
  - 1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - 2. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
- G. Paneling: Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips. Do not use face fastening, unless covered by trim or otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Install flush paneling with no more than 1/16 inch in 96-inch (1.5 mm in 2400-mm) vertical cup or bow and 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) horizontal variation from a true plane.
- H. Complete the finishing work specified in this Section to the extent not completed at shop or before installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats were applied in the shop.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork where possible to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to fabricator and Installer that ensures that woodwork is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 06 40 23**

## **DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

Section 07 21 00	Building Insulation
Section 07 46 00	Siding
Section 07 84 00	Through-Penetration Firestop Systems
Section 07 92 00	Joint Sealants



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Concealed building insulation.
  - 2. Radiant barriers.
  - 3. Safing insulation.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
  - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for insulation installed in and masonry cells.
  - 2. Division 09 Section indicated below for insulation installed as part of wall and partition assemblies:
    - a. "Gypsum Board Assemblies."

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data for each type of insulation product specified.
- C. Product test reports from and based on tests performed by a qualified independent testing agency evidencing compliance of insulation products with specified requirements including those for thermal resistance, fire-test-response characteristics, water-vapor transmission, water absorption, and other properties, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Single-Source Responsibility for Insulation Products: Obtain each type of building insulation from a single source with resources to provide products complying with requirements indicated without delaying the Work.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated on Drawings or specified elsewhere in this Section as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
  - 2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
  - 3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling,

and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering insulation products that may be incorporated in the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Knauf Fiber Glass GmbH.
    - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corporation.
    - d. Johns Manville Corporation.

### **2.2 INSULATING MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide insulating materials that comply with requirements and with referenced standards.
  - 1. Preformed Units: Sizes to fit applications indicated; selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths.
- B. Unfaced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Thermal insulation combining mineral fibers of type described below with thermosetting resins to comply with ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing).
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Type: Fibers manufactured from glass.
  - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively.
- C. Faced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame spread of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor-retarder membrane on one face; consisting of fibers manufactured from glass.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I; semi-rigid mineral fiber blanket without membrane, Class 25 flame-spread. Furnish in 2-3/4", 4" and 6" thicknesses. Provide minimum thickness as required to achieve a minimum 50 STC in all walls.

### **2.3 SAFING INSULATION AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. Slag-Wool-Fiber Board Safing Insulation: Semirigid boards designed for use as fire stop at openings between edge of slab and exterior wall panels, produced by combining slag-wool fibers with thermosetting resin binders to comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA and IB; nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m); passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
- B. Calking Compound: Material approved by manufacturer of safing insulation for sealing joint between foil backing of safing insulation and edge of concrete floor slab against penetration of smoke.

- C. Safing Clips: Galvanized steel safing clips approved by manufacturer of safing insulation for holding safing insulation in place.

## **2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft. (12 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
- B. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- C. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders:
    - a. DURA-SKRIM 6WW; Raven Industries, Inc.
    - b. Griffolyn T-65; Reef Industries, Inc., Griffolyn Div.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and to determine if other conditions affecting performance of insulation are satisfactory. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulations or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, unsoiled, and has not been exposed at any time to ice and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Apply single layer of insulation to produce thickness indicated, unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION**

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive

or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

- B. Seal joints between closed-cell (nonbreathing) insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm side of construction, unless otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces, except for firestopping.
  - 1. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
- D. Install mineral-fiber blankets in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use blanket widths and lengths that fill cavities formed by framing members. Where more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place blankets in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
- E. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).

### **3.5 INSTALLATION OF SAFING INSULATION**

- A. Install safing insulation to fill gap between edge of concrete floor slab and back of exterior spandrel panels on safing clips spaced as needed to support insulation, but not further apart than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Cut safing insulation wider than gap to be filled to ensure compression fit and seal joint between insulation and edge of slab with calking approved by safing insulation manufacturer for this purpose. Leave no voids in completed installation.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS**

- A. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than 2 wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- C. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with adhesives or vapor-retarder tape according to vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions. Seal butt joints and fastener penetrations with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
- D. Firmly attach vapor retarders to substrates with mechanical fasteners or adhesives as recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer.
- E. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.

- F. Repair any tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.

### **3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. General: Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

**END OF SECTION 07 21 00**





**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fiber-cement siding.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
  - 2. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for wall sheathing and weather-resistive barriers.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, texture, and pattern required.
  - 1. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Sample of siding.
  - 2. 12-inch- (300-mm-) long-by-actual-width Samples of trim and accessories.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fiber-cement siding.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of siding required, from the ICC.
- E. Maintenance Data: For each type of siding and related accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Labeling: Provide fiber-cement siding that is tested and labeled according to ASTM C 1186 by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type, color, texture, and pattern of siding, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.

- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight place.

## **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING**

- A. General: ASTM C 1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested according to ASTM E 136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.
    - b. James Hardie.
    - c. Nichiha Fiber Cement.
  - 2. Horizontal Pattern: Boards 8-1/4 to 8-1/2 inches (210 to 216 mm) wide in beaded-edge style.
    - a. Texture: Smooth.
  - 3. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

### **2.2 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
  - 1. Provide accessories made from same material as adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Colors for Decorative Accessories: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
- C. Flashing: Provide flashing complying with Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
- D. Fasteners:

1. For fastening to wood, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) into substrate.
2. For fastening fiber cement, use hot-dip galvanized fasteners.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of siding and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with siding manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
  1. Do not install damaged components.
- B. Install fiber-cement siding and related accessories.
  1. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
- C. Install joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

**END OF SECTION 07 46 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through the following fire-resistance-rated assemblies, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items:
  - 1. Floors.
  - 2. Roofs.
  - 3. Walls and partitions.
  - 4. Smoke barriers.
- B. The Contractor is responsible for providing code compliant firestop systems complying with all Local codes for all penetrations and aesthetic requirements of the Project where exposed to view.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for construction of openings in concrete slabs and walls.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Building Insulation" for safig insulation and accessories.
  - 3. Division 07 Section "Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials."
  - 4. Division 23 Sections specifying duct and piping penetrations.
  - 5. Division 26 Sections specifying cable and conduit penetrations.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: For the following constructions, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly penetrated.
  - 1. Fire-resistance-rated non-load-bearing walls, including partitions, with fire-protection-rated openings.
  - 2. Fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.
  - 3. Fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies.
- B. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, as determined per ASTM E 814, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide through-penetration firestop systems with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, as determined per ASTM E 814, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:
  - 1. Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
  - 2. Penetrations located outside fire-resistive shaft enclosures.

3. Penetrations located in construction containing fire-protection-rated openings.
  4. Penetrating items larger than 4-inch- (100-mm-) diameter nominal pipe or 16 sq. in. (100 sq. cm) in overall cross-sectional area.
- D. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that after curing do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
  2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches (100 mm) in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means.
  3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
- E. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread ratings of less than 25 and smoke-developed ratings of less than 450, as determined per ASTM E 84.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of through-penetration firestop system product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, show each kind of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and kind of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
- C. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of through-penetration firestop system products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating through-penetration firestop system complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed through-penetration firestop systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that

comply with the following requirements and those specified in "Performance Requirements" Article:

1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per ASTM E 814. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed by the following:
    - 1) UL in "Fire Resistance Directory."

- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings."

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer; date of manufacture; lot number; shelf life, if applicable; qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project; curing time; and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

## **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install through-penetration firestop systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate through-penetration firestop systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.
- C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of through-penetration firestop system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.
- D. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until Owner's inspecting agency and building inspector, if required



by authorities having jurisdiction, have examined each installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Firestop Systems Inc.
  2. Hilti Construction Chemicals, Inc.
  3. International Protective Coatings Corp.
  4. Isolatek International.
  5. 3M Fire Protection Products.
  6. Tremco.

### **2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to, the following items:
1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-/rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Fillers for sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.

### **2.3 FILL MATERIALS**

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.
- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

- D. Mortars: Prepackaged, dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- E. Pillows/Bags: Reusable, heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents and fire-retardant additives.
- F. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- G. Silicone Sealants: Moisture-curing, single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping, gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

## **2.4 MIXING**

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing through-penetration firestop systems to comply with written recommendations of firestop system manufacturer and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of through-penetration firestop systems.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with through-penetration firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent through-penetration firestop systems from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

### **3.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article and firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent inspecting agency to inspect through-penetration firestop systems and to prepare test reports.
  - 1. Inspecting agency will state in each report whether inspected through-penetration firestop systems comply with or deviate from requirements.
- B. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued.
- C. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.

### **3.5 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify through-penetration firestop systems with pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive, preprinted vinyl labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces of penetrated construction on both sides of each firestop system installation where labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestop systems. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words: "Warning--Through-Penetration Firestop System--Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Through-penetration firestop system designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### **3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce through-penetration firestop systems complying with specified requirements.

**END OF SECTION 07 84 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section:
1. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry and cast stone units.
    - c. Joints between metal panels.
    - d. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors and windows.
    - f. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
    - g. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Exterior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
    - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - d. Other joints as indicated.
  3. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
    - c. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of walls and partitions.
    - e. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
    - f. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - g. Other joints as indicated.
  4. Interior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
    - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
  2. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
  3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for sealing perimeter joints of gypsum board partitions to reduce sound transmission.
  4. Division 09 Section "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for sealing edge moldings at perimeters of acoustical ceilings.

### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.
- B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Preconstruction Field Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on preconstruction testing specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on comprehensive testing of product formulations performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
  - 2. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the

- Work.
4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
  5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- D. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
    - a. Each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
    - b. Each type of nonelastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
  3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
  4. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  5. Report whether sealant in joint connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
  6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups incorporating sealant joints, as follows, to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution:
1. Joints in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive elastomeric joint sealants, which are specified by reference to this Section.

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
  2. When joint substrates are wet.
  3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  4. Contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.



- B. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

### **2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### **2.3 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where elastomeric sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- C. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247 and qualify for the length of exposure indicated by reference to ASTM C 920 for Class 1 or 2. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- E. Single-Component Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; 895.
  - 2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
  - 3. Class: 50.

4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
  5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
    - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Aluminum coated with a high-performance coating.
  6. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Nonstaining to porous substrates per ASTM C 1248.
- F. Single-Component Acid-Curing Silicone Sealant:
1. Available Products:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 999-A.
    - b. GE Silicones; Construction
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 860.
    - d. Tremco; Proglaze.
  2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
  3. Class: 25.
  4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
  5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
    - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Aluminum coated with a high-performance coating.
- G. Multicomponent Nonsag Urethane Sealant:
1. Available Products:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
    - b. Tremco; Dymeric 511.
  2. Type and Grade: M (multicomponent) and NS (nonsag).
  3. Class: 50.
  4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
  5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
    - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Aluminum coated with a high-performance coating.
- H. Multicomponent Pourable Urethane Sealant:
1. Available Products:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II-SG.
    - b. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Sikaflex - 2c SL.
    - c. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; SL 2.
  2. Type and Grade: M (multicomponent) and P (pourable).
  3. Class: 25.
  4. Uses Related to Exposure: T (traffic) and NT (nontraffic).
  5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
- I. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant:
1. Available Products:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
    - b. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Sikaflex - 15LM.
    - c. Tremco; DyMonic.
  2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
  3. Class: 25.
  4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
  5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

## **2.4 SOLVENT-RELEASE JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Acrylic-Based Solvent-Release Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 1311 or FS TT-S-00230.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Tremco; Mono 555.
- B. Butyl-Rubber-Based Solvent-Release Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 1085.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonneborn Multi-Purpose Sealant.
    - b. Tremco; Tremco Butyl Sealant.

## **2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Latex Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF.
- B. Available Products:
  - 1. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
  - 2. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonolac.
  - 3. Tremco; Tremflex 834.

## **2.6 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following:
  - 1. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 2. Available Products:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
    - b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

## **2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING**

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D 1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 26 deg F (minus 32 deg C). Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and to otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates, where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience.

Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS**

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- D. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- F. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 4. Seal abutting joint at all dissimilar materials.
- G. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants

and of products in which joints occur.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so
- B. sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### **3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE**

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior vertical construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior horizontal nontraffic and traffic isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent pourable urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior vertical control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior vertical joints between different materials listed above.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior perimeter joints between unit masonry and frames of doors and windows.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Vertical control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior perimeter joints of exterior openings.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent nonsag urethane sealant or Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.

- 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- I. Joint-Sealant Application: Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry walls and partitions.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Single-component nonsag urethane sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- J. Joint-Sealant Application: Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
  - 1. Joint Sealant: Latex sealant.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

**END OF SECTION 07 92 00**

## **DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

Section 08 14 00	Flush Wood Doors
Section 08 31 00	Access Doors and Frames
Section 08 53 13	Vinyl Windows
Section 08 71 00	Door Hardware
Section 08 80 00	Glazing





**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
  - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
  - 3. Louvers for flush wood doors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
  - 1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
  - 3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
  - 4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
  - 5. Indicate fire ratings for fire doors.
- C. Samples for Selection: Color charts consisting of actual materials in small sections for the following:
  - 1. Faces of Factory-Finished Doors: Show the full range of colors available for stained finishes.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated."
  - 1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels or an AWI letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric pressure.
  - 2. Oversize, Fire-Rated Wood Doors: For door assemblies exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide oversize fire door label or certificate of inspection, from a testing

and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, stating that doors comply with requirements of design, materials, and construction.

3. Temperature-Rise Rating: At exit enclosures, provide doors that have a temperature-rise rating of 450 deg F (250 deg C) maximum in 30 minutes of fire exposure.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

## **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that are defective in materials or workmanship, have warped (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) in a 42-by-84-inch (1067-by-2134-mm) section, or show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch (0.25 mm in a 75-mm) span.
  1. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time from date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Flush Wood Doors:
    - a. Algoma Hardwoods Inc.
    - b. Buell Door Company.
    - c. Eggers Industries; Architectural Door Division.
    - d. GRAHAM Manufacturing Corp.
    - e. Oshkosh Architectural Door Co.
    - f. VT Industries Inc.
    - g. Marshfield DoorSystems, Inc.
  2. Metal Louvers for Doors:
    - a. Air Louvers, Inc.
    - b. Anemostat Door Products.

## **2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL**

- A. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives containing urea formaldehyde.

- B. Doors for Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade AA faces.
  - 2. Species and Cut: As scheduled.
  - 3. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
  - 4. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
  - 5. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
  - 6. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
  - 7. Stiles: Same species as faces.

## **2.3 SOLID-CORE DOORS**

- A. Particleboard Cores: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2.
    - a. Use particleboard made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.
  - 2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as follows:
    - a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
    - b. 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
    - c. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
- B. Interior Veneer-Faced Doors:
  - 1. Core: Particleboard.
  - 2. Construction: Five plies with stiles and rails bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
- C. Fire-Rated Doors:
  - 1. Construction: Construction and core specified above for type of face indicated or manufacturer's standard mineral-core construction as needed to provide fire rating indicated.
  - 2. Blocking: For mineral-core doors, provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire ratings indicated as follows:
    - a. 5-inch (125-mm) top-rail blocking.
    - b. 5-inch (125-mm) bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
    - c. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
    - d. 5-inch (125-mm) midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
  - 3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance and with outer stile matching face veneer.
  - 4. Pairs: Provide fire-rated pairs with fire-retardant stiles matching face veneer that are labeled and listed for kinds of applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals.

## **2.4 LOUVERS AND LIGHT FRAMES**

- A. Metal Louvers:
  - 1. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V.
  - 2. Metal and Finish: Extruded aluminum with Class II, clear anodic finish complying with AA-C22A31.

- B. Fire Door Louvers: Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire rating of one and one-half hours and less.
  - 1. Metal and Finish: Galvanized steel, 0.0396 inch (1.0 mm) thick, hot-dip zinc coated and factory primed for paint finish.
- C. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.0478-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; factory primed and approved for use in doors of fire rating indicated.

## **2.5 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate doors in sizes indicated for Project-site fitting.
  - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- B. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

## **2.6 FACTORY FINISHING**

- A. General: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated" for factory finishing.
- B. Finish doors at factory.
- C. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Finish: AWI System TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
  - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
  - 5. Sheen: Semigloss.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Manufacturer's Written Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.

- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining.
  - 1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from bottom of door to top of threshold.
    - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock and hinge edges.
  - 3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3-1/2 degrees) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

**END OF SECTION 08 14 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawing and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wall access doors and frames.
  - 2. Fire-rated wall access doors and frames.
  - 3. Ceiling access doors and frames.
  - 4. Fire-rated ceiling access doors and frames.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for blocking out openings for access doors and frames in concrete.
  - 2. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for anchoring and grouting access door frames set in masonry construction.
  - 3. Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.
  - 4. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for mortise or rim cylinder locks and master keying.
  - 5. Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories" for heating and air-conditioning duct access doors.
  - 6. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping" for connection of floor door drainage couplings to drains.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of door and frame indicated. Include construction details relative to materials, individual components and profiles, finishes, and fire ratings (if required) for access doors and frames.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of customized doors and frames. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
- C. Schedule: Provide complete door and frame schedule, including types, general locations, sizes, construction details, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items with concealed framing, suspension systems, piping, ductwork, and other construction. Show the following:
  - 1. Method of attaching door frames to surrounding construction.
  - 2. Ceiling-mounted items including access doors and frames, lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and special trim.



## **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per the following test method and that are labeled and listed by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
  - 1. NFPA 252 or UL 10B for vertical access doors.
  - 2. ASTM E 119 or UBC Standard 7.1 for horizontal access doors and frames.
- C. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed equipment, and indicate on schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Access Doors:
    - a. J. L. Industries, Inc.
    - b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Milcor Limited Partnership.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Electrolytic Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), with Class C coating and phosphate treatment to prepare surface for painting; with minimum thickness indicated representing specified nominal thickness according to ASTM A 568/A 568M for uncoated base metal.
- C. Drywall Beads: Edge trim formed from 0.0299-inch (0.76-mm) zinc-coated steel sheet formed to receive joint compound and in size to suit thickness of gypsum board.

### **2.3 PAINT**

- A. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with performance requirements in FS TT-P-664; selected for good resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, compatibility with finish paint systems indicated, and capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

### **2.4 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES**

- A. Flush, Insulated, Fire-Rated Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel sheet.
  - 1. Locations: Gypsum board wall and ceiling surfaces.
  - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: One hour and as scheduled.
  - 3. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F (139 deg) C at the end of 30 minutes.
  - 4. Door: Flush panel with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.036 inch (0.9 mm).
  - 5. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with drywall bead.
  - 6. Hinges: Continuous piano hinge.
  - 7. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
  - 8. Latch: Self-latching bolt operated by knurled knob with interior release.
  - 9. Lock: Key-operated cylinder lock with interior release.
- B. Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel sheet.
  - 1. Locations: Masonry, concrete and ceramic-tile wall surfaces.
  - 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal, set flush with exposed face flange of frame.
  - 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with 1-inch-(25-mm-) wide, surface-mounted trim.
  - 4. Hinges: Continuous piano hinge.
  - 5. Latch: Screwdriver-operated cam latch.
  - 6. Lock: Key-operated cylinder lock.
- C. Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel sheet.
  - 1. Locations: Gypsum board wall and ceiling surfaces.
  - 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal, set flush with surrounding finish surfaces.
  - 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick sheet metal with drywall bead.
  - 4. Hinges: Continuous piano hinge.
  - 5. Latch: Screwdriver-operated cam latch.
  - 6. Lock: Key-operated cylinder lock.

## **2.5 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Provide access door assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Steel Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. Exposed Flanges: Nominal 1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm) wide around perimeter of frame.
  - 2. For trimless frames with drywall bead for installation in gypsum board assembly, provide edge trim for gypsum board securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 3. Provide mounting holes in frames to attach frames to framing in drywall construction and to attach masonry anchors in masonry construction. Furnish adjustable metal masonry anchors.

- D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
  - 1. For cylinder lock, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.

## **2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

## **2.7 METALLIC-COATED STEEL FINISHES**

- A. Galvanizing of Steel Shapes and Plates: Hot-dip galvanize items indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:
  - 1. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. For galvanized surfaces, apply, after cleaning, a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. For metallic-coated surfaces, clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.
  - 1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- C. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.

## **2.8 STEEL FINISHES**

- A. Surface Preparation: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:
  - 1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- B. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for shop painting.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Advise installers of other work about specific requirements relating to access door and floor door installation, including sizes of openings to receive access door and frame, as well as locations of supports, inserts, and anchoring devices.

## **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames and floor doors and frames.

- B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.
- C. Install access doors with trimless frames and floor doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

**END OF SECTION 08 31 00**



## **SECTION 08 53 13 - VINYL WINDOWS**

December 22, 2008

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes fixed and operable vinyl-framed windows.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Performance class designations according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS:
  - 1. C: Commercial.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Provide vinyl windows capable of complying with performance requirements indicated, based on testing manufacturer's windows that are representative of those specified, and that are of test size indicated below:
  - 1. Size indicated on Drawings.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, finishes, and operating instructions for each type of vinyl window indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, attachments to other work, operational clearances, installation details, and the following:
  - 1. Mullion details, including reinforcement and stiffeners.
  - 2. Joinery details.
  - 3. Expansion provisions.
  - 4. Flashing and drainage details.
  - 5. Weather-stripping details.
  - 6. Glazing details.
- C. Samples for Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of hardware and accessories involving color selection.

- D. Product Schedule: For vinyl windows. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed within the last four years by a qualified testing agency for each type, class, grade, and size of vinyl window. Test results based on use of downsized test units will not be accepted.
- G. Maintenance Data: For operable window sash, operating hardware, weather stripping and finishes to include in maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to vinyl window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
  - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for vinyl windows, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating vinyl windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by inclusion in lists and by labels, test reports, and calculations.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain vinyl windows through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for vinyl windows' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Fenestration Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, "North American Fenestration Standard Voluntary Performance Specification for Windows, Skylights and Glass Doors," for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. Provide AAMA/WDMA-certified vinyl windows with an attached label.
- F. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass manufacturers and with GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify vinyl window openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating vinyl windows without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace vinyl windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
    - b. Structural failures including excessive deflection, water leakage, air infiltration, or condensation.
    - c. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
    - d. Deterioration of vinyl, other materials, and finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - e. Failure of insulating glass.
  - 2. Warranty Period:
    - a. Window: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Glazing: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Vinyl Finish: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Vinyl Extrusions: Rigid (unplasticized) hollow PVC extrusions, formulated and extruded for exterior applications, complying with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS and the following:
  - 1. PVC Resins: 100 percent virgin resin.
  - 2. PVC Formulation: High impact, low heat buildup, lead free, nonchalking, and color and UV stabilized.
  - 3. Extrusion Wall Thickness: Not less than 0.090 inch (2.3 mm).
  - 4. Multichamber Extrusions: Profile designed with multichambers between interior and exterior faces of the extrusions.
- B. Vinyl Trim and Glazing Stops: Material and finish to match frame members.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, epoxy adhesive, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive and compatible with vinyl window members, cladding, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.



1. Exposed Fasteners: Unless unavoidable for applying hardware, do not use exposed fasteners. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish of member or hardware being fastened, as appropriate.
- D. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- E. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, or nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- F. Compression-Type Weather Stripping: Provide compressible weather stripping designed for permanently resilient sealing under bumper or wiper action, and for complete concealment when vinyl window is closed.
  1. Weather-Stripping Material: Manufacturer's standard system and materials complying with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.
- G. Replaceable Weather Seals: Comply with AAMA 701/702.

## 2.2 WINDOW

- A. Window Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. AAMA/WDMA Performance Requirements: Provide vinyl windows of performance indicated that comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.
  1. Performance Class and Grade: C35.
- C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Air Infiltration Test.
  1. Maximum Rate: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (5 cu. m/h x sq. m) of area at an inward test pressure of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- D. Water Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/WDMA referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Water Resistance Test.
  1. Test Pressure: 15 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (140 Pa) or more than 15 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa).
- E. Operating Force and Auxiliary (Durability) Tests: Comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS for operating window types indicated.

## 2.3 GLAZING

- A. Glass and Glazing Materials: Refer to Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glass units and glazing requirements applicable to glazed vinyl window units.

- B. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal.

## 2.4 INSECT SCREENS

- A. General: Design windows and hardware to accommodate screens in a tight-fitting, removable arrangement, with a minimum of exposed fasteners and latches. Fabricate insect screens to fully integrate with window frame. Locate screens on inside of window and provide for each operable exterior sash or ventilator.
- B. Aluminum Insect Screen Frames: Manufacturer's standard aluminum alloy complying with SMA 1004. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped joints or corner extrusions, concealed fasteners, and removable PVC spline/anchor concealing edge of frame.
  - 1. Aluminum Tubular Framing Sections and Cross Braces: Roll formed from aluminum sheet with minimum wall thickness as required for class indicated.
  - 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Glass-Fiber Mesh Fabric: 18-by-14 (1.1-by-1.4-mm) or 18-by-16 (1.0-by-1.1-mm) mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber threads; woven and fused to form a fabric mesh resistant to corrosion, shrinkage, stretch, impact damage, and weather deterioration, in the following color. Comply with ASTM D 3656.
  - 1. Mesh Color: Charcoal gray.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate vinyl windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
  - 1. Welded Frame and Sash/Ventilator Corners: Miter-cut and chemically welded.
- B. Fabricate vinyl windows that are reglazable without dismantling sash or ventilator framing.
- C. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash and ventilator, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mullions: Provide mullions and cover plates as shown, compatible with window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design loads of window units. Provide manufacturer's standard finish to match window units.
- E. Subframes: Provide subframes with anchors for window units as shown, of profile and dimensions indicated but not less than 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick extruded aluminum. Miter or cope corners, and weld and dress smooth with concealed mechanical joint fasteners. Provide manufacturer's standard finish to match window units. Provide subframes capable of withstanding design loads of window units.
- F. Factory-Glazed Fabrication: Except for light sizes in excess of 100 united inches (2500 mm width plus length), glaze vinyl windows in the factory where practical and possible for

applications indicated. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS.

- G. Glazing Stops: Provide nailed or snap-on glazing stops coordinated with Division 08 Section "Glazing" and glazing system indicated. Provide glazing stops to match sash and ventilator frames.
- H. Hardware: Mount hardware through double walls of vinyl extrusions or provide corrosion-resistant steel reinforcement complying with requirements for reinforcing members, or do both.
- I. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Allow for scribing, trimming, and fitting at Project site.

## 2.6 VINYL FINISHES

- A. Integral Finish and Color: Uniform, solid, homogeneous white interior and exterior.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure a coordinated, weathertight window installation.
  - 1. Wood Frame Walls: Dry, clean, sound, well nailed, free of voids, and without offsets at joints. Ensure that nail heads are driven flush with surfaces in opening and within 3 inches (76 mm) of opening.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with Drawings, Shop Drawings, and manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
- C. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weathertight construction.
- D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust operating sashes and ventilators, screens, hardware, and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- C. Clean factory-glazed glass immediately after installing windows. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- D. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- E. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. In addition, monitor window surfaces adjacent to and below exterior concrete and masonry surfaces during construction for presence of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, stains, or other contaminants. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 08 53 13



## SECTION 08 71 00 – DOOR HARDWARE

### PART I – GENERAL

#### 1.01 SUMMARY

##### A. SECTION INCLUDES

1. The work in this section includes furnishing all items of finish hardware as hereinafter specified or obviously necessary for all swinging, sliding, folding and other doors. Except items, which are specifically excluded from this section of the specification or of unique hardware, specified in the same sections as the doors and frames on which they are installed.

##### B. RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Related documents, drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 specification sections apply to this section.

##### C. RELATED SECTIONS

1. 06200 – Finish Carpentry
2. 08110 – Metal Doors and Frames
3. 08210 – Wood Doors
4. 08410 – Entrances and Storefronts
5. Division 16 – Access Control

#### 1.02 REFERENCES

##### A. STANDARDS

1. ANSI A156.1 – Butts and Hinges
2. ANSI A156.2 – Bored Locks and Latches
3. ANSI A156.3 – Exit Devices
4. ANSI A156.4 – Door Controls – Door Closers
5. ANSI A156.16 – Auxiliary Hardware
6. ANSI A156.18 – Material and Finishes
7. ANSI A156.21 – Thresholds
8. ANSI A156.22 – Door Gasketing and Edge Seal Systems
9. ANSI A156.26 – Continuous Hinges
10. NFPA 80 – Fire Doors and Windows
11. UL10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
12. AIA A201 1997 – General Conditions of the Contract

##### B. CODES

1. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
2. IBC 2003 – International Building Code
3. ANSI A117.1 – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
4. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

## 1.03 SUBMITTALS

### A. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. Submit copies of finish hardware schedule in accordance with Division 1, General Requirements.

### B. SCHEDULES AND PRODUCT DATA

1. Schedules to be in vertical format, listing each door opening, and organized into "hardware sets" indicating complete designations of every item required for each door opening to function as intended. Hardware schedule shall be submitted within two (2) weeks from date the purchase order is received by the finish hardware supplier. Furnish four (4) copies of revised schedules after approval for field and file use. Note any special mounting instructions or requirements with the hardware schedule. Schedules to include the following information:
  - a. Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
  - b. Handing and degree of swing of each door.
  - c. Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - d. Keying information.
  - e. Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
  - f. Elevation drawings and operational descriptions for all electronic openings.
  - g. Name and manufacturer of each hardware item.
  - h. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - i. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols and codes contained in schedule
  - j. Mounting locations for hardware when varies from standard.
2. Submit catalog cuts and/or product data sheets for all scheduled finish hardware.
3. Submit separate detailed keying schedule for approval indicating clearly how the owner's final instructions on keying of locks has been fulfilled.

### C. SAMPLES

1. Upon request, samples of each type of hardware in finish indicated shall be submitted. Samples are to remain undamaged and in working condition through submittal and review process. Items will be returned to the supplier or incorporated into the work within limitations of keying coordination requirements.

### D. TEMPLATES

1. Furnish a complete list and suitable templates, together with finish hardware schedule to contractor, for distribution to necessary trades supplying materials to be prepped for finish hardware.

### E. OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

1. Upon completion of construction and building turnover, furnish two (2) complete maintenance manuals to the owner. Manuals to include the following items:
  - a. Approved hardware schedule, catalog cuts and keying schedule.
  - b. Hardware installation and adjustment instructions.

- c. Manufacturer's written warranty information.
- d. Wiring diagrams, elevation drawings and operational descriptions for all electronic openings.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. SUBSTITUTIONS

1. All substitution requests must be submitted before bidding and within the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 1, General Requirements. Approval of products is at the discretion of the architect and his hardware consultant.

##### B. SUPPLIER QUALIFICATIONS

1. A recognized architectural door hardware supplier who has maintained an office and has been furnishing hardware in the project's vicinity for a period of at least two (2) years.
2. Hardware supplier shall have office and warehouse facilities to accommodate this project.
3. Hardware supplier shall have in his employment at lease one (1) Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) who is available at reasonable times during business hours for consultation about the project's hardware and requirements to the owner, architect and contractor.
4. Hardware supplier must be an authorized factory distributor of all products specified herein.

#### 1.05 FIRE-RATED OPENINGS

1. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that comply with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed by Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) or Warnock Hersey (WH) for use on types and sizes of doors indicated.
2. Project requires door assemblies and components that are compliant with positive pressure and S-label requirements. Specifications must be cross-referenced and coordinated with door manufacturers to ensure that total opening engineering is compatible with UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
  - a. Hardware required for fire doors shall be listed with Underwriters Laboratories for ratings specified.
  - b. Certification(s) of compliance shall be made available upon request by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

#### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

##### A. MARKING AND PACKAGING

1. Properly package and mark items according to the approved hardware schedule, complete with necessary screws and accessories, instructions and installation templates for spotting mortising tools. Contractor shall check deliveries against accepted list and provide receipt for them, after which he is responsible for storage and care. Any shortage or damaged good shall be made without cost to the owner.



2. Packaging of door hardware is the responsibility of the supplier. As hardware supplier receives material from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set and door numbers to match the approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in same container.

#### B. DELIVERY

1. The supplier shall deliver all hardware to the project site; direct factory shipments are not allowed unless agreed upon beforehand. Hardware supplier shall coordinate delivery times and schedules with the contractor. Inventory door hardware jointly with representatives of hardware supplier and hardware installer/contractor until each is satisfied that count is correct.
2. No keys, other than construction master keys and/or temporary keys are to be packed in boxes with the locks.
3. At time of hardware delivery, door openings supplier in conjunction with the contractor shall check in all hardware and set up a hardware storage room.

#### C. STORAGE

1. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items that are not immediately replaceable so that completion of work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

### 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. All items, except as noted below, shall be warranted in writing by the manufacturer against failure due to defective materials and workmanship for a minimum period of one (1) year commencing on the date of final completion and acceptance. In the event of product failure, promptly repair or replace item with no additional cost to the owner.
  1. Cylindrical locksets – Heavy Duty: Seven (7) years
  2. Exit Devices: Five (5) years
  3. Door closers: Ten (10) years

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Only manufacturers as listed below shall be accepted. Obtain each type of finish hardware (hinges, latch and locksets, exit devices, door closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

#### A. SCREWS AND FASTENERS

1. All required screws shall be supplied as necessary for securing finish hardware in the appropriate manner. Thru-bolts shall be supplied for exit devices and door closers where required by code and the appropriate blocking or reinforcing is not present in the door to preclude their use.

## B. HANGING DEVICES

### 1. HINGES

- a. Hinges shall conform to ANSI A156.1 and have the number of knuckles as specified, oil-impregnated bearings as specified with NRP (non-removable pin) feature, at all exterior reverse bevel doors. Unless otherwise scheduled, supply one (1) hinge for every 30" of door height. Hinges shall be a minimum of 4 1/2" high and 4" wide; heavy weight hinges (.180) shall be supplied at all doors where specified.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: McKinney
- 2) Approved Substitutes: Hager

### 2. CONTINUOUS GEARED HINGES

- a. All hinges to be non-handed and completely reversible. Hinge line to be available in concealed flush mount with or without inset, full surface and half surface types as specified in the hardware sets. All hinges to be made of extruded 6060 T6 aluminum alloy with polyacetal thrust bearings, anodized after cutouts are made for bearings. All concealed hinges to be fire-rated for 20, 45 and 90 minutes when incorporated into proper door and frame labeled installations, without necessitating the use of fusible-link pins. All concealed hinges to be available in standard, heavy, and extra heavy duty weights; all full surface and half surface hinges in standard and heavy duty weights as specified in the hardware sets. All hinges to be factory cut for door size.

- 1) Specified Manufacturers: McKinney
- 2) Approved Manufacturers: Roton

## C. FLUSH BOLTS AND ACCESSORIES

1. All manual and automatic flush bolts to be furnished as specified.

- a. Specified Manufacturer: Trimco
- b. Approved Substitutes: None

## D. CYLINDERS AND KEYING

### 1. CYLINDERS

- a. Provide cylinders and keys protected from unauthorized manufacture and distribution by manufacturer's United States patents. The key design and tolerances shall permit the cutting of keys with standard code or duplicating machines. The requirement for a single-purpose or keyway-specific cutting or duplicating machine shall not be allowed. The key design and tolerances shall permit the use of keys and cylinders in existing key systems having similar keyways and sections.

- b. Contact Kent Lyman for Sargent Keyway (801) 863-8019.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: Sargent
- 2) Approved Substitutes: None

## 2. KEYING

- a. All locks and cylinders shall be construction master-keyed. All locks and cylinders to be master-keyed or grandmaster-keyed as directed by the owner. The factory shall key all locks and cylinders. Furnish the following key amounts:
  - 1) Two (2) change keys per lock
  - 2) Three (3) grand master keys
  - 3) Six (6) master keys per master level
  - 4) Fifteen (15) construction/temporary keys
- b. Master keys and all high-security or restricted keyway blanks shall be sealed in tamper-proof packaged boxes when shipped from the factory. The boxes shall be shrink wrapped and imprinted to ensure the integrity of the packaging.

## E. LOCKING DEVICES

### 1. CYLINDRICAL LOCKSETS – HEAVY DUTY

- a. All locksets shall be ANSI 156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1 Certified. Furnish with standard 2 3/4" backset. Lock housing shall be fabricated of steel zinc dichromate and stainless steel. Latchbolt shall be brass or stainless steel with a minimum 1/2" throw. Locks shall be non-handed and fully field reversible.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturer: Sargent 10 Line
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: None

### 2. LOCKSET STRIKES

- a. Strikes shall be non-handed and available with curved lip, full lip or ASA type strikes as required. Provide strikes with lip-length required to accommodate jamb and/or trim detail and projection.

## F. EXIT DEVICES

### 1. CONVENTIONAL DEVICES – PUSH RAIL

- a. All exit devices shall be ANSI A156.3, Grade 1 Certified and shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories and bear the UL label for life safety in full compliance with NFPA 80 and NFPA 101. Mounting rails shall be formed from a solid single piece of stainless steel, brass or bronze no less than 0.072" thick. Push rails shall be constructed of 0.062" thick material. Lever trim shall be available in finishes and designs to match that of the specified locksets.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturer: Sargent 80 Series
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: None

## G. DOOR CLOSERS

### 1. SURFACE MOUNTED CLOSERS – HEAVY DUTY

- a. All door closers shall be ANSI 156.4, Grade 1 Certified. All closers shall have aluminum alloy bodies, forged steel arms, and separate valves for adjusting backcheck, closing and

latching cycles and adjustable spring to provide up to 50% increase in spring power. Closers shall be furnished with parallel arms mounting on all doors opening into corridors or other public spaces and shall be mounted to permit 180 degrees door swing wherever wall conditions permit. Closers shall not be installed on exterior or corridor side of doors; where possible install closers on door for optimum aesthetics.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: LCN 4041 Series
- 2) Approved Substitutes: None

#### H. DOOR TRIM AND PROTECTIVE PLATES

1. Kick plates shall be .050 gauges and two (2) inches less full width of door, or as specified. Push plates, pull plates, door pulls and miscellaneous door trim shall be as shown in the hardware schedule.

- a. Specified Manufacturer: Rockwood
- b. Approved Substitutes: Trimco

#### I. DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

##### 1. WALL MOUNTED DOOR STOPS

- a. Where a door is indicated on the plans to strike flush against a wall, wall bumpers shall be provided. Provide convex or concave design as indicated.

- 1) Specified Manufacturers: Trimco
- 2) Approved Substitutes: None

#### J. GASKETING AND THRESHOLDS

1. Provide continuous weatherseal on exterior doors and smoke, light, or sound seals on interior doors where indicated or scheduled. Provide intumescent seals as required to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies. Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
2. Provide threshold units not less than 4" wide, formed to accommodate change in floor elevation where indicated, fabricated to accommodate door hardware and to fit door frames. All threshold units shall comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

- a. Specified Manufacturers: Pemko
- b. Approved Substitutes: None

#### K. SILENCERS

1. Furnish rubber door silencers all hollow metal frames; two (2) per pair and three (3) per single door frame.

#### 2.03 FINISHES

- A. The designations used in schedules and elsewhere to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in ANSI/BHMA A156.18 or traditional U.S. finishes shown by certain manufacturers for their products.

- B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.
- C. Where specified hardware shall have an antimicrobial coating which permanently suppresses the growth of bacteria, algae, fungus, mold and mildew applied. The finish shall control the spread and growth of bacteria, mold and mildew and shall be FDA listed for use in medical and food preparation equipment.

## PART III – EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Contractor shall ensure that the building is secured and free from weather elements prior to installing interior door hardware. Examine hardware before installation to ensure it is free of defects.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount hardware units at heights indicated in the following applicable publications, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with the governing regulations.
  - 1. "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" by the Door and Hardware Institute (DHI.)
  - 2. NWWDA Industry Standard I.S.1.7, "Hardware Locations for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. All hardware shall be applied and installed in accordance with best trade practice by an experienced hardware installer. Care shall be exercised not to mar or damage adjacent work.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation or application of surface protection with finishing work specified in the Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrates involved.
- D. Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Contractor shall comply with AIA A201 1997 section 3.3.1 which reads as follows: "The Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract, unless the contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters."

- B. Prior to the installation of hardware, manufacturer's representatives for locksets, closers, and exit devices shall arrange and hold a jobsite meeting to instruct the installing contractor's personnel on the proper installation of their respective products. A letter of compliance, indicating when this meeting is held and who is in attendance, shall be sent to the Architect and Owner.
- C. The hardware supplier shall do a final inspection prior to building completion to ensure that all hardware was correctly installed and is in proper working order.
- D. The manufacturer's representative shall do a final inspection prior to building completion to ensure that all hardware was correctly installed and is in proper working order.

#### 3.04 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND DEMONSTRATING

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for the application made.
- B. Where door hardware is installed more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the installation during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore to proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.
- C. Instruct owner's personnel in the proper adjustment and maintenance of door hardware and hardware finishes and usage of any electronic devices.

#### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Contractor shall protect all hardware, as it is stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.

#### 3.06 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The following schedule is furnished for whatever assistance it may afford the Contractor; do not consider it as entirely inclusive. Should any particular door or item be omitted in any scheduled hardware heading, provide door or item with hardware same as required for similar purposes. Hardware supplier is responsible for handing and sizing all products as listed in the hardware heading. Quantities listed are for each pair of doors, or for each single door.
- B. Manufacturer's Abbreviations:
  - 1. AD – Adams Rite
  - 2. LC - LCN
  - 3. MC – McKinney
  - 4. PE - Pemko
  - 5. RO – Rockwood
  - 6. SA – Sargent

Heading AL-01

## Doors: 17

1	Continuous Hinge	MCK-12HD	CLEAR	MC
1	Exit Device	8504 862	32D	SA
1	Closer	4041 S-CUSH	AL	LC
1	Adapter Plate	4040 18PA	AL	LC
1	Weatherstripping	BY DOOR MANUFACTURER		
1	Threshold	172 A		PE
1	Spacer	4040-61	AL	LC
1	Cush Shoe Support	4040-30	AL	LC

Heading AL-02

## Doors: 18B

1	Continuous Hinge	MCK-12HD	CLEAR	MC
1	Push Pull Bar Set	BF15747	US28	RO
1	Mortise Deadbolt	MS1850S CYLINDER X CYLINDER	28	AD
1	Mortise Cylinder	41	32D	SA
1	Indicator	4089	28	AD
1	Cylinder Guard	MS4043	28	AD
1	Closer	4041 S-CUSH	AL	LC
1	Adapter Plate	4040 18PA	AL	LC
1	Cush Shoe Support	4040-30	AL	LC
1	Spacer	4040-61	AL	LC
1	Weatherstripping	BY DOOR MANUFACTURER		
1	Threshold	172 A		PE

Heading 01

## Doors: 11

2	Continuous Hinge	MCK-12HD	CLEAR	MC
1	Removable Mullion	L980	PC	SA
1	Exit Device	8804 ETL	32D	SA
1	Exit Device	8810 ETL-DT	32D	SA
2	Closer	4041 S-CUSH	AL	LC
1	Weatherstrip	2891 AS @ HEAD ONLY		PE
1	Weatherstrip	290 AS @ JAMBS ONLY		PE
2	Door Bottom	315 CN		PE
1	Threshold	171 A		PE

Heading 02

## Doors: 24

1	Continuous Hinge	MCK-12HD	CLEAR	MC
1	Storeroom Lockset	28 10G04 LL	26D	SA
1	Closer	4041 S-CUSH	AL	LC
1	Protection Plate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW	US32D	RO
1	Weatherstrip	2891 AS @ HEAD ONLY		PE

UVU Murdock Guest House Adaptive Re-use

1	Weatherstrip	290 AS @ JAMBS ONLY		PE
1	Door Bottom	315 CN		PE
1	Threshold	172 A		PE

Heading 03

Doors: 04

6	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1	Storeroom Lockset	28 10G04 LL	26D	SA
2	Closer	4041 H	AL	LC
2	Protection Plate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW	US32D	RO
1	Perimeter seal	S88		PE
2	Door Bottom	315 CN		PE
1	Threshold	171 A		PE

Heading 04

Doors: 01A

6	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Flush Bolt	3917-12	626	TR
1	Storeroom Lockset	28 10G04 LL	26D	SA
2	Closer	4041 REG/PA	AL	LC
2	Protection Plate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW	US32D	RO
1	Perimeter seal	S88		PE
2	Door Bottom	315 CN		PE
1	Threshold	171 A		PE

Heading 05

Doors: 01B, 09

3	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Storeroom Lockset	28 10G04 LL	26D	SA
1	Closer	4041 REG/PA	AL	LC
1	Protection Plate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW	US32D	RO
1	Wall Bumper	1270WX	630	TR
1	Perimeter seal	S88		PE

Heading 06

Doors: 23

3	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Entrance Lockset	28 10G05 LL	26D	SA
1	Closer	4041 REG/PA	AL	LC
1	Protection Plate	K1050 10" x 2" LDW	US32D	RO
1	Wall Bumper	1270WX	630	TR
1	Perimeter seal	S88		PE



Heading 07

Doors: 02, 03, 06, 07, 10, 13, 18A, 19, 21, 22, 25

3	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Entrance Lockset	28 10G05 LL	26D	SA
1	Wall Bumper	1270WX	630	TR
3	Door Silencers	608	GREY	RO

Heading 08

Doors: 08, 20

3	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Privacy Set	28 10U65 LL	26D	SA
1	Wall Bumper	1270WX	630	TR
1	Perimeter seal	S88		PE

Heading 09

Doors: 15

3	Hinges	TA714 4 1/2 X 4 1/2	26D	MC
1	Passage Set	28 10U15 LL	26D	SA
1	Wall Bumper	1270WX	630	TR
3	Door Silencers	608	GREY	RO

Heading 10

Doors: 01C, 12

1	By Door Supplier	ALL HARDWARE BY OTHERS
---	------------------	------------------------

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
  - 1. Windows.
  - 2. Doors.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Manufacturer: A firm that produces primary glass or fabricated glass as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- C. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.
- D. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of the hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Glass Design: Glass thicknesses indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites for various size openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - 1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
    - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour (meters per

- second) at 33 feet (10 m) above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.4.2, "Analytic Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
- b. Specified Design Snow Loads: As indicated, but not less than snow loads applicable to Project, required by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 7, "Snow Loads."
  - c. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
    - 1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
  - d. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all four edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less.
    - 1) For monolithic-glass lites heat treated to resist wind loads.
    - 2) For insulating glass.
  - e. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6 mm.
  - f. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing Glass: Provide the same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
- 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
- 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
  - 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick and a nominal 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide interspace.
  - 3. Center-of-Glass U-Values: NFRC 100 methodology using LBL-35298 WINDOW 4.1 computer program, expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
  - 4. Center-of-Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200 methodology using LBL-35298 WINDOW 4.1 computer program.
  - 5. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Samples: For the following products, in the form of 12-inch- (300-mm-) square Samples for glass and of 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples for sealants. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.
  - 1. Each color of tinted float glass.
  - 2. Coated vision glass.
  - 3. Wired glass.
  - 4. Insulating glass for each designation indicated.
  - 5. For each color (except black) of exposed glazing sealant indicated.
- C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in

preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.

- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- E. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.
- F. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating the following products comply with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products:
  - 1. Tinted float glass.
  - 2. Coated float glass.
  - 3. Insulating glass.
  - 4. Glazing sealants.
  - 5. Glazing gaskets.
- G. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association Glazier Certification Program as Level 2 (Senior Glaziers) or Level 3 (Master Glaziers).
- B. Source Limitations for Clear Glass: Obtain clear float glass from one primary-glass manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Tinted Glass: Obtain tinted, heat-absorbing, and light-reducing float glass from one primary-glass manufacturer for each tint color indicated.
- D. Source Limitations for Coated Glass: Obtain coated glass from one manufacturer for each type of coating and each type and class of float glass indicated.
- E. Source Limitations for Insulating Glass: Obtain insulating-glass units from one manufacturer using the same type of glass and other components for each type of unit indicated.
- F. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories from one source for each product and installation method indicated.
- G. Glass Product Testing: Obtain glass test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing glass products.
  - 1. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- H. Elastomeric Glazing Sealant Product Testing: Obtain sealant test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period.
  - 1. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented

- according to ASTM E 548.
2. Test elastomeric glazing sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
- I. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of each glass type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants.
    1. Use manufacturer's standard test methods to determine whether priming and other specific preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
      - a. Perform tests under normal environmental conditions replicating those that will exist during installation.
    2. Submit not fewer than nine pieces of each type and finish of glass-framing members and each type, class, kind, condition, and form of glass (monolithic, laminated, and insulating units) as well as one sample of each glazing accessory (gaskets, tape sealants, setting blocks, and spacers).
    3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    4. For materials failing tests, obtain sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including the use of specially formulated primers.
    5. Testing will not be required if elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers submit data based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, glazing materials matching those submitted.
  - J. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  - K. Fire-Rated Window Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257.
  - L. Safety Glass: Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and ANSI Z97.1.
    1. Subject to compliance with requirements, permanently mark safety glass with certification label of Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - M. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
    1. GANA Publications: GANA'S "Glazing Manual" and "Laminated Glass Design Guide."
    2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
    3. SIGMA Publications: SIGMA TM-3000, "Vertical Glazing Guidelines," and SIGMA TB-3001, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
  - N. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following inspecting and testing agency:

1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
  2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.
  3. National Accreditation and Management Institute.
- O. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

## **1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

## **1.9 WARRANTY**

- A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Coated-Glass Products: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for those coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products indicated in schedules at the end of Part 3.

## **2.2 PRIMARY FLOAT GLASS**

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent glass, flat), Quality q3 (glazing select); class as indicated in schedules at the end of Part 3.

## **2.3 HEAT-TREATED FLOAT GLASS**

- A. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent glass, flat); Quality q3 (glazing select); class, kind, and condition as indicated in schedules at the end of Part 3.

## **2.4 COATED FLOAT GLASS**

- A. General: Provide coated glass complying with requirements indicated in this Article and in schedules at the end of Part 3.
  - 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) coated float glass, except provide Kind FT (fully tempered) products where coated safety glass is indicated.
- B. Sputter-Coated Float Glass: ASTM C 1376, float glass with metallic-oxide or -nitride coating deposited by vacuum deposition process after manufacture and heat treatment (if any), and complying with other requirements specified.

## **2.5 INSULATING GLASS**

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Preassembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, and complying with ASTM E 774 for Class CBA units and with requirements specified in this Article and in the Insulating-Glass Schedule at the end of Part 3.
  - 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) where safety glass is indicated.
- B. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated in the Insulating-Glass Schedule at the end of Part 3 are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
- C. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:
  - 1. Polyisobutylene and hot-melt butyl.
- D. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Aluminum with mill or clear-anodized finish.
  - 2. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
  - 3. Corner Construction: Manufacturer's standard corner construction.

## **2.6 ELASTOMERIC GLAZING SEALANTS**

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range for this characteristic.
- B. Elastomeric Glazing Sealant Standard: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied, chemically curing sealant in the Glazing Sealant Schedule at the end of Part 3, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses.
  - 1. Additional Movement Capability: Where additional movement capability is specified in the Glazing Sealant Schedule, provide products with the capability, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, to withstand the specified percentage change in the joint width existing at time of installation and remain in compliance with other requirements in ASTM C 920 for uses indicated.
- C. Glazing Sealant for Fire-Resistive Glazing Products: Identical to product used in test assembly to obtain fire-protection rating.

## 2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tape: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  - 1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tape: Closed-cell, PVC foam tape; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  - 2. Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.8 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Lock-Strip Gaskets: Neoprene extrusions in size and shape indicated, fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock strips, complying with ASTM C 542, black.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned gaskets of material indicated below; complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
  - 1. Neoprene.
  - 2. EPDM.



3. Silicone.
4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber.
5. Any material indicated above.

## **2.9 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## **2.10 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS**

- A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with indoor and outdoor faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
  3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
  4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

### **3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where the length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm) as follows:
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

### **3.4 TAPE GLAZING**

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Where framing joints are vertical, cover these joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Where framing joints are horizontal, cover these joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### **3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)**

- A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with stretch allowance during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### **3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)**

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### **3.7 LOCK-STRIP GASKET GLAZING**

- A. Comply with ASTM C 716 and gasket manufacturer's written instructions. Provide supplementary wet seal and weep system, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.8 PROTECTION AND CLEANING**

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for build-up of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer.

### **3.9 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS SCHEDULE**

- A. Uncoated Clear Float Glass: Where glass as designated below is indicated, provide Type I (transparent glass, flat), Class 1 (clear) glass lites complying with the following:
  - 1. Uncoated Clear Annealed Float Glass: Annealed or Kind HS (heat strengthened), Condition A (uncoated surfaces) where heat strengthening is required to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with performance requirements.
  - 2. Uncoated Clear Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: Kind HS (heat strengthened).
  - 3. Uncoated Clear Fully Tempered Float Glass: Kind FT (fully tempered).

### **3.10 INSULATING-GLASS SCHEDULE**

- A. Solar-Control Low-E Insulating-Glass Units:
  - 1. Where glass of this designation is indicated, provide insulating-glass units complying with the following:
    - a. Products: Available products include the following:
      - 1) SOLARBAN 60 by PPG Industries.
  - 2. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: 25 and 6.0 mm.
  - 3. Interspace Content: Air.
  - 4. Outdoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass or Class 2 (tinted) float glass, tint as selected by Architect.
    - a. Kind HS (heat strengthened) or Kind FT (fully tempered).
  - 5. Indoor Lite: Class 1 (clear) float glass.
    - a. Kind HS (heat strengthened) or Kind FT (fully tempered).
  - 6. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
  - 7. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent minimum.

8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.47 maximum.
9. Summer Daytime U-Factor: 0.47 maximum.
10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.60 maximum.
11. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: 11 percent maximum.
12. Shading Coefficient: 0.44.

### **3.11 GLAZING SEALANT SCHEDULE**

- A. Low-Modulus Nonacid-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant: Where glazing sealants of this designation are indicated, provide products complying with the following:
1. Products: Available products include the following:
    - a. 790; Dow Corning.
    - b. UltraPruf SCS2300; GE Silicones.
    - c. Spectrem 1; Tremco.
  2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
  3. Class: 25.
  4. Additional Movement Capability: 50 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression for a total of 100 percent movement.
  5. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
  6. Uses Related to Glazing Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to glazing substrates indicated, O.
    - a. Use O Glazing Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, and wood.

**END OF SECTION 08 80 00**

## **DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

Section 09 22 16	Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing
Section 09 29 00	Gypsum Board
Section 09 30 00	Ceramic Tile
Section 09 51 00	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
Section 09 65 19	Resilient Floor Tile
Section 09 68 13	Carpet Tile
Section 09 91 00	Painting



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes non-load-bearing steel framing members for the following applications:
  - 1. Interior framing systems (e.g., supports for partition walls, framed soffits, furring, etc.).
  - 2. Interior suspension systems (e.g., supports for ceilings, suspended soffits, etc.).
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 07 Section "Building Insulation" for insulation installed with Z-shaped furring members.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for head-of-wall joint systems installed with non-load-bearing steel framing.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL**

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized zinc coating, unless otherwise indicated.

**2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.



- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.162-inch (4.12-mm) diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, minimum 1 by 3/16 inch (25.4 by 4.76 mm) by length indicated.
- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm) and minimum 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: Minimum 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch (22.2 mm) deep.
    - a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: Minimum 0.0312 inch (0.79 mm).
  - 2. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Equal to: RSIC-1 as manufactured by PAC International, Inc.
- G. Grid Suspension System for Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

## 2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Minimum 0.0312 inch (0.79 mm).
- B. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- (50.8-mm-) deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
  - 2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch- (50.8-mm-) deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
  - 3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Steel Network Inc. (The); VertiClip SLD/VertiTrack VTD Series.

- C. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Minimum 0.0312 inch (0.79 mm).
- D. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: 0.0538-inch (1.37-mm) bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: Minimum 1-1/2 inches (38.1 mm).
  - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38.1 by 38.1 mm), 0.068-inch- (1.73-mm-) thick, galvanized steel.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: Minimum 0.0312 inch (0.79 mm).
  - 2. Depth: 7/8 inch (22.2 mm).
- F. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
  - 1. Equal to: RSIC-1 as manufactured by PAC International, Inc.
- G. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.0538-inch (1.37-mm) bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: Minimum 3/4 inch (19.1 mm).
  - 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum bare-steel thickness of 0.0312 inch (0.79 mm).
  - 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.
- H. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (31.8 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22.2 mm), minimum bare-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
  - 1. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
  - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, cabinets and casework, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### **3.3 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS**

- A. Install suspension system components in sizes and spacings indicated on Drawings, but not less than those required by referenced installation standards for assembly types and other assembly components indicated.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.

- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.
- F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m) measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

### **3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- B. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- C. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings, unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
  - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
  - 6. Curved Partitions:
    - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
    - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of not less than 2 studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- D. Direct Furring:
  - 1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- E. Z-Furring Members:
  - 1. Erect insulation (specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation") vertically and

- hold in place with Z-furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
  3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches (300 mm) from corner and cut insulation to fit.

**END OF SECTION 09 22 16**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
  - 2. Tile backing panels.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for load-bearing steel framing that supports gypsum board.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for insulation and vapor retarders installed in assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
  - 3. Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for head-of-wall assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
  - 4. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for acoustical sealants installed in assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
  - 5. Division 9 Section "Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board.
  - 6. Division 9 Section "Ceramic Tile" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.
  - 7. Division 9 painting Sections for primers applied to gypsum board surfaces.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
  - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

**1.5 STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack panels

flat to prevent sagging.

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PANELS, GENERAL**

- A. Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### **2.2 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. General: Complying with ASTM C 36/C 36M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, as applicable to type of gypsum board indicated and whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Gypsum Co.
    - b. BPB America Inc.
    - c. G-P Gypsum.
    - d. National Gypsum Company.
    - e. PABCO Gypsum.
    - f. USG Corporation.
- B. Type X:
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Special Type X: Having improved fire resistance over standard Type X, and complying with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Thickness: As required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

### **2.3 TILE BACKING PANELS**

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board:
  - 1. Complying with ASTM C 1178/C 1178M.
    - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "DensShield Tile Guard" by G-P Gypsum.

2. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X.

## 2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. Bullnose bead.
    - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - f. Expansion (control) joint.
    - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
  1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corp.
    - b. Gordon, Inc.
    - c. Pittcon Industries.
  2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5.
  3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

## 2.5 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
  2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
  3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

## 2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.



- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
  - 1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."
- F. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke

ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.

2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations, and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
1. Type X: Vertical surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Special Type X: Where required for specific fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing), unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints 1 framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
  3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

### **3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS**

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### **3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES**

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Bullnose Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 4. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 5. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 6. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Install corner beads at external corners. Provide metal trim to protect edge of gypsum board wherever gypsum board intersects a dissimilar material. Hold channel and >L= trim back from metal window and door frames 1/8 inch to allow for caulking.

### **3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD**

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
  - 3. Level 3: Panels that are substrates for wall coverings and wall panels.

- 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 9 Sections.
- E. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Above-Ceiling Observation: Architect will conduct an above-ceiling observation before installing gypsum board ceilings and report deficiencies in the Work observed. Do not proceed with installation of gypsum board to ceiling support framing until deficiencies have been corrected.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of date and time when Project, or part of Project, will be ready for above-ceiling observation.
  - 2. Before notifying Architect, complete the following in areas to receive gypsum board ceilings:
    - a. Installation of 80 percent of lighting fixtures, powered for operation.
    - b. Installation, insulation, and leak and pressure testing of water piping systems.
    - c. Installation of air-duct systems.
    - d. Installation of air devices.
    - e. Installation of mechanical system control-air tubing.
    - f. Installation of ceiling support framing.

**END OF SECTION 09 29 00**



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Unglazed Ceramic mosaic tile.
  - 2. Glazed wall tile.
  - 3. Waterproof membrane for tile installations.
  - 4. Thresholds installed as part of tile installations.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for monolithic slab finishes specified for tile substrates.
  - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
  - 3. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for cementitious backer units installed in gypsum wallboard assemblies.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Module Size: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499) plus joint width indicated.
- B. Facial Dimension: Nominal tile size as defined in ANSI A137.1.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
  - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.6.
- B. Load-Bearing Performance: For ceramic tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide installations rated for the following load-bearing performance level based on testing assemblies according to ASTM C 627 that are representative of those indicated for this Project:
  - 1. Heavy: Passes cycles 1 through 12.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of tile, mortar, grout, and other products specified.
- B. Tile Samples for Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual tiles or sections of tiles showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type and composition of tile indicated. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

- C. Grout Samples for Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual sections of grout showing the full range of colors available for each type of grout indicated.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed tile installations similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type, composition, and variety of tile from one source with resources to provide products from the same production run for each contiguous area of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying the Work.
- C. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
- D. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from one source and by a single manufacturer for each product:
  - 1. Stone thresholds.
  - 2. Waterproofing.

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement of ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.
- B. Prevent damage or contamination to materials by water, freezing, foreign matter, and other causes.
- C. Handle tile with temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

## **1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is completed and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are being maintained to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## **1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed, are packaged with protective covering for storage, and are identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed, for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Tile Products:
    - a. American Olean Tile Company.
    - b. Dal-Tile Corporation.
    - c. Florida Tile Industries, Inc.
    - d. United States Ceramic Tile Company.
    - e. Interceramics, USA.
  2. Tile-Setting and -Grouting Materials:
    - a. American Olean Tile Company.
    - b. Dal-Tile Corporation.
    - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - d. Mapei Corporation.

### **2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1, "Specifications for Ceramic Tile," for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
1. Provide tile complying with Standard Grade requirements, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For facial dimensions of tile, comply with requirements relating to tile sizes specified in Part 1 "Definitions" Article.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI standards referenced in "Setting Materials" and "Grouting Materials" articles.
- C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials complying with the following requirements:
1. Provide Architect's selections from manufacturer's full range of colors, textures, and patterns for products of type indicated.
  2. Provide tile trim and accessories that match color and finish of adjoining flat tile.
- D. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within the ranges selected during Sample submittals, blend tile in the factory and package so tile units taken from one package show the same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- E. Mounting: Where factory-mounted tile is required, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer, unless another mounting method is indicated.
1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for these kinds of installations and has a record of successful in-service performance.
- F. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating them with a continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.



## 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Unglazed Ceramic Mosaic Tile: Provide factory-mounted flat tile complying with the following requirements:
1. Composition: Porcelain.
  2. Module Size: 2 by 2 inches (50.8 by 50.8 mm) and as scheduled.
  3. Nominal Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.35 mm).
  4. Face: Plain with cushion edges.
  5. Colors: As selected by Architect from Price Group II.
  6. Accents: Provide pattern comprised of 4 accent colors as selected by Architect from Price Group IV or V. Pattern shall comprise 20 percent of total area. Refer to color schedule for percent of each color.
- B. Glazed Wall Tile: Provide flat tile complying with the following requirements:
1. Module Size: 4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm) and as scheduled.
  2. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  3. Face: Plain with cushion edges.
  4. Mounting: Factory back-mounted.
  5. Colors: As selected by Architect from Price Group II.
  6. Accents: Provide pattern comprised of 4 accent colors as selected by Architect from Price Group III or IV. Pattern shall comprise 20 percent of total area. Refer to color schedule for percent of each color.
- C. Trim Units: Provide tile trim units to match characteristics of adjoining flat tile and to comply with the following requirements:
1. Size: As indicated, coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable.
  2. Shapes: As follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
    - a. Base for Portland Cement Mortar Installations: Coved.
    - b. Base for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Coved.
    - c. Wainscot Cap for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose.
    - d. External Corners for Thin-Set Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose.
    - e. Internal Corners: Field-butt square corners, except with coved base and cap angle pieces designed to member with stretcher shapes.

## 2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Provide thresholds that are uniform in color and finish, fabricated to sizes and profiles indicated to provide transition between tile surfaces and adjoining finished floor surfaces.
1. Fabricate thresholds to heights indicated, but not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) above adjoining finished floor surfaces, with transition edges beveled on a slope of no greater than 1:2.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503 with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 per ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241 and with honed finish.
1. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.

## 2.5 WATERPROOFING FOR TILE INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Provide products that comply with ANSI A118.10 and the descriptions in this

Article.

- B. Polyethylene Sheet Waterproofing: Manufacturer's standard proprietary product consisting of composite sheets, 60 inches wide by a nominal thickness of 0.030, composed of an inner layer of chlorinated polyethylene sheet faced on both sides with laminated high-strength nonwoven polyester material, designed for embedding in latex-portland cement mortar, and as substrate for latex-portland cement mortar setting bed.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a) Polyethylene Sheet Waterproofing:
      - 1) "Nobleseal TS"; Noble Co. (distributed by H.B. Fuller Co.).

## **2.6 SETTING MATERIALS**

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4, composed as follows:
  - 1. Mixture of Dry-Mortar Mix and Latex Additive: Mixture of prepackaged dry-mortar mix and liquid-latex additive complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Latex Additive: Styrene butadiene rubber.
    - b. Equal to: Laticrete 3701.
    - c. For wall applications, provide nonsagging, latex-portland cement mortar complying with ANSI A118.4 for mortar of this type defined in Section F-2.1.2.

## **2.7 GROUTING MATERIALS**

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6 for materials described in Section H-2.4, composed as follows:
  - 1. Mixture of Dry-Grout Mix and Latex Additive: Mixture of factory-prepared, dry-grout mix and latex additive complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Unsanded Dry-Grout Mix: Dry-set grout complying with ANSI A118.6 for materials described in Section H-2.3, for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and narrower.
    - b. Sanded Dry-Grout Mix: Commercial portland cement grout complying with ANSI A118.6 for materials described in Section H-2.1, for joints 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and wider.
    - c. Latex additive (water emulsion) described below, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex additive manufacturer for use with job-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
      - 1) Equal to: Laticrete 1776.
    - d. Colors: Three (3) colors will be selected.

## **2.8 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS**

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated that comply with applicable requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  - 1. Use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S; Grade NS; Class 25;

Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide, intended for sealing interior ceramic tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and temperature extremes.

- D. Multipart, Pourable Urethane Sealant for Use T: ASTM C 920; Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
- E. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products which may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealants:
    - a. Dow Corning 786; Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. Sanitary 1700; GE Silicones.
    - c. Pecora 898 Sanitary Silicone Sealant; Pecora Corp.
    - d. Tremsil 600 White; Tremco, Inc.
  - 2. Multipart, Pourable Urethane Sealants:
    - a. Chem-Calk 550; Bostik.
    - b. Vulkem 245; Mameco International, Inc.
    - c. NR-200 Urexpan; Pecora Corp.
    - d. THC-900; Tremco, Inc.

## **2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Edge Strips: White-zinc-alloy terrazzo strips, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide at top edge with integral provision for anchorage to mortar bed or substrate, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Movement Profile Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shape, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for scheduled applications, soft black chlorinated polyethylene (CPE) exposed-edge material.
  - 1. Equal to: Schluter - DILEX-BWS 100.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corp.
      - 1) Equal to: Channel Screed, PCS-375-50.
  - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221ASTM B 221M, alloy 6063-T5.
  - 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with Latex-Portland Cement Mortar and finish materials specified.
- E. Temporary Protective Coating: Provide product indicated below that is formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; is compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products; and is easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
  - 1. Petroleum paraffin wax, fully refined and odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120 to 140 deg F (49 to 60 deg C) per ASTM D 87.

- F. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- G. Grout Sealer: Solvent-based, no-sheen, natural-look penetrating sealer for all sanded and non-sanded grout joints.
  - 1. Equal to: AQUA MIX, Inc., Sealer's Choice.

## **2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT**

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials and additives in accurate proportions. Do not use or add any water to mortar or grout when mixing, use only latex additive.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free from oil, waxy films, and curing compounds; and within flatness tolerances required by referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.
  - 3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust latter in consultation with Architect.
- B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone and are incompatible with tile-setting materials by using a terrazzo or concrete grinder, a drum sander, or a polishing machine equipped with a heavy-duty wire brush.
- B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors installed with dry-set or latex-portland cement mortars that comply with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
  - 1. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds per tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions to fill cracks, holes, and depressions.
  - 2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within the ranges selected during Sample

submittals, verify that tile has been blended in the factory and packaged so tile units taken from one package show the same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

- D. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type or needed to prevent adhesion or staining of exposed tile surfaces by grout, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by precoating them with a continuous film of temporary protective coating indicated below, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces:
1. Petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards in "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.
- B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation." Comply with TCA installation methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.
- C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form a complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are the same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.
1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets the same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
- F. Lay out tile wainscots to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- G. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Locate joints in tile surfaces directly above joints in concrete substrates.
  2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. Grout tile to comply with the requirements of the following tile installation standards:
1. For ceramic tile grouts (sand-portland cement, dry-set, commercial portland cement, and latex-portland cement grouts), comply with ANSI A108.10.

### **3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to produce a waterproof membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.

- B. Do not install tile over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

### **3.5 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install tile to comply with requirements in the Ceramic Tile Floor Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards.
  - 1. Installation Methods:
    - a. Tile over Concrete Surfaces: TCNA F112.
    - b. Tile over Concrete Surfaces (Thin Set): TCNA F113.
    - c. Tile over Concrete Surfaces with Waterproof Membrane: TCNA F121.
    - d. Tile over Coated Glass Mat Water Resistant Gypsum Backer Board (Thin Set): TCNA F146-07.
- B. Joint Widths: Install tile on floors with the following joint widths:
  - 1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- C. Back Buttering: For installations indicated, obtain 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards:
  - 1. Tile floors in wet areas.
- D. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds at locations indicated; set in same type of setting bed as abutting field tile, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Set thresholds in latex-portland cement mortar for locations where mortar bed would otherwise be exposed above adjacent nontile floor finish.
- E. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated or where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.
- F. Apply two (2) coats of grout sealer in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and recommendations. Remove sealer remaining on the tile within 3 to 5 minutes of application.

### **3.6 WALL TILE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install types of tile designated for wall installations to comply with requirements in the Ceramic Tile Wall Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI setting-bed standards.
  - 1. Installation Methods:
    - a. Tile over Cementitious Backer Unit Surfaces: TCNA W244.
    - b. Tile over Gypsum Board in Wet Areas: TCNA B415.
- B. Joint Widths: Install tile on walls with the following joint widths:
  - 1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  - 2. Wall Tile: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- C. Back Buttering: For installations indicated, obtain 100 percent mortar coverage by complying with applicable special requirements for back buttering of tile in referenced ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards:
  - 1. Tile wall installations in wet areas, including showers.
  - 2. Tile wall installations composed of tiles 8 by 8 inches (203 by 203 mm) or larger.

- D. Apply two (2) coats of grout sealer in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and recommendations. Remove sealer remaining on the tile within 3 to 5 minutes of application.

### **3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING**

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Unglazed tile must be cleaned with acid solutions or other cleaner permitted by tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions, prior to final sealer installation. Protect metal surfaces, cast iron, and vitreous plumbing fixtures from effects of acid cleaning. Flush surface with clean water before and after cleaning.
  - 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer that is acceptable to brick and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent it from clogging drains.
- B. Finished Tile Work: Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded, and otherwise defective tile work.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure tile is without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.
  - 2. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least 7 days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

**END OF SECTION 09 30 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete at ceilings.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AC: Articulation Class.
- B. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.
- C. LR: Light Reflectance coefficient.
- D. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Coordinate Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  - 4. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot (1:48).
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Acoustical Panel: Set of 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
  - 2. Exposed Suspension System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples of each type, finish, and color.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each acoustical panel ceiling.
- F. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.



## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.
- B. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide acoustical panel ceilings identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels with the following surface-burning characteristics complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84:
    - a. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- D. Seismic Standard: Provide acoustical panel ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
  - 1. CISCAs Guidelines for Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with CISCAs "Guidelines for Seismic Restraint of Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies--Seismic Zones 3 & 4."
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution.
  - 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

## **1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## **1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.
  - 3. Hold-Down Clips: Equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following manufacturers:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
    - b. USG Interiors, Inc.
    - c. Celotex Corporation, Architectural Ceilings Marketing Dept.

## **2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL**

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches (400 mm) away from test surface per ASTM E 795.
- B. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

## **2.3 WATER-FELTED, MINERAL-BASE ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING**

- A. Available Products (Type "A"):
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Cortega (769).

- B. Classification: Provide fire-resistance-rated panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted; and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Pattern: C (perforated, small holes)/D (fissured).
- C. Color: White.
- D. LR: Not less than 0.82.
- E. NRC: Not less than 0.55.
- F. CAC: Not less than 35.
- G. Edge Detail: Square.
- H. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15 mm).
- I. Size: 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1220 mm).

## **2.4 WATER-FELTED, MINERAL-BASE ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING**

- A. Available Products (Type "B"):
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Cortega (770).
- B. Classification: Provide fire-resistance-rated panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted; and pattern as follows:
  - 1. Pattern: C (perforated, small holes)/D (fissured).
- C. Color: White.
- D. LR: Not less than 0.82.
- E. NRC: Not less than 0.55.
- F. CAC: Not less than 33.
- G. Edge Detail: Square.
- H. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15 mm).
- I. Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm).

## **2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL**

- A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
- B. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.
- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1,

"Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated.

1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  - a. Type: Postinstalled expansion anchors.
  - b. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (0.005 mm) for Class SC 1 service condition.
- D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
  1. Zinc-Coated Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) diameter wire.
- E. Hanger Rods/Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- F. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide; formed with 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter bolts.
- G. Wire Rope: Wherever hangers are visible, such as at perimeter of acoustical clouds, provide 1-by-19 wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316. Provide with all necessary clips, clamps, and accessories required for a complete installation.
- H. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate seismic forces.
- I. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed and spaced to secure acoustical panels in-place.
  1. Seismic Clips: Provide 2" BERC seismic clips as manufactured by Armstrong and 7/8" wide perimeter wall moulding.

## **2.6 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING**

- A. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 (Z90) coating designation, with prefinished 15/16-inch- (24-mm-) wide metal caps on flanges.
  1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
  2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Butt-edge type.
  3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
  4. Cap Material: Steel cold-rolled sheet.
  5. Cap Finish: Painted white.

## **2.7 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM**

- A. Roll-Formed Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.

1. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
3. For narrow-face suspension systems, provide suspension system and manufacturer's standard edge moldings that match width and configuration of exposed runners.

## **2.8 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT**

- A. Available Products:
  1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:  
Pecora Corp; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.  
United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and Cisca's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal

- forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
  4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.66 m). Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension system runners and moldings.
  2. For reveal-edged panels on suspension system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
  3. For reveal-edged panels on suspension system members with box-shaped flanges, install panels with reveal surfaces in firm contact with suspension system surfaces

- and panel faces flush with bottom face of runners.
4. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
  5. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**END OF SECTION 09 51 00**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Vinyl composition tile (VCT).
  - 2. Resilient wall base and accessories.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of resilient floor tile required.
  - 1. Resilient Wall Base and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long, of each resilient product color and pattern required.
- D. Maintenance Data: For resilient products to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products identical to those tested for fire-exposure behavior per test method indicated by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C). Store tiles on flat surfaces.

**1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After postinstallation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).



- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor covering installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor covering installation.
- E. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## **1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish 1 box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.
  - 2. Resilient Wall Base and Accessories: Furnish not less than 10 linear feet (3 linear m) for every 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

### **2.2 COLORS AND PATTERNS**

- A. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### **2.3 VINYL COMPOSITION TILE**

- A. Vinyl Composition Tile (VCT): ASTM F 1066.
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.;
  - 2. Azrock Commercial Flooring, DOMCO;
  - 3. Congoleum Corporation;
  - 4. Mannington Mills, Inc.;
  - 5. Tarkett Inc.;
- B. Class: 2 (through-pattern tile).
- C. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
- D. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- E. Size: 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm).
- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm per ASTM E 648.

## **2.4 RESILIENT WALL BASE**

- A. Wall Base: ASTM F 1861.
  - 1. AFCO-USA, American Floor Products Company, Inc.;
  - 2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.;
  - 3. Burke Mercer Flooring Products;
  - 4. Johnsonite;
  - 5. Marley Flexco (USA), Inc.;
  - 6. Musson, R. C. Rubber Co.;
  - 7. Roppe Corporation;
- B. Type (Material Requirement): TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
- C. Group (Manufacturing Method): I (solid, homogeneous).
- D. Style: Cove (base with toe) and Straight (flat or toeless).
- E. Minimum Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- F. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).
- G. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- H. Outside Corners: Premolded.
- I. Inside Corners: Premolded.
- J. Surface: Smooth.

## **2.5 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY**

- A. Description, including but not limited to: Carpet bar for tackless installations, Carpet edge for glue-down applications, Nosing for carpet, Nosing for resilient floor covering, Reducer strip for resilient floor covering, and Joiner for tile and carpet.
  - 1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products;
  - 2. Johnsonite;
  - 3. Marley Flexco (USA), Inc.;
  - 4. Roppe Corporation;
- B. Material: Vinyl.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.

## **2.1 INSTALLATION MATERIALS**

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic cement based formulation provided or approved by resilient product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of width shown, of height required to

protect exposed edges of tiles, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
  - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
  - 3. Moisture Testing:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
- D. Use trowelable leveling and patching compound to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- E. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
  - 1. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
- F. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, and dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.3 TILE INSTALLATION**

- A. Lay out tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis.

- B. Match tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  - 1. Lay tiles with grain direction alternating in adjacent tiles (basket-weave pattern).
- C. Scribe, cut, and fit tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, door frames, thresholds, and nosings.
- D. Extend tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- E. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- F. Install tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern with pieces of tile installed on covers. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- G. Adhere tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### **3.4 RESILIENT WALL BASE INSTALLATION**

- A. Apply wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- B. Install wall base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- C. Tightly adhere wall base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- D. Do not stretch wall base during installation.
- E. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- F. Premolded Corners: Install premolded corners before installing straight pieces.

### **3.5 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION**

- A. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor coverings that would otherwise be exposed.

### **3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.

3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
  - a. Do not wash surfaces until after time period recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  1. Apply protective floor polish to horizontal surfaces that are free from soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes if recommended in writing by manufacturer.
    - a. Use commercially available product acceptable to manufacturer.
    - b. Coordinate selection of floor polish with Owner's maintenance service.
  2. Cover products installed on horizontal surfaces with undyed, untreated building paper until Substantial Completion.
  3. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over surfaces. Place hardboard or plywood panels over flooring and under objects while they are being moved. Slide or roll objects over panels without moving panels.

**END OF SECTION 09 65 19**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes carpet tile and carpet accessories as shown on the drawings and specified herein.
- B. General Contractor is directed to purchase and coordinate the installation of carpet tile through the State-wide contract with Wall 2 Wall Flooring, the State Carpet Contractor.
- C. Pre-determined prices for carpet tile, including installation, are available for State-owned facilities. Any recent modifications to the State-wide contract prices are to be itemized.
- D. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 09 Section "Resilient Tile Flooring" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance. Include installation methods.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
  - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
  - 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
  - 3. Type of installation.
  - 4. Pattern of installation.
  - 5. Pattern type, location, and direction.
  - 6. Pile direction.
  - 7. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  - 8. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
  - 2. Exposed Edge Stripping and Accessory: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples.
- D. Product Schedule: Use same room and product designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
- E. Maintenance Data: For carpet tile to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include the following:
  - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products

- and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the Floor Covering Installation Board or who can demonstrate compliance with its certification program requirements.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products with the critical radiant flux classification indicated in Part 2, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 648 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Product Options: Products and manufacturers named in Part 2 establish requirements for product quality in terms of appearance, construction, and performance. Other manufacturers' products comparable in quality to named products and complying with requirements may be considered.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 5, "Storage and Handling."

#### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.1, "Site Conditions; Temperature and Humidity."
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet tile until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- C. Do not install carpet tile over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tile, install carpet tile before installing these items.

#### **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Carpet Tile Warranty: Written warranty, signed by carpet tile manufacturer agreeing to replace carpet tile that does not comply with requirements or that fails within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, and delamination.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd. (8.3 sq. m).

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CARPET TILE (Type No. 1)**

- A. Approved Product:
  - 1. Mill: As scheduled.
- B. Performance Characteristics: As follows:
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
  - 2. Dry Breaking Strength: Not less than 100 lbf per ASTM D 2646.
  - 3. Resistance to Insects: Comply with AATCC-24.
  - 4. Colorfastness to Crocking: Not less than 4, wet and dry, per AATCC-165.
  - 5. Colorfastness to Light: Not less than 4 after 40 AFU (AATCC fading units) per AATCC-16.
  - 6. Antimicrobial Activity: Not less than 2-mm halo of inhibition for gram-positive bacteria; not less than 1-mm halo of inhibition for gram-negative bacteria; no fungal growth; per AATCC-174.

### **2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES (By State Carpet Contract)**

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Where required on other than raised access floor panels provide latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided by or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.
- D. Rubber Accessory Molding: Provide rubber accessory molding complying with the following:
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors produced for rubber accessory molding complying with requirements indicated.
  - 2. Product Description: Including but not limited to carpet edge for glue-down applications, carpet nosing, tile and carpet joiner.
  - 3. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated and as required.



## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION (By State Carpet Contract)**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for carpet tile installation and comply with requirements specified.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - 2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
  - 3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION (By State Carpet Contract)**

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 13, "Carpet Modules (Tiles)."
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- E. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

- F. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- G. Roll with appropriate roller for complete contact of carpet with mill-applied adhesive to sub-floor. Carpet to be securely adhered in accordance with ADA requirements (Section 4.5.3).

### **3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. (By State Carpet Contract): Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
  - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
  - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. (By General Contractor): Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 15, "Protection of Indoor Installations."
- C. (By General Contractor): Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 09 68 13**



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes painting work, interior and exterior. Work Includes, but is not limited to painting the following:
1. Exterior steel.
  2. Exterior metal mechanical units.
  3. Interior walls and ceilings.
  4. Interior steel rails and misc. metal.
  5. Exterior exposed metal flashing.
  6. Work includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), and of hangers, exposed steel and iron work, plug mold, electric panels, and primed metal surfaces of equipment installed under mechanical and electrical work, except as otherwise indicated. Field painting of a roof mounted mechanical units is part of this section.
- B. "Paint" as used herein means all coating systems materials, including primers, emulsions, enamels, stains, sealers and fillers, and other applied materials whether used as prime, intermediate or finish coats.
- C. Surfaces to be Painted: Except where natural finish of material is specifically noted as a surface not to be painted, paint all exposed surfaces whether or not colors are designated in "schedules". Where items or surfaces are not specifically mentioned, paint the same as similar adjacent materials or areas. If color or finish is not designated, Architect will select these from standard or custom colors and finishes. Multiple colors may be selected by the Architect for any type of paint system.
1. Surface preparation, priming and coats of paint specified are in addition to shop-priming and surface treatment specified under other sections of work.
  2. Walls behind scheduled coverings shall receive prime coat.
  3. If it can be seen, paint it.
- D. Following categories of work are not included as part of field-applied finish work.
1. Pre-Finished Items: Unless otherwise indicated, do not include painting when factory-finishing or installer-finishing is specified for such items as (but not limited to) metal toilet enclosures, prefinished partition systems, acoustic materials, architectural woodwork and casework, elevator entrance doors and frames, elevator equipment, and finished mechanical and electrical equipment, including light fixtures, switchgear and distribution cabinets.
  2. Concealed Surfaces: Unless otherwise indicated, painting is not required on surfaces such as walls or ceilings in concealed areas and generally inaccessible areas, foundation spaces, furred areas, utility tunnels, pipe spaces, duct shafts and elevator shafts.
  3. Finished Metal Surfaces: Unless otherwise indicated, metal surfaces of anodized aluminum, stainless steel, chromium plate, copper, bronze and similar finished materials will not require finish painting.
  4. Operating Parts: Unless otherwise indicated, moving parts of operating units, mechanical and electrical parts, such as valve and damper operators, linkages, sinkages, sensing devices, motor and fan shafts will not require finish painting.
  5. Do not paint over any code-required labels, such as Underwriters' Laboratories and

Factory Mutual, or any equipment identification, performance rating, name, or nomenclature plates.

- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Shop Primers: Unless otherwise specified, shop priming of ferrous metal items is included under various sections for structural steel, metal fabrications, hollow metal work and similar items.
    - a. Unless otherwise specified, shop priming of fabricated components such as architectural woodwork, wood casework and shop-fabricated or factory-built mechanical and electrical equipment or accessories is included under other sections of these specifications.
- D. Related Documents: Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division-1 Specification sections, apply to work of this section.

## **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including Paint label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
- B. Samples: Prior to beginning work, Architect will furnish color chips for surfaces to be painted. Use representative colors when preparing samples for review. Submit samples for Architect's review of color and texture only. Provide a listing of material and application for each coat of each finish sample.
  - 1. On 12" x 12" hardboard, provide two samples of each color and material, with texture to simulate actual conditions. Resubmit samples as requested by Architect until acceptable sheen, color, and texture is achieved.
  - 2. On actual wood surfaces, provide two 4" x 8" samples of natural and stained wood finish. Label and identify each as to location and application.
  - 3. On actual wall surfaces and other exterior and interior building components, duplicate painted finishes of prepared samples. Provide full-coat finish samples on at least 100 sq. ft. of surface, or as directed, until required sheen, color and texture is obtained; simulate finished lighting conditions for review of in-place work.
    - a. Final acceptance of colors will be from samples applied on the job.

## **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Provide primers and other undercoat paint produced by same manufacturer as finish coats. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer, and use only within recommended limits.
- B. Coordination of Work: Review other sections of these specifications in which prime paints are to be provided to ensure compatibility of total coatings system for various substrates. Upon request from other trades, furnish information or characteristics of finish materials provided for use, to ensure compatible prime coats are used.

## **1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE**

- A. Deliver materials to job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:
  - 1. Name or title of material.
  - 2. Fed. Spec. number, if applicable.
  - 3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.

4. Manufacturer's name.
  5. Contents by volume, for major pigment and vehicle constituents.
  6. Thinning instructions.
  7. Application instructions.
  8. Color name and number.
- B. Store materials not in actual use in tightly covered containers. Maintain containers used in storage of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
1. Protect from freezing where necessary. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take all precautions to ensure that workmen and work areas are adequately protected from fire hazards and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing and application of paints.

## **1.5 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. Apply water-base paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50°F and 90°F, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45°F and 95°F, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- C. Do not paint in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when relative humidity exceeds 85%, or to damp or wet surfaces, unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
1. Painting may be continued during inclement weather if areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by paint manufacturer during application and drying periods.
- D. Determine moisture content of surfaces to be painted by performing appropriate tests using a commercially available moisture meter. Apply paint only when surfaces are within limits specified by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURER**

- A. Approved Manufacturers:
1. ICI Paint Stores.
  2. PPG Industries, Pittsburgh Paints (Pittsburgh).
  3. Pratt and Lambert (P & L).
  4. The Sherwin-Williams Company (S-W).
  5. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  6. Kwal-Howells Paint.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Material Quality: Provide best quality grade of various types of coatings as regularly manufactured by acceptable paint materials manufacturers. Materials not displaying manufacturer's identification as a standard, best-grade product will not be acceptable.
- B. Proprietary names used to designate color or materials are not intended to imply that

products of named manufacturers are required to exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers.

- C. Federal Specifications establish minimum acceptable quality for paint materials. Provide written certification from paint manufacturer that materials provided meet or exceed these minimums.
- D. Manufacturer's products which comply with coating qualitative requirements of applicable Federal Specifications, yet differ in quantitative requirements, may be considered for use when acceptable to Architect. Furnish material data and manufacturer's certificate of performance to Architect for any proposed substitutions.
- E. Color Pigments: Pure, non-fading, applicable types to suit substrates and service indicated.
- F. Lead content in pigment, if any, is limited to contain not more than 0.06% lead, as lead metal based on the total non-volatile (dry-film) of paint by weight.
  - 1. This limitation is extended to interior surfaces and those exterior surfaces, such as stairs, decks, porches, railings, windows, and doors which are readily accessible to children under seven years of age.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Applicator must examine areas and conditions under which painting work is to be applied and notify Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to proper and timely completion of work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions have been correct in a manner acceptable to Applicator.
- B. Starting of painting work will be construed as Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within any particular area.
- C. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions otherwise detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. General: Perform preparation and cleaning procedures in accordance with paint manufacturer's instructions and as herein specified, for each particular substrate condition.
- B. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime as required. Notify Architect in writing of any anticipated problems in using the specified coating systems with substrates primed by others.
- C. Remove hardware, hardware accessories, machined surfaces, plates, lighting fixtures, and similar items in place and not to be finish-painted, or provide surface-applied protection prior to surface preparation and painting operations. Remove, if necessary, for complete painting of items and adjacent surfaces. Following completion of painting of each space or area, reinstall removed items.
- D. Clean surfaces to be painted before applying paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease prior to mechanical cleaning. Program cleaning and painting so that contaminants

from cleaning process will not fall onto wet, newly-painted surfaces.

- E. Cementitious Materials: Prepare cementitious surfaces to be painted by removing efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and by roughening as required to remove glaze.
  - 1. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces to be painted by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are found to be sufficiently alkaline to cause blistering and burning of finish paint, correct this condition before application of paint. Do not paint over surfaces where moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's printed directions.
  - 2. Clean concrete floor surfaces scheduled to be painted with a commercial solution or muriatic acid, or other etching cleaner. Flush floor with clean water to neutralize acid, and allow to dry before painting.
- F. Ferrous Metals: Clean ferrous surfaces, which are not galvanized or shop-coated, of oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale and other foreign substances by solvent or mechanical cleaning.
  - 1. Caulk fabrication joints in hollow metal door frames which paint application cannot bridge.
- G. Touch-up shop-applied prime coats wherever damaged or bare, where required by other sections of these specifications. Clean and touch-up with same type shop primer.
- H. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean free of oil and surface contaminants with non-petroleum based solvent.
- I. Wood: Clean wood surfaces to be painted of dirt, oil, or other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sandpaper smooth those finished surfaces exposed to view, and dust off. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer, before application of priming coat. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood-filler. Sandpaper smooth when dried.
  - 1. Prime, stain, or seal wood required to be job-painted immediately upon delivery to job. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of such wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, paneling.
  - 2. When transparent finish is required, use spar varnish for backpriming.
- J. Materials Preparation:
  - 1. Mix and prepare painting materials in accordance with manufacturer's directions.
  - 2. Maintain containers used in mixing and application of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 3. Stir materials before application to produce a mixture of uniform density, and stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain material before using.

### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. General: Apply paint in accordance with manufacturer's directions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
  - 1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes, are indicated in "schedules" of the contract documents.
  - 2. Provide finish coats which are compatible with prime paints used.
  - 3. Apply additional coats when undercoats, stains or other conditions show through final coat of paint, until paint film is of uniform finish, color and appearance. Give special attention to insure that surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds,



- and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
4. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Paint surfaces behind permanently-fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only before final installation of equipment.
  5. Paint interior surfaces of ducts, where visible through registers or grilles, with a flat, non-specular black paint.
  6. Paint back sides of access panels, and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
  7. Finish doors on tops, bottoms and side edges same as faces, unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
  9. Omit first coat (exterior faces of surfaces which have been shop-primed and touch-up painted, unless otherwise indicated).
- B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first-coat material to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
1. Allow sufficient time between successive coatings to permit proper drying. Do not recoat until paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and application of another coat of paint does not cause lifting or loss of adhesion of the undercoat.
  2. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply materials at not less than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate, to establish a total dry film thickness as indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by coating manufacturer.
- C. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to those items exposed to mechanical equipment rooms and in occupied spaces.
1. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Piping, pipe hangers, and supports.
    - b. Roof mounted mechanical units.
    - c. Ductwork, where exposed in occupied spaces.
    - e. Motor, mechanical equipment, and supports.
    - f. Accessory items.
  2. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Conduit and fittings.
- D. Prime Coats: Apply prime coat of material which is required to be painted or finished, and which has not been prime coated by others.
1. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat, to assure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- E. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide an opaque, smooth surface of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
- F. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture and coverage. Remove, refinish or repaint work not in compliance with specified requirements.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. The right is reserved by Owner to invoke the following material testing procedure at any time, and any number of times during period of field painting:
1. Owner will engage services of an independent testing laboratory to sample paint

being used. Samples of materials delivered to project site will be taken, identified and sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.

- a. Testing laboratory will perform appropriate tests for any or all of following characteristics: Abrasion resistance, apparent reflectivity, flexibility, washability, absorption, accelerated weathering, dry opacity, accelerated yellowness, recoating, skinning, color retention, alkali resistance and quantitative materials analysis.
- b. If test results show that material being used does not comply with specified requirements, Contractor may be directed to stop painting work, and remove non-complying paint; pay for testing; repaint surfaces coated with rejected paint; remove rejected paint from previously painted surfaces if, upon repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are non-compatible.

### 3.5 CLEAN-UP AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean-Up: During progress of work, remove from site discarded paint materials, rubbish, cans and rags at end of each work day.
  1. Upon completion of painting work, clean window glass and other paint spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by proper methods of washing and scraping, using care not to scratch or otherwise damage finished surfaces.
- B. Protection: Protect work of other trades, whether to be painted or not, against damage by painting and finishing work. Correct any damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as acceptable to Architect.
  1. Provide "Wet Paint" signs as required to protect newly-painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others for protection of their work, after completion of painting operations.
  2. At completion of work of other trades, touch-up and restore all damaged or defaced painted surfaces.
- C. Extra Stock: Deliver stock or maintenance materials to Owner. Furnish maintenance material matching products installed, packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.
  1. Paint: Furnish not less than one (1) full gallon for each color and type of paint installed.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. General: Provide the following Paint systems for the various substrates, as indicated.

1. **METAL (Aluminum)**

- a. Latex Systems
  - (1) Gloss Finish
    - 1st Coat: S-W DTM Acrylic Gloss Coating, B66 Series
    - 2nd Coat: S-W DTM Acrylic Gloss Coating, B66 Series (10 mils wet, 4 mils dry per coat)

2. **METAL (Galvanized)**

- a. Latex Systems
  - (1) Gloss Finish
    - 1st Coat: S-W DTM Acrylic Primer, B66W1 Series (10 mils wet, 5 mils dry per coat)
    - 2nd Coat: S-W DTM Acrylic Gloss Coating, B66 Series

3rd Coat: S-W DTM Acrylic Gloss Coating, B66 Series  
(10 mils wet, 4 mils dry per coat)

**3. METAL (Miscellaneous Iron, Ornamental Iron)**

a. Alkyd Systems

(1) Gloss Finish

1st Coat: S-W Kem Kromik Universal Metal Primer, B50Z Series (6 mils wet, 3 mils dry)  
2nd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, B54Z Series  
3rd Coat: S-W Industrial Enamel, B54Z Series (5 mils wet, 2 mils dry per coat)

**3.7 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE**

A. General: Provide the following paint systems for the various substrates, as indicated.

**1. METAL - (Galvanized)**

a. Latex Systems

(1) Semi-Gloss Finish

1st Coat: S-W DTM Acrylic Primer, B66W1 Series (10 mils wet, 5 mils dry per coat)  
2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Latex Semi-Gloss B31W200 Series  
3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Latex Semi-Gloss B31W200 Series (4 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry per coat)

**2. METAL - (Exposed Structural Steel, Joists, Beams, Misc. & Ornamental Iron, Doors and Door Frames, Non-Galvanized Metal)**

a. Latex Systems

(1) Semi-Gloss Finish

1st Coat: DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, B66W1 (6 mils wet, 3 mils dry)  
2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Latex Semi-Gloss B31W200 Series  
3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Latex Semi-Gloss B31W200 Series (4 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry per coat)

**3. DRYWALL (Walls, Ceilings, Gypsum Board, Etc.)**

a. Latex Systems

(1) Semi-Gloss Finish

1st Coat: S-W Preprite 200 Latex Wall Primer, B28W200 (4 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry)  
2nd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W200 Series  
3rd Coat: S-W ProMar 200 Latex Semi-Gloss, B31W200 Series (4 mils wet, 1.3 mils dry per coat)

b. Epoxy System (Water Base)

(1) Semi-Gloss Finish

1st Coat: S-W Preprite 200 Latex Wall Primer, B28W200 (4 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry)  
2nd Coat: S-W Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy, B70/B60V25

3rd Coat: S-W Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy, B70/B60V25  
(8 mils wet, 3 mils dry per coat)

- (2) Approved Manufacturer's
  - (a) Porter Paints
  - (b) Columbia Paint and Coatings

**4. DRYWALL (Behind Scheduled Wall Coverings, Tackable Wall Panels, Casework)**

- a. Latex Systems
  - (1) Semi-Gloss Finish
    - 1st Coat: S-W Preprite 200 Latex Wall Primer, B28W200  
(4 mils wet, 1.2 mils dry)

**5. CONCRETE SLABS (Floors not scheduled for applied finishes)**

- a. Primer: EPOPRIME WB by L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc. Apply at rate of 400 sq. ft. per gallon.
- b. 1st and 2nd Coat: Durathane HS/VOC, Moisture-Cured Polyurethane Sealer by L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc. Apply at rate of 300 sq.ft. per gallon.

**END OF SECTION 09 91 00**



## **DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

Section 10 28 13      Toilet and Bath Accessories



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Toilet and bath accessories.
  - 2. Underlavatory guards.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 10 Section "Toilet Compartments" for compartments and screens.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions and thicknesses, dimensions, profiles, fastening and mounting methods, specified options, and finishes for each type of accessory specified.
- B. Samples: For each accessory item to verify design, operation, and finish requirements.
  - 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Setting Drawings: For cutouts required in other work; include templates, substrate preparation instructions, and directions for preparing cutouts and installing anchoring devices.
- D. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required. Use designations indicated in the Toilet and Bath Accessory Schedule and room designations indicated on Drawings in product schedule.
- E. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Provide lists of replacement parts and service recommendations.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed to view in same areas, unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Product Options: Accessory requirements, including those for materials, finishes, dimensions, capacities, and performance, are established by specific products indicated in the Toilet and Bath Accessory Schedule.
  - 1. Products of other manufacturers listed in Part 2 with equal characteristics, as judged solely by Architect, may be provided.
  - 2. Do not modify aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. Where modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.



## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by disabled persons, proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering accessories that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Toilet and Bath Accessories:
    - a. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
    - b. American Specialties, Inc.
    - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
    - d. Bradley Corporation.
  - 2. Underlavatory Guards:
    - a. Brocar Products, Inc.
    - b. Truebro, Inc.

### **2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, with No. 4 finish (satin), in 0.0312-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, leaded and unleaded flat products; ASTM B 16 (ASTM B 16M), rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Sheet Steel: ASTM A 366/A 366M, cold rolled, commercial quality, 0.0359-inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness; surface preparation and metal pretreatment as required for applied finish.
- D. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180).
- E. Chromium Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service), nickel plus chromium electrodeposited on base metal.
- F. Galvanized Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- G. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, tamper and theft resistant when exposed, and of galvanized steel when concealed.

### **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. General: Names or labels are not permitted on exposed faces of accessories. On interior surface not exposed to view or on back surface of each accessory, provide printed,

waterproof label or stamped nameplate indicating manufacturer's name and product model number.

- B. Surface-Mounted Toilet Accessories: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with continuous stainless-steel hinge. Provide concealed anchorage where possible.
- C. Recessed Toilet Accessories: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units of all-welded construction, without mitered corners. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, stainless-steel hinge. Provide anchorage that is fully concealed when unit is closed.
- D. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Install grab bars to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

#### **3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation and verify that mechanisms function properly. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

#### **3.3 TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORY SCHEDULE**

- A. Mirror Unit: Where this designation is indicated, provide mirror unit complying with the following:
  - 1. Products: Available products include the following:
    - a. Bobrick, B-165 Series. Refer to drawings for sizes.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel, Channel-Framed Mirror: Fabricate frame from stainless-steel channels in manufacturer's standard satin or bright finish with square corners mitered to hairline joints and mechanically interlocked.
- B. Grab Bar: Where this designation is indicated, provide stainless-steel grab bar complying with the following:
  - 3. Products: Available products include the following:
    - a. Equal to: Bobrick, B-6106 Series.
  - 4. Stainless-Steel Nominal Thickness: Minimum 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
  - 5. Mounting: Exposed with manufacturer's standard flanges and anchors.
  - 6. Gripping Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard slip-resistant texture.
  - 7. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) for heavy-duty applications.

- C. Underlavatory Guard: Where this designation is indicated, provide underlavatory guard complying with the following:
1. Products: Available products include the following:
    - a. Truebro, Inc.
  2. Insulating Piping Coverings: White, antimicrobial, molded-vinyl covering for supply and drain piping assemblies intended for use at accessible lavatories to prevent direct contact with and burns from piping. Provide components as required for applications indicated with flip tops at valves that allow service access without removing coverings.

**END OF SECTION 10 28 13**

## **DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

Not Used



## **DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

Not Used



## **DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

Not Used





## **DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING SYSTEMS**

Section 14 42 00

Wheelchair Lifts



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vertical platform lifts.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in concrete.
  - 2. Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" for runway-enclosure door hardware, including monitored, electric door strikes if not included in lift work.
  - 3. Division 09 painting Sections for field painting of lift equipment.
  - 4. Division 23 Sections for mechanical ventilation of fully enclosed exterior lifts with transparent walls.
  - 5. Division 26 Sections for electrical service to lifts, including fused disconnect switches and emergency or auxiliary power supply.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, dimensions, electrical characteristics, safety features, controls, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each lift. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Selection: For surfaces and components with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

- E. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by lift manufacturer certifying that runway, ramp or pit, and dimensions as shown on Drawings and that electrical service as shown and specified are adequate for lift being provided.
- F. Inspection and Acceptance Certificates and Operating Permits: As required by authorities having jurisdiction for normal, unrestricted use of lifts.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lift to include in operation and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. Parts list with sources indicated.
  - 2. Recommended parts inventory list.
- H. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- I. Continuing maintenance proposal.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: In addition to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, comply with ASME A18.1, "Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts."
- C. Fire-Rated, Runway-Enclosure Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at as close to neutral pressure as possible according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Temperature-Rise Limit: Provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of lifts that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### **1.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of lift Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as

required for proper lift operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

- B. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M; standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated or required by structural loads.
- D. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel (CS), Type B, exposed, matte finish.
- E. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel (CS), Type B, pickled.
- F. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) zinc coating,
- G. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:
  - 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
  - 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- H. Inserts: Furnish required concrete and masonry inserts and similar anchorage devices for installing structural members, guide rails, machines, and other lift components where installation of devices is specified in another Section.
- I. Expansion Anchors: Anchor-bolt-and-sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain a load equal to 10 times the load imposed as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  - 2. Material: Group 1, Alloy 304 or Alloy 316, stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M) and ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
- J. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107.

### **2.2 VERTICAL PLATFORM LIFTS**

- A. Vertical Platform Lifts: Manufacturer's standard preengineered lift systems as indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Garaventa Accessibility.
  - b. Savaria Corporation.
  - c. ThyssenKrupp Access; a ThyssenKrupp company.
- B. Platform Size: 36 by 48 inches (914 by 1200 mm).
- C. Door Operation and Clear Opening Width: Low-energy, power-operated doors that remain open for 20 seconds minimum; end door with minimum 32-inch (815-mm) clear opening width.
- D. Rated Speed: 12 fpm (0.06 m/s).
- E. Power Supply: 120 V, 60 Hz, 1 phase.
- F. Emergency Operation: Provide emergency manual operation to raise or lower units in case of malfunction or power loss.
- G. Self-Supporting Units: Support vertical loads of units only at base, with lateral support only at landing levels.
- H. Runway Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard enclosure assembly.
  1. Runway Enclosure: Rectangular steel-tube frame with flush steel-sheet panels.
  2. Runway-Enclosure Doors: Rectangular steel-tube frames with flush steel-sheet panels.
- I. Platform: Galvanized-steel sheet with black rubber flooring.
- J. Platform Enclosure and Door: Rectangular steel-tube frame with flush steel-sheet panels.
- K. Platform Top: Provide a non-load-bearing top, matching construction of enclosure walls. Permanently mark top to indicate that it cannot sustain a load.
- L. Retractable Ramp: Provide ramp matching platform to provide transition from lower floor to lift platform. Ramp lowers to floor automatically when lifts reach lower landing and door opens. Ramp rises automatically when lift control is activated for lift to leave lower landing.
  1. Ramp Size: End ramps a minimum of 32 inches (815 mm) wide; length as required for slope.
  2. Ramp Slope: Maximum 1:12.
  3. Ramp Finish: Finish ramps to match lift platform.

## **2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## **2.4 FINISHES**

- A. Steel and Galvanized-Steel Factory Finish:
  - 1. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard, thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with a cured film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
  - 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, critical dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables within housings of units or building construction. Do not install conduit exposed to view in finished spaces. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- B. Coordinate runway doors with platform travel and positioning, for accurate alignment and minimum clearance between platforms, runway doors, sills, and door frames.
- C. Position sills accurately and fill space under sills solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- D. Coordinate platform doors with platform travel and positioning.
- E. Adjust stops for accurate stopping and leveling at each landing, within required tolerances.
  - 1. Leveling Tolerance: 1/4 inch (6 mm) up or down, regardless of load and direction of travel.
- F. Adjust retractable ramps to meet maximum allowable slope and change-in-elevation requirements, and to lie fully against landing surfaces.
- G. Lubricate operating parts of lift, including drive mechanism, guide rails, hinges, safety devices, and hardware.



- H. Test safety devices and verify smoothness of required protective enclosures and fascias

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Acceptance Testing: On completion of lift installation and before permitting use of lifts, perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by ASME A18.1 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Operating Test: In addition to above testing, load lifts to rated capacity and operate continuously for 30 minutes between lowest and highest landings served. Readjust stops, signal equipment, and other devices for accurate stopping and operation of system.
- C. Advise Owner, Architect, and authorities having jurisdiction in advance of dates and times tests are to be performed on lifts.

### **3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lifts. Include a review of emergency systems and emergency procedures to be followed at time of operational failure and other building emergencies.
- B. Check operation of lifts with Owner's personnel present and before date of Substantial Completion. Determine that operating systems and devices are functioning properly.
- C. Check operation of lifts with Owner's personnel present not more than one month before end of warranty period. Determine that operating systems and devices are functioning properly.

**END OF SECTION 14 42 00**

## **DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL**

Section 15010	General Requirements
Section 15050	Basic Materials & Methods
Section 15080	Mechanical Insulation
Section 15140	Domestic Water Piping
Section 15145	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
Section 15150	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
Section 15155	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
Section 15183	Refrigerant Piping
Section 15195	Facility Natural-Gas Piping
Section 15410	Plumbing Fixtures
Section 15486	Water Heaters
Section 15530	Furnaces
Section 15550	Breeching Chimneys and Stacks
Section 15671	Condensing Units
Section 15815	Metal Ducts
Section 15820	Duct Accessories
Section 15838	Exhaust Fans
Section 15855	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles
Section 15900	HVAC Instrumentation and Controls
Section 15950	Testing, Adjusting and Balancing



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 GENERAL**

- A. General Conditions and Division 01 apply to this Division.

**1.2 SCOPE**

- A. Includes -

1. Furnish all labor, materials, and equipment necessary for the completion of the mechanical and plumbing scope of work.
2. Furnish and install all motors specified in this Division and be responsible for the proper operation of electrical powered equipment furnished by this Division.
3. Furnish exact location of electrical connections and information on motor controls to Division 16.
4. Mechanical Contractor shall obtain the services of independent Test and Balance Agency.
5. Placing the air conditioning, heating, ventilating, and exhaust systems into full operation and continuing their operation during each working day of testing and balancing.
6. Making changes in pulleys, belts, and dampers, or adding dampers, as required for the correct balance as recommended by Balancing Contractor at no additional cost to Owner.
7. Air balance, final adjustment and test run.
8. The satisfactory performance of the completed systems is a requirement of this specification.

- B. Related Work Specified Elsewhere

1. Conduit, line voltage wiring, outlets, and disconnect switches specified in Division 16.
2. Magnetic starters and thermal protective devices (heaters) not a factory mounted integral part of packaged equipment are specified in Division 16.

**1.3 SITE OBSERVATION**

- A. The Contractor shall examine the site and understand the conditions which may affect the performance of work of this Division before submitting proposals for this work.

- B. No subsequent allowance for time or money will be considered for any consequence related to failure to examine existing site conditions.

#### **1.4 DRAWINGS**

- A. Mechanical drawings show general arrangement of piping, ductwork, equipment, etc; however, locations are to be regarded as shown diagrammatically only. Follow as closely as actual building construction and work of other trades will permit.
- B. Because of the small scale of mechanical drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories which may be required. Investigate existing structural and finished conditions affecting this work and arrange work accordingly, providing such fittings, valves, and accessories required to meet conditions.
- C. If changes in location of piping, equipment, ducts, etc. are required due to lack of coordination of work under this division, such changes shall be made without charge. Contractor shall review drawings with local and state agencies having jurisdiction and any changes required by them shall be brought to the attention of the Architect prior to bidding or commencement of work.

#### **1.5 CODE REQUIREMENTS, FEES, AND PERMITS**

- A. The work shall be installed in accordance with the following applicable codes, ordinances and standards unless otherwise specified. The codes and standards shall include but not be limited to and be of the latest and current editions.
  - 1. American Boiler and Affiliated Industries (AB and AI)
  - 2. American Gas Association (AGA)
  - 3. Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA)
  - 4. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  - 5. Air Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute (ARI)
  - 6. American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) - ASHRAE 90.1-2004
  - 7. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
  - 8. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM)
  - 9. American Standards Association (ASA)
  - 10. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
  - 11. American Welding Society (AWS)
  - 12. Associated Air Balance Council (AABC)
  - 13. Heat Exchange Institute (HEI)
  - 14. Hydraulic Institute (HI)
  - 15. BR
  - 16. National Electrical Code (NEC)
  - 17. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
  - 18. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning contractors National Association (SMACNA)
  - 19. Underwriters Laboratories (UL)
  - 20. International Building Code (IBC) 2006 Ed

21. International Mechanical Code (IMC) 2006 Ed
22. International Plumbing Code (IPC) with Utah Amendments 2006 Ed\
23. International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) 2006 Ed
24. Utah State Safety Orders (OSHA/UOSH)
25. Utah Fire Rating Bureau
26. Utah Boiler and Pressure Vessel Law
27. Utah Air Conservation Regulations/Waste Disposal regulations.
28. ASHRAE Ventilation STD.62-2004

- B. Should drawings conflict with any code, the code shall govern. If drawings and specifications establish a quality exceeding the code, the drawings and specifications shall govern. If conflicts do exist among the drawings, specifications and codes, the same shall be brought to the attention of the Architect writing prior to bidding, otherwise Contractor shall comply with applicable codes.
- C. The latest edition of all codes shall be used.
- D. Contractor shall give all notices, obtain all necessary permits, file necessary plans, prepare documents and obtain approvals, and pay all fees required for completion of the mechanical and plumbing work outlined in this Division of the specifications and shown on the Mechanical Drawings.

## **1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Upon completion of work and before final payment, Contractor shall furnish and deliver to the Owner, through the Architect, installation, operation and maintenance manuals with instructions for all new materials and equipment used in the building. The contractor shall provide three (3) hard copies of the manuals, and three (3) CD's with electronic copies of the manuals. Electronic information shall be .PDF format. The CD's shall include the same information as the hard copies, and shall be organized in the same manner with electronic bookmarks for each section. CD case and the CD itself shall be labeled the same as the hard copies of the manuals.
- B. Bind Operation and Maintenance Manual for Mechanical Systems in a hard-backed piano hinge loose-leaf binder with strong sturdy cover. The project name shall be on the spine and the front of the binder. The front of the binder shall include the following information:

OPERATION  
AND  
MAINTENANCE  
MANUAL  
for MECHANICAL SYSTEMS of  
(Name of Project)  
(Location of Project)  
(Date of Project Award)  
(Name of Architect)

C. Introduction

1. Title page including name of project, project number, date awarded and date of substantial completion.
2. Second page shall contain the names, phone numbers and addresses of Architect, Consulting Engineers, Mechanical Contractor, and General Contractor.
3. Third page shall include a Table of Contents for the entire manual.

D. First Section - Summary information including:

1. First page shall contain the contractor's warranties.
2. Second page shall contain a list of names, addresses and phone numbers of contractors and all sub-contractors and work to which each was assigned.
3. Final page or pages shall contain an equipment list. The list shall contain each item of equipment or material for which a submittal was required giving ID or tag no as contained on the drawings make and model No. Serial No. Identification No. Location in building, function along with the name, address, and phone number of the supplier.

E. Second Section - Mechanical Equipment O&M data including:

1. Mechanical maintenance schedule, including a lubrication list when necessary.
2. Mechanical Equipment Operation and Maintenance Data including:
  - a. Equipment descriptions
  - b. Detailed installation instruction, operating and maintenance instructions. Instructions include in a step by step manner identifying start-up, operating, shutdown and emergency action sequence sufficiently clear so a person unfamiliar with the equipment could perform its operations.
  - c. Equipment drawings, performance curves, operating characteristics, etc.
  - d. Name addresses and phone number of manufacturer, fabricator and local vender clearly printed or stamped on cover.
  - e. Complete parts listing which include catalog number, serial number, contract number or other accurate provision for ordering replacement and spare parts.
  - f. Certified drawings, where applicable, showing assembly of parts and general dimensions.
3. Approved Mechanical submittals

F. Third Section - Plumbing Equipment O&M data including:

1. Section shall contain general product catalog cuts, as well as exploded view drawings with parts lists for all valves and other items with multiple parts.
2. Approved Plumbing submittals

G. Fourth Section - Controls O&M data including:

1. Sequence of Operation
  2. Description of each operating system included location of switches, breakers, thermostats, and control devices. Provide a single line diagram, showing set points, normal operating parameters for all loads, pressures, temperatures and flow check points; Describe all alarms and cautions for operation.
  3. Provide schematic control diagrams, panel diagrams, wiring diagrams, etc. for each separate fan system, chilled water system, hot water system, exhaust air system, pumps, etc. Each control diagram shall show a schematic representation of mechanical equipment and location of start-stop switches, insertion thermostats, thermometers, pressure gauges, automatic valves, etc. The correct reading for each control instrument shall be marked on the diagram.
- H. The Fifth Section shall contain a complete air and water test and balance report. The report shall contain the name, address and phone number of the agency. It shall also include:
1. Floor plans showing all air openings and thermometer locations clearly marked and cross referenced with data sheets. Format may be 8 1/2 x 11 or 11x14 if legible.
  2. Data sheets showing amount of air and water at each setting. See sections 15950.
  3. List of equipment with date of last calibration.
- I. Drawings and reproducible masters of drawings as required in individual specification sections, are not to be bound in volumes but are to be delivered separate with the maintenance manuals.
- J. See the following checklist for assistance in assembling manual:

Item #	Description	Y, N, or NA
1.	3 ring heavy duty binder with Project name, number and date on cover and project name on spine.	
2.	O&M manual on CD (with label on CD matching label on manual). Electronic copy shall be a PDF file with bookmarks that match the tabs in the hard copy.	
3.	Title Page [including project name, number, address, date awarded, date of substantial completion]	
4.	Second Page Contact List [including architect (if applicable), mechanical engineer, mechanical contractor, and general contractor (if applicable)]	
5.	Table of Contents	
<b>6.</b>	<b>Section 1 - Summary</b>	
A.	Warranty	
B.	Mechanical's Sub-contractor List	
C.	Vendor List	
D.	Equipment List	
<b>7.</b>	<b>Section 2 – Mechanical Equipment</b>	
A.	Maintenance Schedule (including lubrication list)	
B.	Mechanical Equipment O&M Data (for each piece of equipment submitted) per	



	specifications	
C.	Approved mechanical submittals	
<b>8.</b>	<b>Section 3 – Plumbing Equipment</b>	
A.	Plumbing equipment O&M data	
B.	Approved plumbing submittals	
<b>9.</b>	<b>Section 4 – Controls</b>	
A.	Sequence of Operation	
B.	Controls diagrams	
C.	Controls Equipment	
<b>10.</b>	<b>Section 5 – Test and Balance Report</b>	
A.	Complete Test and Balance Report per specifications	

## 1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Contractor shall instruct building maintenance personnel in the operation and maintenance of the installed mechanical systems utilizing the Operation and Maintenance Manual when so doing.
- B. Minimum instruction periods shall be as follows -
  - 1. Mechanical - Two hours.
  - 2. Plumbing - Two hours.
  - 3. Temperature Control - Four hours.
- C. Instruction periods shall occur before final site observation when systems are properly working and before final payment is made.
- D. None of these instructional periods shall overlap each other.
- E. An additional four hours of instruction will be provided by each contractor, after 60 days of system operation by owner to insure proper system operation and answer questions.

## 1.8 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Contractor shall keep an up-to-date set of mechanical and plumbing drawings in his custody showing all changes in red, clearly defined and neatly drafted by him. At the end of construction, he shall turn these drawings over to the Architect. Record drawings must be completed and submitted prior to final site observation

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(Not Used)

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**  
(Not Used)

END OF SECTION 15010



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Sleeves.
  - 5. Escutcheons.
  - 6. Mechanical demolition.
  - 7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Dielectric fittings.
  - 2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
- B. Welding certificates.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- B. All materials, piping, etc. shall be new, and domestically made of the best commercial quality obtainable, consistent with specified materials and for the purpose or function intended unless specifically approved in writing prior to bid.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

#### **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS**

- A. Refer to individual Division 15 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### **2.2 JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to individual Division 15 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.

## **2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Eclipse, Inc.
    - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
    - h. Prior Approved Equal.

## **2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Linkseal.
    - f. Prior Approved Equal.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## **2.5 SLEEVES**

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

## **2.6 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.

## **2.7 GROUT**

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 MECHANICAL DEMOLITION**

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove mechanical systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - 4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.



- B. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### **3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Drawings do not show every offset, or bend that may be required. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors where indicated on drawings and where penetrating will be visible to public.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
  4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
- Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### **3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.

- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

### **3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### **3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

END OF SECTION 15050



## **SECTION 15075 - MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
  - 1. Equipment nameplates.
  - 2. Equipment signs.
  - 3. Access panel and door markers.
  - 4. Pipe markers.
  - 5. Duct markers.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system. Furnish extra copies (in addition to mounted copies) to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Metal, with data engraved or stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment.
  - 1. Data:
    - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
    - c. Labels of tested compliances.
  - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
  - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
  - 1. Data: Instructions for operation of equipment and for safety procedures.
  - 2. Engraving: Manufacturer's standard letter style, 1/4" or larger with terms to match equipment identification.
  - 3. Thickness: 1/8 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- C. Access Panel and Door Markers: 1/16" thick, engraved laminated plastic, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to identification. Provide 1/8" center hole for attachment.
  - 1. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.

### **2.2 PIPING IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.
  - 1. Colors: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
  - 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
  - 4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers at least three times letter height and of length required for label.

5. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Markers: Plastic with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, self-adhesive back.

## **2.3 DUCT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. Duct Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include direction and quantity of airflow and duct service (such as supply, return, and exhaust). Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL**

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 15 Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have nameplate or has nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, etc.
  2. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
  3. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
  4. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  5. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- B. Install equipment signs with screws or permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Locate signs where accessible and visible.
1. Identify mechanical equipment with black equipment markers with white lettering.
  2. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  3. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
  4. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:



- a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
  - b. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, etc.
  - c. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
  - d. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
  - e. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  - f. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
  - g. Tanks and pressure vessels.
  - h. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- C. Install access panel markers with screws on equipment access panels.

### **3.3 PIPING IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install manufactured pipe markers indicating service on each piping system. Install with flow indication arrows showing direction of flow.
- B. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations as follows:
- 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and nonaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced markers.

### **3.4 DUCT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install duct markers with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
- 1. Green: For cold-air supply ducts.
  - 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  - 3. Blue: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
  - 4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
  - 5. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

- B. Locate markers near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.

### **3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices and glass frames of valve schedules.

END OF SECTION 15075



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulation Materials:
    - a. Calcium silicate.
    - b. Flexible elastomeric.
    - c. Mineral fiber.
  - 2. Insulating cements.
  - 3. Adhesives.
  - 4. Lagging adhesives.
  - 5. Factory-applied jackets.
  - 6. Field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Tapes.
  - 8. Securements.
  - 9. Corner angles.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 15 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application, duct Installer for duct insulation application, and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping and ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

#### **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Industrial Insulation Group (The); Thermo-12 Gold.
    - b. Prior approved equal.
  - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - 3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
  - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.
    - d. Armaflex
    - e. Prior approved equal.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Duct insulation shall have a minimum R value = 5 for installation in an unconditioned space, and a minimum R value = 8 for installation outdoors. Provide a weather protective sheet metal jacket for outdoor installation.
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.
    - f. Prior approved equal.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000 Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
    - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
    - f. Prior approved equal.
  2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A.

## **2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS**

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Insulco, Division of MFS, Inc.; Triple I.
    - b. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; Super-Stik.
    - c. Prior approved equal.

## **2.3 ADHESIVES**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-97.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27/81-93.
    - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 290.

- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
  - f. Prior approved equal.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aeroseal.
    - b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. RBX Corporation; Rubatex Contact Adhesive.
    - e. Prior approved equal.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
    - f. Prior approved equal.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns-Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Red Devil, Inc.; Celulon Ultra Clear.
    - e. Speedline Corporation; Speedline Vinyl Adhesive.
    - f. Prior approved equal.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-52.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-42.
    - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 130.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 11-30.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; 136.
    - f. Prior approved equal.



2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct, equipment, and pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

## **2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## **2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto PVC Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
    - e. Prior approved equal.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
  5. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

## 2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
    - e. Prior approved equal.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
    - e. Prior approved equal.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0555.
    - b. Compac Corp.; 130.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 370 White PVC tape.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
    - e. Prior approved equal.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6 mils.

4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
  - b. Compac Corp.; 120.
  - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 488 AWF.
  - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  - e. Prior approved equal.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Products; Bands.
  - b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
  - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.
  - d. Prior approved equal.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

## 2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or 316.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.

- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.

### **3.4 PENETRATIONS**

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

### **3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION**

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and

- irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### **3.6 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:



1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

### **3.7 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION**

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### **3.8 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION**

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
- E. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory-

or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### **3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### **3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
  2. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
  3. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations

of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return, Air.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return, Air.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
  - 6. Indoor, concealed exhaust.
  - 7. Indoor, exposed exhaust.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
  - 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
  - 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 5. Flexible connectors.
  - 6. Vibration-control devices.
  - 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### **3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Concealed, low pressure, round rectangular, and flat-oval exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Rectangular, low pressure, supply-air duct insulation shall be lined per Section "Metal Ducts".
- D. Rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be lined per Section "Metal Ducts".

### 3.13 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.
  4. Vertical roof drain piping.
- C. Piping System insulation:
1. Hydronic Piping - Mineral Fiber, per chart.
  2. Domestic Cold Water Piping -Mineral Fiber, 1/2"
  3. Domestic Hot Water Piping -Mineral Fiber, per chart
  4. Horizontal Roof Drain Piping - Mineral Fiber, 1/2".
  5. Refrigerant Piping - Flexible elastomeric, 1".

### 3.14 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Minimum Pipe Insulation Thickness from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1-2004, with modifications per 2006 IECC

Fluid Design Operating Temp. Range (EF)	Insulation Conductivity		Nominal				
	Conductivity BtuXin./(hXft <sup>2</sup> XEF)	Mean Rating Temp. EF	<1	1 to <1-1/2	1-1/2 to <4	4 to <8	≥8
<b>Heating Systems (Steam, Steam Condensate, and Hot Water)</b>							
>350	0.32-0.34	250	2.5	3.0	3.0	4.0	4.0
251-350	0.29-0.32	200	1.5	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0
201-250	0.27-0.30	150	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
141-200	0.25-0.29	125	1.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	2.0
105-140	0.22-0.28	100	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
<b>Domestic and Service Hot Water Systems</b>							
105+	0.22-0.28	100	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
<b>Cooling Systems (Chilled Water, Brine, and Refrigerant)</b>							
40-60	0.22-0.28	100	0.5	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
<40	0.22-0.28	100	0.5	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5

### **3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 15080

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
  - 2. Flexible connectors.
  - 3. Escutcheons.
  - 4. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - 5. Wall penetration systems.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Seismic Performance: Domestic water piping and support and installation shall withstand effects of earthquake motions determined according to 2006 IBC.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following products:
  - 1. Specialty valves.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
  - 5. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
- B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.



## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without Owner's written permission.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
  - 1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
  - 2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
  - 3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
  - 4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

### **2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.4 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
- B. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with setscrews.
- C. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
- D. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew or spring clips.
- E. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- F. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge, setscrew or spring clips.
- G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## **2.5 SLEEVES**

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
- G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## **2.6 SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.

3. Metraflex, Inc.
  4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  5. Prior approved equal.
- B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## **2.7 GROUT**

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EARTHWORK**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with

requirements in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.

- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- O. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- P. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- Q. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- R. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- S. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- T. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- U. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.

- V. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

### **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### **3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
  - 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
  - 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.

- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.

### **3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 15 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
  - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### **3.8 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION**

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
  - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  - 2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips.
  5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips.
  6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.
- C. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  2. Insulated Piping: Split plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and spring clips.
  3. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  4. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split casting, cast brass with chrome-plated finish.
  5. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
  6. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split plate, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips.
  7. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting floor plate.

### **3.9 SLEEVE INSTALLATION**

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.



- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Steel pipe.
  2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe.
    - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
    - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
  3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
    - a. PVC pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
    - c. Exception: Sleeves are not required for water supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
  4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Steel pipe Insert type.
  5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
    - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
    - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
    - d. Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
  6. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
    - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestop materials and installations.

### **3.10 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### **3.11 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- A. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
- B. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

### **3.12 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### **3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:
  - 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 100 psig, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.14 ADJUSTING**

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### **3.15 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

- 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
  - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
- c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### **3.16 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### **3.17 VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
  - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 15140

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 4. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
  - 5. Strainers.
  - 6. Hose bibbs.
  - 7. Wall hydrants.
  - 8. Drain valves.
  - 9. Water hammer arresters.
  - 10. Air vents.
  - 11. Trap-seal primer valves.
  - 12. Trap-seal primer systems.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction,

and marked for intended use.

B. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS**

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Co.
  - b. Cash Acme.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
  - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
  - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - i. Prior approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
  - b. Cash Acme.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. Legend Valve.
  - e. MIFAB, Inc.
  - f. Prier Products, Inc.
  - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - k. Prior approved equal.

2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

## 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

### A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Co.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - d. Flomatic Corporation.
  - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - g. Prior approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; steel with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

### B. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - d. Prior approved equal.
3. Standard: ASSE 1052.
4. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
5. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.



6. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

## **2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES**

### **A. Water Regulators:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - f. Prior approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

## **2.4 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES**

### **A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - c. Leonard Valve Company.
  - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
  - e. Simmons Industries, Inc.
  - f. Or equal by.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Type: Exposed-mounting, thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Tempered-Water Setting: 110E F.
10. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: See drawings.

11. Pressure Drop at Design Flow Rate: See Drawings.
12. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.
13. Piping Finish: Copper.
14. Cabinet: Factory-fabricated, stainless steel, for surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

**B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Sloan.
  - b. Watts.
  - c. Prior approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 110E F.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: Coordinate with 15410.

## **2.5 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

**A. Y-Pattern Strainers:**

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## **2.6 HOSE BIBBS**

**A. Hose Bibbs:**

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.

9. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## **2.7 WALL HYDRANTS**

### **A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Prier Products, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - j. Or equal by.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25).
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

## **2.8 DRAIN VALVES**

### **A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:**

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.

5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

## **2.9 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS**

### **A. Water Hammer Arresters:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. PPP Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - j. Or equal by.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## **2.10 AIR VENTS**

### **A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:**

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

## **2.11 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES**

### **A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc.

- b. PPP Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - f. Or equal by.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
  - 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
  - 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.
- B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - b. Or equal by.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum, trap makeup connection.
  - 3. Size: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) minimum.
  - 4. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
  - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Install on hot water recirculating lines where they connect to hot water lines.
- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install thermometers.
  - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve.
- G. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- H. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- I. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- J. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- K. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### **3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 4. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 5. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 6. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
  - 7. Trap-seal primer systems.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 15145

## **SECTION 15150 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water Insert pressure.
  - 2. Sanitary Sewer, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.



## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### **2.2 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

### **2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra-Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### **2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) ANACO.
    - 2) Fernco, Inc.
    - 3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
    - 4) Mission Rubber Co.
    - 5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
    - 6) Prior approved equal.
2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) ANACO.
    - 2) Clamp-All Corp.
    - 3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
    - 4) Mission Rubber Co.
    - 5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
    - 6) Prior approved equal.
3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
  - a. Manufacturers:
    - 1) MG Piping Products Co.
    - 2) Prior approved equal.

## **2.5 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- B. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.

## **2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
  1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.

1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Cellular-Core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Series PS 100.
1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Series PS 100 sewer and drain pipe.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXCAVATION**

- A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### **3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, and heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping shall be any of the following:
1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Cellular-core ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  4. Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be any of the following:
1. Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed calking materials; joints.
  2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
  3. Cellular-core ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  4. Cellular-core PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  5. Cellular-core, Sewer and Drain Series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 2 Section "Sanitary Sewerage."
- B. Plastic piping is not allowed in ceiling return plenums. Where piping is exposed to ceiling plenums, cast iron shall only be allowed.
- C. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- D. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
- E. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- F. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary force-main piping.
- G. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- H. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- I. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Sovent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and sovent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- N. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- O. Install ABS soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- P. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- Q. Install underground ABS and PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- R. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

### **3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.

### **3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration Controls and Seismic Restraints."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports." Install the following:
1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:

- a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
- 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches.
- J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.6 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

### **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### **3.8 CLEANING**

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### **3.9 PROTECTION**

- A. Exposed ABS and PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

END OF SECTION 15150





**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Air-admittance valves.
  - 4. Roof flashing assemblies.
  - 5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
  - 6. Flashing materials.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- E. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer, rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Air admittance valves.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

## **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
    - g. Prior approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
  - 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  - 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, cast-iron plug.
  - 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

### **2.2 FLOOR DRAINS**

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Commercial Enameling Co.
    - b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - c. MIFAB, Inc.
    - d. Prier Products, Inc.
    - e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

- f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - g. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - j. Prior approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
  - 3. Pattern: Floor drain.
  - 4. Body Material: Gray iron.
  - 5. Clamping Device: Required.
  - 6. Outlet: Bottom.
  - 7. Top or Strainer Material: Stainless steel.
  - 8. Top Shape: Round.
  - 9. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
  - 10. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
  - 11. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.
  - 12. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

## **2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES**

### **A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:**

- 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
  - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - c. Prior approved equal.

### **B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.**

- 1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
- 2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
- 3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

### **A. Deep-Seal Traps:**

- 1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
- 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
  - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.

B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

## **2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS**

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft. thickness.
  2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft. thickness.
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Refer to Division 15 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall where indicated on drawings.
- H. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- I. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- J. Install deep-seal traps on all floor drains.
- K. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- L. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- M. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

- N. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### **3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
  - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 15155





**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
  - 1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

## **1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### **2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES**

- A. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
  - 1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  - 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  - 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  - 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  - 5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
  - 6. Superheat: Adjustable.
  - 7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
  - 8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  - 9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

B. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

## **2.3 REFRIGERANTS**

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
5. Prior approved equal.

B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A**

- A. Suction Lines NPS 3-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: Copper, Type L, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type L, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

### **3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS**

- A. Install diaphragm packless or packed-angle valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless or packed-angle valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### **3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Division 15 Sections "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" and "Sequence of Operation" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
  - 1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
  - 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.

3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
  4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
  5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
  6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- R. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.
- S. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- T. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- U. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.
- V. Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.
- W. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."

### **3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

### **3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
  - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
  - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
  - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

### **3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING**

A. Charge system using the following procedures:



1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### **3.8 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 15183

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.

- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

## **1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Owner's written permission.

## **1.9 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
  - 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

### **2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
  - 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
  - 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
  - 4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
  - 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
  - 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
  - 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.

## **2.3 JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## **2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES**

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
    - f. Prior approved equal..

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

## **2.5 EARTHQUAKE VALVES**

### **A. Earthquake Valves: Comply with ASCE 25.**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Vanguard Valves, Inc.
  - b. Safe-T-Quake.
  - c. Koso
  - d. Trembler Tech
  - e. Prior approved equal.
2. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Maximum Operating Pressure: 5 psig.
4. Cast-aluminum body with nickel-plated chrome steel internal parts.
5. Nitrile-rubber valve washer.
6. Sight windows for visual indication of valve position.
7. Threaded end connections complying with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Wall mounting bracket with bubble level indicator.

## **2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS**

### **A. General Requirements:**

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### **B. Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Actaris.
  - b. American Meter Company.
  - c. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
  - d. Invensys.
  - e. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
  - f. Prior approved equal..
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### **3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
  - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
- F. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- H. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages."

### **3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.



- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - d. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

- P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- R. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
  - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  - 5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- S. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- T. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- U. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- V. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- W. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- X. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages."

### **3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### **3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

### **3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."

- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
  - 5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

### **3.8 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### **3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### **3.10 PAINTING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 9 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat).
    - d. Color: By owner.

- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (semigloss).
    - d. Color: By owner.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### **3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.12 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### **3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Aboveground, branch piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping 2" and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

### **3.14 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be the following:
  - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.

- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.
  - 3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.
  - 3. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.

END OF SECTION 15195



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
  - 1. Lavatories.
  - 2. Lavatory Faucets.
  - 3. Water closets.
  - 4. Toilet seats.
  - 5. Fixture supports.
  - 6. Protective shielding guards.
  - 7. Commercial sinks.
  - 8. Sink Faucets.
  - 9. Disposers.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
- D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
- E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
- F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.



- G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.
- C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
  - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
  - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
  - 2. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
  - 3. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.

4. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
  5. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
  6. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
  7. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
  2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
  3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
  4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
  6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
  9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
  11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
  12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
  3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
  4. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
  5. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
  6. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
  2. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
  3. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
  4. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
  5. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  6. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
  7. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
  8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  9. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
  10. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

## **1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  3. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.
  4. Provide hinged-top wood or metal box, or individual metal boxes, with separate compartments for each type and size of extra materials listed above.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 LAVATORIES**

- A. Lavatories:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
    - b. Commercial Enameling Company.
    - c. Eljer.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Crane.
    - f. Zurn.
  2. Description: Accessible, wall-mounting, vitreous-china fixture.
    - a. Type: With back.

- b. Size: 20 by 18 inches rectangular.
- c. Faucet Hole Punching: Three holes, 4-inch centers.
- d. Color: White.
- e. Supplies: NPS 3/8 chrome-plated copper with stops.
- f. Drain: Grid with offset waste.

1) Location: Near back of bowl.

B. Mixing valve:

- 1. Valve shall be thermostatic and pressure mixing valve with maximum 5 degree approach temperature.
- 2. Approved Manufacturers -
  - a. Powers hydroguard TP or equal by
  - b. Sloan
  - c. Prior approved equal

## 2.2 LAVATORY FAUCETS

A. Lavatory Faucets:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Moen or equal by.
  - b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
  - c. Chicago Faucets.
  - d. Kohler Co.
  - e. Prior approved equal.
- 2. Description: Sensor. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
  - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.
  - d. Centers: 4 inches.
  - e. Mounting: Deck, concealed.
  - f. Spout: Rigid type.
  - g. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
  - h. Drain: Grid.
  - i. Tempering Device: Thermostatic.

## 2.3 WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets, Floor mounted-tank type:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Toto or equal by.
  - b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
  - c. Kohler Co.
  - d. Prior approved equal.
2. Description Accessible, where indicated on drawings, Floor-mounting, back-outlet, vitreous-china fixture designed for gravity-tank operation.
  - a. Style:
    - 1) Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design. Include bolt caps matching fixture.
    - 2) Height: Accessible, where indicated on drawings.
    - 3) Design Consumption.
    - 4) Tank: Gravity type with trim. Include cover.
    - 5) Trip Mechanism: Lever-handle actuator.
    - 6) Color: White.

## **2.4 TOILET SEATS**

### **A. Toilet Seats:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Comfort seats C108SSCAM or equal.
  - b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
  - c. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
  - d. Church Seats.
  - e. Eljer.
  - f. Kohler Co.
  - g. Olsonite Corp.
  - h. Toto.
2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture.
  - a. Material: Molded, heavy duty, solid, anti-microbial plastic, with fire retardant.
  - b. Configuration: Open front without cover.
  - c. Hinge Type: Stainless Steel, self-sustaining.
  - d. Class: Standard commercial.
  - e. Color: White.

## **2.5 FIXTURE SUPPORTS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Josam Company.
  - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
  - 3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  - 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - 7. Prior approved equal.
- B. Lavatory Supports:
  - 1. Description: Type II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
  - 2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
- C. Sink Supports:
  - 1. Description: Type II, sink carrier with hanger plate, bearing studs, and tie rod for sink-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.

## **2.6 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS**

- A. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. TRUEBRO, Inc.
    - b. McGuire.
    - c. Proflo.
    - d. Prior approved equal.
  - 2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

## **2.7 COMMERCIAL SINKS**

- A. Commercial Sinks, Single Compartment Break Room Sink:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Just Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Prior approved equal.

2. Description: One-compartment, counter-mounting, stainless-steel commercial sink with backsplash.
  - a. Overall Dimensions: See drawings.
  - b. Metal Thickness: 18 Gauge.
  - c. Compartment:
    - 1) Drain: NPS 1-1/2 tailpiece with stopper.
    - a) Location: Centered in compartment.

## 2.8 SINK FAUCETS

### A. Sink Faucets One compartment :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Moen or equal by.
  - b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
  - c. Chicago Faucets.
  - d. Kohler Co.
  - e. Prior approved equal.
2. Description: Kitchen faucet without spray. Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - a. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  - b. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
  - c. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Mixing Valve: Single control.
  - e. Mounting: Deck.
  - f. Handle(s): Lever.
  - g. Spout Type: Swing, solid brass.
  - h. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

Drain: basket strainer

## 2.9 DISPOSERS

### A. Disposers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
  - b. Franke Consumer Products, Inc.; Kitchen Systems Div.
  - c. In-Sink-Erator; a div. of Emerson Electric Co.
  - d. KitchenAid.

- e. Maytag Co.
- 2. Description: Batch-feed household, food-waste disposer. Include reset button; wall switch; corrosion-resistant chamber with jam-resistant, cutlery- or stainless-steel grinder or shredder; NPS 1-1/2 outlet; quick-mounting, stainless-steel sink flange; antisplash guard; and combination cover/stopper.
  - a. Type: Batch-feed household.
  - b. Motor: As shown in drawings with overload protection.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
  - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
  - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
  - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install floor-mounting, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
- G. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.



- I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 15 Section "Valves."
- J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- N. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- O. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
- P. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- Q. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- R. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- S. Install traps on fixture outlets.
  - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
  - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- T. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- U. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- V. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust all fixtures. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

### **3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:

1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
  2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

### **3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 15410

## **SECTION 15485 - ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following electric water heaters:
  - 1. Light-commercial electric water heaters.
  - 2. Compression tanks.
  - 3. Water heater accessories.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial and instantaneous electric water heater, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that commercial water heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Source quality-control test reports.

- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of electric water heaters through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of electric water heaters and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. ASME Compliance: Where indicated, fabricate and label commercial water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- E. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for all components that will be in contact with potable water.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with Architectural and Structural Drawings.

#### **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Period(s): From date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Instantaneous Electric Water Heaters: One year.
    - b. Light-Commercial Electric Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
  - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two years.
- c. Compression Tanks: One year.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### **2.2 LIGHT-COMMERCIAL ELECTRIC WATER HEATERS**

- A. Description: Comply with UL 174 for household, storage electric water heaters.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. American Water Heater Company.
    - b. Bradford White Corporation.
    - c. Lochinvar Corporation.
    - d. Rheem Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Ruud Water Heater Div.; Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - f. Smith, A. O. Water Products Company.
    - g. State Industries, Inc.
    - h. Prior approved equal.
  2. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
    - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  3. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - b. Dip Tube: Provide unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - c. Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
    - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
    - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - f. Heat Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - g. Heating Elements: Two; electric, screw-in immersion type; wired for simultaneous operation, unless otherwise indicated.
    - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat for each element.

- i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
  - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3 for combination temperature and pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- 4. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with legs for off-floor installation.
- 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
  - a. See drawings for size, capacity, electrical characteristics, etc.

## 2.3 COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. AMTROL Inc.
    - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    - c. Flexcon Industries.
    - d. Honeywell Sparco.
    - e. Myers, F. E.; Pentair Pump Group (The).
    - f. Smith, A. O.; Aqua-Air Div.
    - g. State Industries, Inc.
    - h. Taco, Inc.
    - i. Watts Regulator Co.
    - j. Wessels Co.
    - k. Prior approved equal.
  - 2. Construction:
    - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1, pipe thread.
    - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
  - 3. Capacity and Characteristics: See drawings.

## 2.4 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

- B. Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped and complying with ASME PTC 25.3. Include pressure setting less than water heater working-pressure rating.
- C. Water Heater Stand and Drain-Pan Units: High-density-polyethylene-plastic, 18-inch-high, enclosed-base stand complying with IAPMO PS 103 and IAS No. 2. Include integral or separate drain pan with raised edge and NPS 1 drain outlet with ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Water Heater Stands: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water. Include dimension that will support bottom of water heater a minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- E. Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting and capable of supporting water heater and water.
- F. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4.
- G. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that are capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
- H. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
- I. Water Regulators: ASSE 1003, water-pressure reducing valve. Set at 25-psig-maximum outlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Install seismic restraints for light-commercial and commercial water heaters. Anchor to substrate.
- C. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.



- D. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for hose-end drain valves.
- F. Install thermometer on outlet piping of water heaters. Refer to Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages" for thermometers.
- G. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of household, collector-to-tank, solar-electric water heaters. Refer to Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages" for thermometers.
- H. Install pressure gage(s) on inlet and outlet of commercial electric water- heater piping. Refer to Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages" for pressure gages.
- I. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve, thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet. Refer to Division 15 Section "Valves" for general-duty valves and to Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages" for thermometers.
- J. Install water regulator, with integral bypass relief valve, in booster-heater inlet piping and water hammer arrester in booster-heater outlet piping.
- K. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- L. Fill water heaters with water.
- M. Charge compression tanks with air.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to water heaters to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of water heaters.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace water heaters that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

### **3.4 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial and instantaneous electric water heaters. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15485



**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Gas-fired, condensing furnaces and accessories complete with controls.
  - 2. Air filters.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each of the following:
  - 1. Furnace.
  - 2. Air filter.
  - 3. Refrigeration components.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each furnace to include in operation, and maintenance manuals for each of the following:
  - 1. Furnace and accessories complete with controls.
  - 2. Refrigeration components.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."

## **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace the following components of furnaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period:
  - 1. Warranty Period, Commencing on Date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Furnace Heat Exchanger: 10 years.
    - b. Integrated Ignition and Blower Control Circuit Board: Five years.
    - c. Draft-Inducer Motor: Five years.
    - d. Refrigeration Compressors: 10 years.
    - e. Evaporator and Condenser Coils: Five years.

## **1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Disposable Air Filters: Furnish two complete sets.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GAS-FIRED FURNACES, CONDENSING**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier MUB or equal by.
  - 2. Trane.
  - 3. York.
  - 4. Prior approved equal.
- B. General Requirements for Gas-Fired, Condensing Furnaces: Factory assembled, piped, wired, and tested; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces," and with NFPA 54.
- C. Cabinet: Steel.

1. Cabinet interior around heat exchanger shall be factory-installed insulation.
  2. Lift-out panels shall expose burners and all other items requiring access for maintenance.
  3. Factory paint external cabinets in manufacturer's standard color.
- D. Fan: Centrifugal, factory balanced, resilient mounted, direct drive, variable speed.
1. Special Motor Features: Variable speed, premium efficiency, as defined in Division 15 Section "Motors," and with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
  2. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
  3. Special Motor Features: Electronically controlled motor (ECM) controlled by integrated furnace/blower control.
- E. Type of Gas: Natural.
- F. AFUE: 90 percent.
- G. Heat Exchanger:
1. Primary: Aluminized steel.
- H. Burner:
1. Gas Valve: 100 percent safety two-stage main gas valve, main shutoff valve, pressure regulator, safety pilot with electronic flame sensor, limit control, transformer, and combination ignition/fan timer control board.
  2. Ignition: Electric pilot ignition, with hot-surface igniter or electric spark ignition.
- I. Gas-Burner Safety Controls:
1. Electronic Flame Sensor: Prevents gas valve from opening until pilot flame is proven; stops gas flow on ignition failure.
  2. Flame Rollout Switch: Installed on burner box; prevents burner operation.
  3. Limit Control: Fixed stop at maximum permissible setting; de-energizes burner on excessive bonnet temperature; automatic reset.
- J. Combustion-Air Inducer: Centrifugal fan with thermally protected motor and sleeve bearings prepurges heat exchanger and vents combustion products; pressure switch prevents furnace operation if combustion-air inlet or flue outlet is blocked.
- K. Furnace Controls: Solid-state board integrates ignition, heat, cooling, and fan speeds; adjustable fan-on and fan-off timing; terminals for connection to accessories.
- L. Accessories:
1. Combination Combustion-Air Intake and Vent: PVC plastic fitting to combine combustion-air inlet and vent through outside wall or roof.
  2. Plastic Vent Materials.
    - a. CPVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M.

- 1) CPVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Fittings: ASTM F 438, socket type.
  - 2) CPVC Solvent Cement: ASTM F 493.
- b. PVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Pipe: ASTM D 1785.
  - 1) PVC Plastic, Schedule 40 Fittings: ASTM D 2466, socket type.
  - 2) PVC Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
- M. Capacities and Characteristics: See drawings.

## **2.2 AIR FILTERS**

- A. Disposable Filters: 1-inch- thick, disposable, fiberglass type in sheet metal frame.

## **2.3 REFRIGERATION COMPONENTS**

- A. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins. Comply with ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment." Match size with furnace. Include condensate drain pan with accessible drain outlet.
  1. Refrigerant Coil Enclosure: Steel, matching furnace and evaporator coil, with access panel and flanges for integral mounting at or on furnace cabinet and galvanized sheet metal drain pan coated with black asphaltic base paint.
- B. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Refrigerant Piping."

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine factory-installed insulation before furnace installation. Reject units that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install gas-fired furnaces and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54.

- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from structure using threaded rods, spring hangers, and building attachments. Secure rods to unit hanger attachments. Adjust hangers so unit is level and plumb.
  - 1. Install seismic restraints to limit movement of furnace by resisting code-required seismic acceleration.
- C. Base-Mounted Units: Secure units to substrate. Provide optional bottom closure base if required by installation conditions.
  - 1. Anchor furnace to substrate to resist code-required seismic acceleration.
- D. Controls: Install thermostats and humidistats at mounting height of 60 inches above floor.
- E. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Gas piping installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Fuel Gas Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect gas piping with union or flange and appliance connector valve.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Vent Connection, Noncondensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect Type B vents to furnace vent connection and extend outdoors. Type B vents and their installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Breechings, Chimneys, and Stacks."
- D. Vent and Outside-Air Connection, Condensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect plastic piping vent material to furnace connections and extend outdoors. Terminate vent outdoors with a cap and in an arrangement that will protect against entry of birds, insects, and dirt.
  - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  - 3. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
    - c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 4. Slope pipe vent back to furnace or to outside terminal.



- E. Connect ducts to furnace with flexible connector. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories."
- F. Connect refrigerant piping to refrigerant coil in furnace and to air-cooled, compressor-condenser unit.
  - 1. Flared Joints: Use ASME B16.26 fitting and flared ends, following procedures in CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  - 2. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
  - 3. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- G. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Refrigerant Piping" for installation and joint construction of refrigerant piping.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
  - 4. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
  - 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

### **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
  - 1. Inspect for physical damage to unit casings.
  - 2. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
  - 3. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
  - 4. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
  - 5. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
  - 6. Verify that controls are connected and operational.

- B. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- C. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's operational checklist.
- D. Measure and record airflows.
- E. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
- F. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings.

### **3.6 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set controls, burner, and other adjustments for optimum heating performance and efficiency. Adjust heat-distribution features, including shutters, dampers, and relays, to provide optimum heating performance and system efficiency.

### **3.7 CLEANING**

- A. After completing installation, clean furnaces internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install new filters in each furnace within 14 days after Substantial Completion.

### **3.8 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15530



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes air-cooled condensing units.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each condensing unit, include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that condensing units, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls." Include the following:
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
    - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For condensing units to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of condensing units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Fabricate and label refrigeration system according to ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
  - 1. Units shall be designed to operate with HCFC-free refrigerants.
- D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water-cooled condensing units to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."
- C. Coordinate location of piping and electrical rough-ins.

#### **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Compressor failure.
    - b. Condenser coil leak.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Four years from date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### **2.2 CONDENSING UNITS, AIR COOLED, 1 TO 5 TONS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation; Carrier Air Conditioning Div.
  - 2. Trane Co. (The); Worldwide Applied Systems Group.
  - 3. York International Corp.
  - 4. Prior approved equal.
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested, consisting of compressor, condenser coil, fan, motors, refrigerant reservoir, and operating controls.
- C. Compressor: Scroll, hermetically sealed, with rubber vibration isolators.
  - 1. Motor: Includes thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  - 2. Two-Speed Compressor: Include manual-reset, high-pressure switch and automatic-reset, low-pressure switch.
  - 3. Accumulator: Suction tube.
  - 4. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
- D. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube, aluminum-fin coil; circuited for integral liquid subcooler, with removable drain pan and brass service valves with service ports.
- E. Condenser Fan: Direct-drive, aluminum propeller fan; with permanently lubricated, totally enclosed fan motor with thermal-overload protection.
- F. Accessories:
  - 1. Crankcase heater.
  - 2. Cycle Protector: Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid compressor cycling.
  - 3. Equipment shall be capable of receiving start/stop enable from BAS.
  - 4. Evaporator Freeze Thermostat: Temperature-actuated switch that stops unit when evaporator reaches freezing temperature.
  - 5. Filter-dryer.
  - 6. High-Pressure Switch: Automatic-reset switch cycles compressor off on high refrigerant pressure.
  - 7. Liquid-line solenoid.

8. Low Ambient Controller: Cycles condenser fan to permit operation down to 0 deg F with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch.
  9. Low-Pressure Switch: Automatic-reset switch cycles compressor off on low refrigerant pressure.
- G. Unit Casing: Galvanized steel, finished with baked enamel; with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Mount service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

## **2.3 MOTORS**

- A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 15 Section "Motors."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in Division 16 Sections.

## **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate condensing units according to ARI.
1. Coefficient of Performance: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
  2. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- B. Test and inspect shell and tube condensers according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- C. Testing Requirements: Factory test sound-power-level ratings according to ARI 270.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of condensing units.
- B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where condensing units will be installed.

- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated; maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- B. Install condensing units on concrete base. Concrete base is specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods," and concrete materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 3.
- C. Concrete Bases:
  - 1. Coordinate with G.C. to provide concrete pad.
- D. Vibration Isolation: Mount condensing units on rubber pads with a minimum deflection of 1/4 inch. Vibration isolation devices and installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
- E. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect precharged refrigerant tubing to unit's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing so it does not interfere with access to unit. Install furnished accessories.
- D. Connect refrigerant piping to air-cooled condensing units; maintain required access to unit. Install furnished field-mounted accessories. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Division 15 Section "Refrigerant Piping."
- E. Connect refrigerant and condenser-water piping to water-cooled condensing units. Maintain clear tube removal space. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Division 15 Section "Refrigerant Piping".
- F. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- G. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:



1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Verify proper airflow over coils.
- B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning condensing units and retest as specified above.

### **3.5 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
1. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
  2. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
  3. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
  4. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
  5. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
  6. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Lubricate bearings on fans.
- C. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
- D. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- E. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
- F. Measure and record airflow over coils.
- G. Verify proper operation of condenser capacity control device.
- H. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- I. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings and adjust belt tension.

### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15671



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Sheet metal materials.
  - 4. Duct liner.
  - 5. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 6. Hangers and supports.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.
  - 2. Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. Static-Pressure Classes:
    - a. Supply Ducts (except in Mechanical Rooms): 2-inch wg.
    - b. Supply Ducts (Upstream from Air Terminal Units): 3-inch wg.
    - c. Supply Ducts (Downstream from Air Terminal Units): 1-inch wg.
    - d. Supply Ducts (in Mechanical Equipment Rooms): 2-inch wg.
    - e. Return Ducts (Negative Pressure): 1-inch wg.
    - f. Exhaust Ducts (Negative Pressure): 1-inch wg.
  - 2. Leakage Class:
    - a. Round Supply-Air Duct: 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg.

- b. Flat-Oval Supply-Air Duct: 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg.
  - c. Rectangular Supply-Air Duct: 6 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg.
  - d. Flexible Supply-Air Duct: 6 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
  - 1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
  - 2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
  - 3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.

## **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 3. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  - 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## **2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - f. Metco.
    - g. Prior approved equal.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter (diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Transverse Joints - Round Duct," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Seams - Round Duct and Fittings," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## **2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## **2.4 DUCT LINER**

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    - b. Johns Manville.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
    - e. Prior approved equal.
    - f. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
      - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.

- 2) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
  4. Duct insulation shall have a minimum R value = 5 for installation in an unconditioned space, and a minimum R value = 8 for installation outdoors.
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.



9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## **2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS**

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
  1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Use: O.
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
  3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## **2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### **3.2 SEAM AND JOINT SEALING**

- A. Seal duct seams and joints for duct static-pressure and leakage classes specified in "Performance Requirements" Article, according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 1-2, "Standard Duct Sealing Requirements," unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For static-pressure classes 1- and 1/2-inch wg, comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Seal Class C, except as follows:
    - a. Ducts that are located directly in zones they serve.

### **3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.

4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual."
  2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Supply air.
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before insulation application.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test entire system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.6 DUCT CLEANING**

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
  2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  4. Coils and related components.
  5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.7 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel:

B. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
2. Stainless-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

C. Liner:

1. Supply- and Return-Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I.

D. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:

1. Supply- and Return-Air Ducts: 1 inch thick.

E. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
    - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:

- 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
- 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

F. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

G. Duct Schedule

1. Rectangular duct with liner:
  - a. Low pressure supply and return.
2. Rectangular duct wrapped with insulation:
  - a. Low pressure exhaust and fresh air.
3. Single wall round with wrapped insulation.
  - a. Low pressure supply and return.

END OF SECTION 15815





**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Volume dampers.
  - 3. High Efficiency Take-Offs.
  - 4. Turning vanes.
  - 5. Duct-mounting access doors.
  - 6. Flexible connectors.
  - 7. Flexible ducts.
  - 8. Duct accessory hardware.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 15 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for electric and pneumatic damper actuators.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Volume dampers.
  - 3. High Efficiency Take-Offs.
  - 4. Turning vanes.
  - 5. Duct-mounting access doors.
  - 6. Flexible connectors.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

## **1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G60 coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

### **2.2 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  - 3. CESCO Products.
  - 4. Duro Dyne Corp.
  - 5. Greenheck.
  - 6. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  - 7. Prefco Products, Inc.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
  - 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  - 10. Air Rite.
  - 11. Prior approved equal.
- B. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.

- C. Frame: 0.052-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- D. Blades: 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

## 2.3 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  - 3. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
  - 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  - 10. Air Rite.
  - 11. Prior approved equal.
- B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
  - 1. Pressure Classes of 3-Inch wg or Higher: End bearings or other seals for ducts with axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- C. Standard Volume Dampers: Opposed-blade design, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  - 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 3. Aluminum Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls; and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.

5. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.
  6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  7. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
  9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- D. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## **2.4 HIGH EFFICIENCY TAKE-OFF**

- A. Factory-manufactured rectangular-to-round or round-to-round 45 degree leading tap fabricated of 24 ga zinc-coated lockforming quality steel sheets meeting requirements of ASTM A 653, with G-90 coating.
- B. One inch wide mounting flange with die formed corner clips, pre-punched mounting holes, and adhesive coated gasket.
- C. Manual Volume Damper:
1. Single blade, 22 ga minimum.
  2. 3/8 inch minimum square rod with brass damper bearings at each end.
  3. Heavy duty locking quadrant on 1-1/2 inch high stand-off mounting bracket attached to side of round duct.
- D. Approved Manufacturers:
1. HETD-L by Daniel Manufacturing.
  2. STO by Flexmaster USA Inc.
  3. HET by Sheet Metal Connectors Inc.
  4. Hercules.
  5. Air-Rite.
  6. Prior approved equal.

## **2.5 TURNING VANES**

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch- wide, single-vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Available Manufacturers:
- a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - b. Duro Dyne Corp.
  - c. METALAIR, Inc.

- d. Ward Industries, Inc.
  - e. Prior approved equal.
- C. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

## **2.6 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS**

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating.
    - b. CESCO Products.
    - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - d. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    - e. Greenheck.
    - f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
    - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - h. Ventfabrics, Inc.
    - i. Ward Industries, Inc.
    - j. Air Rite.
    - k. Prior approved equal.
  - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  - 3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
    - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
    - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
    - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.
- C. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- D. Insulation: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## **2.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Corp.
  - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  - 4. Ward Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Prior approved equal.

- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- E. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

## **2.8 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE**

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION**

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.
- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.

- F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- H. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
  - 3. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  - 4. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- I. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
  - 5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.
- K. Label access doors according to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."
- L. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
- M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and higher, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- N. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- O. Connect diffusers to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- P. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

## **3.2 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.



- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

END OF SECTION 15820

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Ceiling Mounting Ventilator.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in operation, and maintenance manuals.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.
- D. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 CEILING-MOUNTING VENTILATORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Loren Cook Company. Gemini or equal by.
  - 2. American Coolair Corp.
  - 3. ACME
  - 4. Carnes Company HVAC.
  - 5. Greenheck.
  - 6. Penn Ventilation.
  - 7. Prior approved equal.
- B. Description: Centrifugal fans designed for installing in ceiling or wall or for concealed in-line applications.
- C. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

- D. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- E. Grille: Plastic, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.
- F. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- G. Accessories:
  - 1. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics: See drawings.

## **2.2 MOTORS**

- A. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

## **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Support units using restrained spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
  - 1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.
- C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

- D. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stops. Insert device having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
- E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 5. Adjust belt tension.
  - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Refer to Division 15 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 15838



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes ceiling- and wall-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.

**2.2 GRILLES AND REGISTERS**

- A. Adjustable Bar Side Linear Sidewall Supply Grille:
  - 1. Products:



- a. Price LBP15B or equal by.
    - b. Carnes.
    - c. Krueger.
    - d. METALAIRE, Inc., Metal Industries Inc.
    - e. Titus.
    - f. Tuttle & Bailey.
    - g. Nailor.
  - 2. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- B. Fixed Face Ceiling or high sidewall or high sidewall Return, Exhaust, or Transfer Air Grille:
- 1. Products:
    - a. Carnes; RSLA.
    - b. Krueger; S85H.
    - c. Price Industries; 535.
    - d. Titus; 355RL.
    - e. Tuttle & Bailey; T70D.
    - f. Or equal by:
      - 1) A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 2) Anemostat; a Mestek Company.
      - 3) Dayus Register & Grille.
      - 4) Hart & Cooley, Inc.; Hart & Cooley Div.
      - 5) Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
  - 2. Material: Steel.
  - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
  - 4. Face Arrangement: 1/2 inch horizontal blade spacing.
  - 5. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
- C. Low Sidewall Return Grilles
- 1. Finish – Standard white baked enamel.
  - 2. Zero degree deflection.
  - 3. Approved Manufacturers And Models
    - a. Carnes - RSHA
    - b. J & J - S-590
    - c. Krueger - S480H
    - d. Metalaire - HD-RH
    - e. Price - 90-L
    - f. Titus - 30RL or 30 SL
    - g. Tuttle & Bailey - T110 or equal by
    - h. Agitair
    - i. Anemostat
    - j. Barber Colman
    - k. Environmental Air Products
    - l. Air Control Products

- m. Nailor

D. Floor Grilles:

1. Finish: Clear anodized.
2. Approved Products:
  - a. Price: LBP-15B or equal by
  - b. Carnes.
  - c. Krueger.
  - d. Metal\*Aire.
  - e. Nailor.
  - f. Price: LBP-15B or equal by.
  - g. Titus.
  - h. Tuttle & Bailey.

## 2.3 CEILING DIFFUSER OUTLETS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Products:
  - a. Carnes; SK-A.
  - b. Krueger; SH.
  - c. METALAIR, Inc., Metal Industries Inc.; 55005.
  - d. Price Industries; SMD.
  - e. Titus; TDC.
  - f. Tuttle & Bailey; MS.
  - g. Or equal by:
    - 1) A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - 2) Anemostat; a Mestek Company.
    - 3) Hart & Cooley, Inc.; Hart & Cooley Div.
    - 4) Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, provide lay-in ceiling module. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 15855

## **SECTION 15900 - AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROLS.**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes a new Building Management System (BMS) control equipment for HVAC systems and components. The BMS shall integrate seamlessly into the UVU Campus Invensys Central Network.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ARP: Address Resolution Protocol
- B. ASD: Application Specific Device
- C. BMS: Building Management System
- D. CSMA/CD: Carrier Sense Multiple Access/Collision Detect
- E. CIM: Control Interface Module
- F. DDC: Direct Digital Control
- G. GCM: Global Control Module
- H. GUI: Graphical User Interface
- I. HVAC: Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning
- J. LAN: Local Area Network
- K. MZ-II: MICROZONE II Direct Digital Controller
- L. NIM: Network Interface Module
- M. PID: Proportional, Integral, Derivative

#### **1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and service necessary for a complete and operating temperature control system, utilizing a high speed peer to peer network of interoperable Direct Digital Controls (DDC), new SIGNAL Graphical User Interface (GUI) with color graphic displays and electronic interfaces and actuation devices, as shown on the drawings and as described herein.
- B. LAN Communications
  - 1. Ethernet (IEEE 802.3), peer-to-peer CSMA/CD
    - a. Furnish a high speed Network Interface Module (NIM) which shall plug directly into the GCM to support Ethernet communications between GCM's.
    - b. NIMs shall communicate at 10 Mbps. NIMs can reside on higher speed LANs with Ethernet switches.
    - c. The NIMs shall directly support a minimum of 4 logical networks using the same physical network. Each logical network shall support up to 30 GCMs.
- C. Complete temperature control system to be DDC with electronic sensors and electronic/electric actuation of Mechanical Equipment Room (MER) valves and dampers and electronic actuation. The BMS is intended to seamlessly connect controllers throughout the new building.
- D. All work described in this section shall be installed, wired, circuit tested and calibrated by technicians qualified for this work and in the regular employment of Utah/Yamas controls. The installer shall have a minimum of 25 years of installation experience with the manufacturer and shall provide documentation in the bid and submittal package verifying longevity of the installing company's relationship with the manufacturer when requested. Supervision, calibration and checkout of the system shall be by the employees of Yamas Controls Intermountain, Inc. and shall not be subcontracted. The control contractor shall have an in place support facility within 75 miles of the site with factory certified technicians and engineers, spare parts inventory and all necessary test and diagnostic equipment for the installed system, and the control contractor shall have 24 hours/day, 7 days/week emergency service available.

## **1.5 AGENCY AND CODE APPROVALS**

- A. All products of the BAS shall bear the following agency approvals.
  - 1. UL-916; Energy Management Systems
  - 2. UL-873; Temperature Indication and Regulating Equipment
  - 3. UL-864, Categories UUKL, for products employed as a part of Fire Signaling and Smoke Control Systems
  - 4. CSA;, Canadian Standards Association
  - 5. FCC, Part 15, Subpart J, Class A Computing Devices

- B. All products shall be labeled with the appropriate approval markings. System installation shall comply with NFPA, NEMA, Local and National codes.
- C. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems".

## **1.6 FACTORY QUALITY CERTIFICATION**

- A. The Manufacturer of the Temperature Control System shall provide documentation with the Technical Proposal supporting compliance with ISO-9001 (Model for Quality Assurance in Design/Development, Production, Installation and Servicing). The intent of this specification requirement is to assure that the products from the Temperature Control System Manufacturer are delivered through a Quality System and Framework that will assure consistent quality in the products delivered for this project.
- B. Product literature provided by the Temperature Control System Manufacturer shall contain the ISO-9001 Certification Mark from the applicable registrar.

## **1.7 PRODUCTS NOT FURNISHED OR INSTALLED BUT INTEGRATED WITH THE WORK OF THIS SECTION.**

- A. Split System Furnaces.
- B. Fire Alarm System.
  - 1. Smoke Detectors (duct).
- C. Lighting.
  - 1. Lighting Control Units and Intelligent Devices.
- D. Security Systems Section.
- E. Security Control Units and Intelligent Devices.
- F. Power Monitoring System Control Units and Intelligent Devices.

## **1.8 SUBMITTALS.**

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
  - 1. Each control device labeled with setting or adjustable range of control.

- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
1. Schematic flow diagrams showing control devices.
  2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  3. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
  4. Written description of sequence of operation.
  5. Trunk cable schematic showing programmable control unit locations and trunk data conductors.
  6. Listing of connected data points, including connected control unit and input device.
  7. System graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, and operator notations.
  8. System configuration showing peripheral devices, batteries, power supplies, diagrams, modems, and interconnections.
- C. Samples: For each color required, of each type of thermostat cover.
- D. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:.
1. Engineering, Installation, Operation and Maintenance manuals.
  2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  5. Licenses, guarantee, and warranty documents for all equipment and systems.
- E. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Maintenance Data: For systems to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include the following:
1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device.
  2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
  3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
  4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
  5. Calibration records and list of set points.
- G. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

- H. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of control components, including control units, thermostats, and sensors. Revise Shop Drawings to reflect actual installation and operating sequences.

## **1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE.**

- A. Bids by wholesalers and non-franchised contractors shall not be acceptable.
- B. The system manufacturer shall, as a minimum, manufacture and supply the field controllers.
- C. All work described in this section shall be installed, wired, circuit tested and calibrated by factory certified technicians qualified for this work and in the regular employment of the temperature control system manufacturer's local field office.
- D. The Building Management System contractor shall be an Invensys NETWORK 8000 certified office and have a full service facility within 75 miles of the project that is staffed with engineers certified in NETWORK 8000 and technicians fully capable of providing routine emergency maintenance service on all system components.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

## **1.10 COORDINATION.**

- A. Coordinate location of thermostats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.
- B. Coordinate equipment from other divisions including "Intrusion Detection," "Lighting Controls," "Motor Control Centers," "Panelboards," and "Fire Alarm" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with those systems.
- C. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical circuits for control units and operator workstation.

## **1.11 WARRANTY AND MAINTENANCE.**

- A. All components, system software, and parts furnished and installed by the BMS contractor shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for 1 year of substantial completion. Labor to repair, reprogram, or replace these components shall be furnished by the BMS contractor at no charge during normal working hours during the warranty period. Materials furnished but not installed by the BMS contractor shall be covered to the extent of the product only. Installation labor shall be the responsibility of the trade contractor performing the installation. All corrective software modifications made during warranty periods shall be



updated on all user documentation and on user and manufacturer archived software disks. The Contractor shall respond to the owner's request for warranty service within 24 standard working hours.

## **1.12 OWNERSHIP OF PROPRIETARY MATERIAL.**

- A. The owner shall sign a copy of the manufacturer's standard software and firmware licensing agreement as a condition of this contract. Such license shall grant use of all programs and application software to owner as defined by the manufacturer's license agreement, but shall protect manufacturer's rights to disclosure of trade secrets contained within such software. All project developed software and documentation shall become the property of the owner. These include, but are not limited to project graphic images, record drawings, project database, project specific application programming code, and all other associated documentation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: All components and controllers shall be manufactured by Invensys unless specified otherwise
  - 1. Direct Digital Control Systems and Approved Installing Contractors:
    - a. Utah/Yamas Controls.

### **2.2 NEW SIGNAL GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE**

- A. The color graphic terminal shall be driven by software which displays all information in a graphical format. The operator shall access any information via a command prompted, mouse driven interface. The operator shall be able to penetrate to any level of desired system information without being required to enter any commands from the keyboard.
  - 1. The color CRT shall continuously display the present operator, local site connected to, number of total alarms for the system and total unacknowledged alarms. A section of the screen shall be dedicated to displaying the last reported alarm.
  - 2. All system commands shall be graphically displayed using iconic, pull-down, pop-up or graphical data entry templates. Each command selection shall display an advisory description of the commands operation to inform the operator of the expected result.

3. Pop-up windows shall be used to display groups, points and other pertinent information where a variety of items are available to choose from. This feature shall be context sensitive when a user/operator requires help during a particular function request.
- B. Graphics shall be provided for all mechanical, electrical and plumbing systems similar to the new building.
- C. The system shall be provided with a new computer meeting the following minimum specifications:
  1. Dell Optiplex GX260T
  2. 2.4 GHz Pentium 4 processor
  3. 512 Mb Memory
  4. 17.0 inch Color Monitor
  5. 40 Gb Hard Drive
  6. 48x CD-Rewriteable Drive
  7. 10/100/1000 Gigabit Network Interface Card
  8. Computer to be installed using the district's copy of Signal.
- D. All system commands shall be graphically displayed using iconic, pull-down, pop-up or graphical.

## **2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT**

- A. Global Control Module (GCM)
  1. Global Control Modules (GCM) shall utilize a multi-tasking, multi-user operating system.
  2. The GCM shall permit the simultaneous operation of all control, communication facilities management and operator interface software, as programmed by the Contractor or User.
  3. All GCM's shall have as a standard feature of their system software, complete libraries of control algorithms for DDC, Energy Management, and Facilities Management functions. These resident libraries of algorithms shall be drawn from for the creation of the application programming of each individual GCM.
  4. GCM shall utilize true floating point arithmetic capabilities. To accommodate totalization of large totalized values, GCM's with reporting capability shall support the calculation, accumulation and display of values within the range of +/-10 to the 10th power.
  5. All programming defining the functions to be performed by the GCM shall be protected from loss due to power failure for a minimum of six months.
  6. GCM shall be equipped with a minimum of two operator service ports. The service ports shall be RS-232 data terminal ports.
  7. Connection of a service device, to a service port, shall not cause the GCM to lose communications with its peers or other networked device controllers.

8. The GCM shall additionally provide diagnostic LED indication of device transmit and receive data communications for all communication port and peripheral ports, normal operation, abnormal operation and control relay operation indication.
9. The GCM shall provide commanded override capability from the PSI or the built-in operator interface. Such overrides shall be annunciated to the new SIGNAL Graphical User Interface. Such overrides shall be valid as long as power is applied to the controller.
10. The GCM system shall provide built-in software with the capability to automatically dial out an alarm to up to 10 remote reporting locations.
11. The GCM shall have two field buses:
  - a. BUS 1 (ASD)
  - b. BUS 2 (LCM)

B. Application Specific Devices (ASDs)

1. MICROZONE II Controllers (MZ IIs)
  - a. MZ IIs shall utilize a multi-tasking, multi-user operating system.
  - b. All input/output signal conversion shall be performed through a minimum of a 10 bit A to D converter.
  - c. All input points shall be universal in nature allowing their individual function definition to be assigned through the application software. All unused input points must be available as universally definable at the discretion of the owner.
  - d. MZ IIs shall be in continuous direct communication with the network which forms the facility wide Building Automation System. The MZ IIs shall communicate with the GCM at a baud rate of not less than 19,200 baud.
  - e. All control sequences programmed into the MZ II shall be stored in non-volatile memory. Power failures shall not cause the MZ II memory to be lost.
  - f. All control sequences shall be fully programmable at the MZ II, allowing for the creation and editing of an application control sequence, while at the unit. The MZ II shall allow for the creation of unique application control sequences.
  - g. The MZ II shall provide an input/output point trending utility that is capable of accumulating 48 analog point samples and 10 digital point samples, per input/output point.
  - h. The MZ II shall provide LED indication of transmit/receive communications performance, as well as for the proper/improper operation of the controller itself.
  - i. The MZ II shall be provided with a battery backed time clock that is capable of maintaining the time of day and calendar for up to thirty days, upon loss of power to the MZ II, without loss of setting. The battery for the time clock shall be replaceable by the customer.

- j. The MZ II shall be provided with integral time schedules; as a minimum, two seven day schedules with eight on/off periods per day shall be provided.
- k. Holiday override of weekly schedules shall be provided for pre-scheduling of holidays, for the year in advance.
- l. The MZ II shall be provided in a NEMA 1. The MZ II shall be constructed in a modular orientation such that service of the failed components can be done quickly and easily. The MZ II shall be directly wired to sensory devices, staging relays or modulating valves for heating and cooling.
- m. MZ IIs shall be rated for service from -40 Deg. F to 140 Deg. F.

C. Software:

1. Controller and System HVAC Applications

- a. Update to latest version of software at Project completion. Include and implement the following capabilities from the control units if documented by the specified sequence of operations:
  - 1) Load Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, occupied/unoccupied setback/setup, DDC with PID, and trend logging.
  - 2) HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy/economizer switchover.
  - 3) Programming Application Features: Include trend point, alarm reporting, alarm lockout, weekly scheduling, staggered start, sequencing, anti-short cycling and calculated point.

## 2.4 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Local Control Panels: Unitized NEMA 1 cabinet with suitable brackets for wall or floor mounting, located adjacent to each system under automatic control. Provide common keying for all panels.
  - 1. Fabricate panels of 0.06-inch thick, furniture-quality steel, or extruded-aluminum alloy, totally enclosed, with hinged doors and keyed lock and with manufacturer's standard shop-painted finish.
  - 2. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices pre-wired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL Listed for 600 volt service, individually identified per control/interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
  - 3. Door-Mounted Equipment: Flush-mount (on hinged door) manual switches, including damper-positioning switches, changeover switches, thermometers, and gages.

4. Provide ON/OFF power switch with over-current protection for control power sources to each local panel

## 2.5 SENSORS

- A. Electronic Temperature Sensors: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
  1. Resistance Temperature Detectors: Platinum, thermistor, or balco
    - a. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.2 percent at calibration point; thermistors shall have a maximum 5 year drift of no more than .225°F maximum error of no more than .36°F
    - b. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable
    - c. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 6 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 4 sq. ft.
    - d. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 60 inches, long, flexible for use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 4 sq. ft.; 264 inches long, flexible for use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 16 sq. ft; length as required.
    - e. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
    - f. Room Security Sensors: Stainless steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

## 2.6 THERMOSTATS

- A. Combination Thermostat and Fan Switches: Line-voltage thermostat with two-, three-, or four-position, push-button or lever-operated fan switch.
  1. Label switches "FAN ON-OFF," "FAN HIGH-LOW-OFF," "FAN HIGH-MED-LOW-OFF." Provide unit for mounting on two-gang switch box.
- B. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater.
- C. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch type, or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator, integral manual on-off-auto selector switch.
  1. Equip thermostats, which control electric heating loads directly, with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
  2. Dead Band: Maximum 2°F.
- D. Room Thermostat Cover Construction:

1. Set-Point Adjustment: Concealed or exposed
  2. Set-Point Indication: Concealed or exposed
  3. Thermometer: Optional
  4. Color: Neutral
  5. Orientation: Vertical or horizontal
- E. Room thermostat accessories include the following:
1. Insulating Bases: For thermostats located on exterior walls.
  2. Thermostat Guards: As specified in tamper prone areas
  3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.
  4. Set-Point Adjustment: 1/2-inch diameter, adjustment knob.

## **2.7 CONTROL CABLE**

- A. Electronic and Fiber-Optic Cable for Control Wiring: As specified in Division 16 Section "Control/Signal Transmission Media."

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that conditioned power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.
- B. Verify that duct, pipe, and equipment mounted devices and wiring are installed before proceeding with installation.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install equipment level and plumb.
- B. Install software in control units and operator workstation. Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.
- C. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.
- D. Verify location of thermostats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation. Locate all 60 inches above the floor.
1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.

- E. Install guards or tamper proof enclosures on thermostats in the following locations:
  - 1. Entrances.
  - 2. Public areas.
  - 3. Where indicated.
- F. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- G. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."
- H. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Division 16 Section "Control/Signal Transmission Media."

### **3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION**

- A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
- B. Install building wire and cable according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- C. Install signal and communication cable according to Division 16 Section "Control/Signal Transmission Media."
  - 1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
  - 2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
  - 3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
  - 4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
  - 5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
  - 6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
- D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
- E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

### **3.4 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Ground equipment.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: An Invensys certified service representative shall inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation and electrical connections. Report results in writing.
  1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment, and retest.
  3. Calibration and test electric/electronic thermostats by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
- B. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  1. Start, test, and adjust control systems.
  2. Demonstrate compliance with requirements, including calibration and testing, and control sequences.
  3. Adjust, calibrate, and fine tune circuits and equipment to achieve sequence of operation specified.
- C. Verify DDC as follows:
  1. Verify software including automatic restart, control sequences, scheduling, reset controls, and occupied/unoccupied cycles.
  2. Verify operation of operator workstation.
  3. Verify local control units including self-diagnostics.

### **3.6 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. An Invensys certified service representative shall train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain control systems and components.
  1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment and schedules.
  2. Provide operator training on data display, alarm and status descriptors, requesting data, executing commands, calibrating and adjusting devices, resetting default values, and requesting logs. Include a minimum of 8 hours dedicated instructor time on-site.
  3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."



4. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
5. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

### **3.7 ON-SITE ASSISTANCE**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: Within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide up to three Project site visits, when requested by Owner, to adjust and calibrate components and to assist Owner's personnel in making program changes and in adjusting sensors and controls to suit actual conditions.

### **3.8 TRAINING**

- A. Provide a minimum of 4 hours of on-site or classroom training throughout the contract period for personnel designated by the Owner. Each session shall be a minimum of four hours in length and must be coordinated with the building Owner. Train the designated staff of Owners Representative and Owner to enable them to:
  1. Proficiently operate the system
  2. Understand control system architecture and configuration
  3. Understand DDC system components
  4. Understand system operation, including DDC system control and optimizing routines (algorithms)
  5. Operate the workstation and peripherals
  6. Log on and off the system
  7. Access graphics, point reports, and logs
  8. Adjust and change system set points, time schedules, and holiday schedules
  9. Recognize malfunctions of the system by observation of the printed copy and graphical visual signals
  10. Understand system drawings, and Operation and Maintenance manual
  11. Understand the job layout and location of control components
  12. Access data from DDC controllers
  13. Operate portable operators terminals

## **PART 4 - EXECUTION**

### **4.1 FMS SEQUENCE OF OPERATION**

- A. General Operation
  1. Control Programs: The control programs to achieve the sequences of operation shall reside in the field controller. These controllers shall be capable of standalone operation, such that if communication with the

network level controller is lost or disrupted, the sequence of operation will continue to operate. Global functions such as Scheduling, Optimal Start/Stop, and Outside Air Temperature Reset may reside on the Global Controller.

2. Optimal Start/Stop is incorporated into the District system-wide energy management program. Any time a school experiences and school wide change of state (i.e. unoccupied-occupied or power-up after loss of electrical power), the EMS shall initiate a school wide optimal start-up procedure so as to minimize the electrical demand based on a 15-minute sliding window.
3. Human Machine Interface (HMI): The HMI shall be a PC based graphical package. User's privileges determine whether setpoints and parameters can be modified or outputs manually overridden.
  - a. This graphical package shall contain graphical representations of the mechanical equipment.
  - b. The graphics shall display all the digital and analog points as listed in the points list for each mechanical system.
  - c. Digital output points shall have the capability to be manually overridden on and off from the HMI. These overrides may be timed, until or forever. Manual overrides cannot override any safety conditions.
  - d. Analog output points shall have the capability to be manually overridden on and off from the HMI. These overrides may be timed, until or forever. Manual overrides cannot override any safety conditions.
  - e. All setpoints, parameters and calculated values shall be displayed and adjustable from the HMI.
  - f. All setpoints and parameters defined as (adjustable) shall be adjustable from the HMI.

#### B. Furnace Split Systems

Each furnace split system consists of a supply fan, gas fired heating, direct expansion (DX) cooling coil, and mixed air dampers. The unit shall be controlled through the BAS as follows:

1. Supply Fan Control
  - a. The BAS will command the supply fan on and off based on a time schedule (adjustable) which is adjusted by Optimum Start and Stop program calculations.
    - 1) The BAS will start the supply fan prior to occupancy time as determined by the optimum start calculation. The period between unit start and occupancy time is referred to as the Space Preconditioned Period. At the end of this period, the occupied mode begins and continues until the unit is turned off. Supply fan shall run continuously when occupied.

- 2) If the outdoor temperature is above 50 Deg F, (adjustable) then the Optimum Start and Stop calculations are based on cooling conditions. Otherwise they are based on heating calculations.
- 3) The unit shall come with internal fan speed control.

b. Unoccupied Limits

- 1) Night Low Limit: When the BAS schedule is in the unoccupied mode, and the room temperature falls below the unoccupied low limit setpoint as indicated below. The supply fan unit shall be commanded on and shall continue to run until the room temperature rises by 5 Deg F (adjustable).

OAT	Setpoint
1 Deg F	65 Deg F
32 Deg F	60 Deg F

- 2) When the BAS schedule is in the unoccupied mode, and the room temperature rises above the unoccupied high limit setpoint, 105 Deg F. then the unit shall be commanded on and shall continue to run until the room temperature falls by 5 Deg F. (adjustable).

- c. There shall be a manual reset smoke detector placed in the supply duct. When the smoke detector in the supply duct senses smoke, the supply fan shall be shut off. The smoke detector will be wired directly to the supply fan motor starter to shut the supply fan off. A BAS alarm is generated whenever a smoke condition is sensed.
- d. When the BAS commands the supply fan off (schedule or manual override), the DX coils shall be commanded off, the gas valve command off, the outdoor dampers shall be commanded closed and return air dampers shall be commanded open.
- e. A BAS alarm is generated whenever the supply fan fails to respond to on-off commands.

2. Direct Expansion (DX) Cooling Control

- a. When the supply fan status is off, the BAS shall command all stages of the DX cooling off. When the supply fan status is on, the DX cooling shall operate according to the mode that the air handling unit is in.
- b. Heating Mode: In the heating mode, the BAS shall command all stages of the DX cooling off.
- c. Cooling Mode: The BAS shall stage the DX cooling on and off to maintain space temperature at 3 Deg F higher than the heating setpoint.

3. Mixed Air Control.

- a. There shall be a dedicated minimum outdoor air damper. There shall be an air monitoring station in this duct.
- b. Outdoor Air Flow Control.
  - 1) When the fan is off, the BAS shall command the minimum outdoor air damper closed.
  - 2) When the unit is in the Space Precondition or Unoccupied mode, the BAS shall command the minimum outdoor air damper closed.
  - 3) All other times, the BAS shall open the minimum outdoor air damper to maintain the minimum air flow setpoint (adjustable).

4. Gas Fired Heater Control

- a. When the supply fan status is off, the BAS shall command all stages of the gas heater off. When the supply fan status is on, the gas heater shall operate according to the mode that the air handling unit is in.
- b. Heating Mode: In the heating mode, the BAS shall stage on and off the stages of the gas heater to maintain space temperature according to the following schedule:

OAT	Setpoint
40 Deg F	72 Deg F
68 Deg F	70 Deg F

- c. Cooling Mode: The BAS shall command all stages of the gas heater off.

5. Point List

- a. Inputs
  - 1) DI Supply Fan Status (motor starter)
  - 2) DI Supply Duct Smoke Detector
  - 3) DI Filter Differential Pressure Switch
  - 4) AI Return Air Temperature
  - 5) AI Outdoor Air Temperature (May be global)
  - 6) AI Minimum Air Flow Station
  - 7) AI Space Temperature
  - 8) AI Space Humidity
- b. Outputs
  - 1) DO Supply Fan Start-Stop (motor starter)
  - 2) DO DX Cooling (1 DO/Stage)
  - 3) DO Gas Heat (1 DO/Stage)
  - 4) AO Mixed Air Dampers

5) AO Minimum Outdoor Air Damper

C. EXHAUST FANS

General Purpose Exhaust fans shall operate if any HVAC Fan System is in the occupied mode under control of the DDC System by relay interlock.

Toilet Room Exhaust Fans shall operate if any of the HVAC Fan Systems are in the occupied mode under control of the DDC System by relay interlock and shall be monitored by a current sensor type relay.

D. LIGHTING CONTROLS

Provide a DDC control output for each indoor and outdoor lighting zone as indicated on the Electrical Plans. Provide any interfacing relays necessary.

The Division 16 Contractor shall provide all Lighting Contactors and Lighting Control Panels as indicated on the Electrical Plans.

Lighting zones shall be scheduled by the DDC system.

Provide and monitor an outdoor photocell. Mount on the north end of the building.

END OF SECTION 15900

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes TAB to produce design objectives for the following:
  - 1. Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - 2. HVAC equipment quantitative-performance settings.
  - 3. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
  - 4. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Adjust: To regulate fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment, such as to reduce fan speed or adjust a damper.
- B. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system, including submains, branches, and terminals, according to indicated quantities.
- C. Barrier or Boundary: Construction, either vertical or horizontal, such as walls, floors, and ceilings that are designed and constructed to restrict the movement of airflow, smoke, odors, and other pollutants.
- D. Draft: A current of air, when referring to localized effect caused by one or more factors of high air velocity, low ambient temperature, or direction of airflow, whereby more heat is withdrawn from a person's skin than is normally dissipated.
- E. NC: Noise criteria.
- F. Procedure: An approach to and execution of a sequence of work operations to yield repeatable results.
- G. RC: Room criteria.
- H. Report Forms: Test data sheets for recording test data in logical order.

- I. Static Head: The pressure due to the weight of the fluid above the point of measurement. In a closed system, static head is equal on both sides of the pump.
- J. Suction Head: The height of fluid surface above the centerline of the pump on the suction side.
- K. System Effect: A phenomenon that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- L. System Effect Factors: Allowances used to calculate a reduction of the performance ratings of a fan when installed under conditions different from those presented when the fan was performance tested.
- M. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- N. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.
- O. Test: A procedure to determine quantitative performance of systems or equipment.
- P. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Firm: The entity responsible for performing and reporting TAB procedures.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: Within 15 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of evidence that TAB firm and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 4 copies of TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.
- D. Certified TAB Reports: Submit two copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by TAB firm.
- E. Sample Report Forms: Submit two sets of sample TAB report forms.
- F. Warranties specified in this Section.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by AABC or NEBB.

- B. TAB Conference: Meet with Owner's and Architect's representatives on approval of TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Ensure the participation of TAB team members, equipment manufacturers' authorized service representatives, HVAC controls installers, and other support personnel. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
1. Agenda Items: Include at least the following:
    - a. Submittal distribution requirements.
    - b. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - c. TAB plan.
    - d. Work schedule and Project-site access requirements.
    - e. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - f. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- C. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:
1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard forms from AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, and Accuracy: As described in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems," Section II, "Required Instrumentation for NEBB Certification."
- F. Instrumentation Calibration: Calibrate instruments at least every six months or more frequently if required by instrument manufacturer.
1. Keep an updated record of instrument calibration that indicates date of calibration and the name of party performing instrument calibration.
- G. Approved TAB agencies:
1. Bonneville Test and Balance.
  2. BTC Services.
  3. Certified Test and Balance.
  4. Danis Test and Balance.
  5. Intermountain Test and Balance.
  6. RS Analysis.
  7. Technical Specialties.
  8. Testing and Balancing, Inc.



## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.
- B. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
- C. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## **1.8 WARRANTY**

- A. National Project Performance Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" forms stating that AABC will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee includes the following provisions:
  - 1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

(Not Applicable)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

1. Contract Documents are defined in the General and Supplementary Conditions of Contract.
  2. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.
- C. Examine Project Record Documents described in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine system and equipment test reports.
- H. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- I. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.
- J. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- K. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- L. Examine plenum ceilings used for supply air to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.

- M. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.
- N. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- O. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- P. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- Q. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.
- R. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:
  - 1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
  - 2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
  - 3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
  - 4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including two-way valves and three-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
  - 5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
  - 6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
  - 7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
  - 8. Controller set points are set at indicated values.
  - 9. Interlocked systems are operating.
  - 10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.
- S. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.

7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### **3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING**

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### **3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS**

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.
- L. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

### **3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS**

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 2. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.
  - 3. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices such as sound traps, heat recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 4. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
  - 5. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
  - 6. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, economizer, and any other operating modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - 1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

- a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### **3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS**

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Efficiency rating.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

### **3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS**

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

### **3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS**

- A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:
  - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  - 2. Water flow rate.
  - 3. Water pressure drop.
  - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  - 6. Airflow.
  - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Refrigerant Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:
  - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 3. Airflow.
  - 4. Air pressure drop.
  - 5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### **3.9 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS**

- A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.
- B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.
- C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

### **3.10 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS**

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
  - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
  - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
  - 4. Check the condition of filters.
  - 5. Check the condition of coils.
  - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate drain trap.
  - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
  - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished.
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  - 3. Drain pans are clean.
  - 4. Fans are clean.
  - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows and determine the new fan, speed, filter, and coil face velocity.
  - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated airflow and water flow rates. If 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  - 4. Air balance each air outlet.

### **3.11 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION**

- A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.
- B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.
- C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.
- D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).
- E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.
- F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.
- G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.
- H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.
- I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.



- J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.
- K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

### **3.12 TOLERANCES**

- A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 5 to plus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to minus 10 percent.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 10 percent.
  - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 5 percent.

### **3.13 REPORTING**

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: As Work progresses, prepare reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### **3.14 FINAL REPORT**

- A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.
- B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of TAB firm.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
  - a. Indicated versus final performance.
  - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
  - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
  - a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
  - b. Conditions of filters.
  - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
  - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
  - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
  - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
  - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
  - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

F. Air-Handling Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data: Include the following:

- a. Unit identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Unit arrangement and class.
- g. Discharge arrangement.
- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- i. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
- j. Number of belts, make, and size.
- k. Number of filters, type, and size.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Make and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outside airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outside-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

G. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.

- i. Tube and fin materials.
  - j. Circuiting arrangement.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
  - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
  - d. Outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
  - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
  - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
  - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
  - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
  - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
  - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
  - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
  - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

H. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
- a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and unit size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Fuel type in input data.
  - g. Output capacity in Btuh.
  - h. Ignition type.
  - i. Burner-control types.
  - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
  - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
  - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
  - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - n. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
  - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
  - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
  - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
  - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.

- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btuh.
  - i. High-fire fuel input in Btuh.
  - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
  - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
  - l. Operating set point in Btuh.
  - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
  - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
  - o. Heating value of fuel in Btuh.
- I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
  - 1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Make and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - g. Number of belts, make, and size.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.

- e. Duct size in inches.
  - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
  - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
  - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
  - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
  - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
  - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Room or riser served.
    - d. Coil make and size.
    - e. Flowmeter type.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
    - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- L. Compressor and Condenser Reports: For refrigerant side of unitary systems, stand-alone refrigerant compressors, air-cooled condensing units, or water-cooled condensing units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Unit make and model number.
    - d. Compressor make.
    - e. Compressor model and serial numbers.
    - f. Refrigerant weight in lb.
    - g. Low ambient temperature cutoff in deg F.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Inlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - b. Outlet-duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Entering-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F.
    - d. Leaving-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F.
    - e. Condenser entering-water temperature in deg F.
    - f. Condenser leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    - g. Condenser-water temperature differential in deg F.

- h. Condenser entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
- i. Condenser leaving-water pressure in feet of head or psig.
- j. Condenser-water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- k. Control settings.
- l. Unloader set points.
- m. Low-pressure-cutout set point in psig.
- n. High-pressure-cutout set point in psig.
- o. Suction pressure in psig.
- p. Suction temperature in deg F.
- q. Condenser refrigerant pressure in psig.
- r. Condenser refrigerant temperature in deg F.
- s. Oil pressure in psig.
- t. Oil temperature in deg F.
- u. Voltage at each connection.
- v. Amperage for each phase.
- w. Kilowatt input.
- x. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
- y. Number of fans.
- z. Condenser fan rpm.
- aa. Condenser fan airflow rate in cfm.
- bb. Condenser fan motor make, frame size, rpm, and horsepower.
- cc. Condenser fan motor voltage at each connection.
- dd. Condenser fan motor amperage for each phase.

### **3.15 INSPECTIONS**

#### **A. Initial Inspection:**

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the Final Report.
2. Randomly check the following for each system:
  - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
  - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
  - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
  - d. Measure sound levels at two locations.
  - e. Measure space pressure of at least 10 percent of locations.
  - f. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
  - g. Note deviations to the Contract Documents in the Final Report.

#### **B. Final Inspection:**

1. After initial inspection is complete and evidence by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Architect.
2. TAB firm test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect.

3. Architect shall randomly select measurements documented in the final report to be rechecked. The rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded, or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If the rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
6. TAB firm shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes and resubmit the final report.
7. Request a second final inspection. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner shall contract the services of another TAB firm to complete the testing and balancing in accordance with the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the final payment.

### **3.16 ADDITIONAL TESTS**

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 15950





## **DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION**



## **DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

Refer to Division 15



## **DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING**

Refer to Division 15



## **DIVISION 25 – INTEGRATED AUTOMATION**





## **DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

Section 26 05 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
Section 26 05 19	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
Section 26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 33	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 48	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
Section 26 05 53	Identification for Electrical Systems
Section 26 24 16	Panelboards
Section 26 27 26	Wiring Devices
Section 26 28 13	Fuses
Section 26 28 16	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
Section 26 29 13	Enclosed Controllers



## SECTION 260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 2. Sleeve seals.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Common electrical installation requirements.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

#### 2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following

- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
  - c. Metraflex Co.
  - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260500

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN

#### 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.



3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
  5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
- C. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

## 2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## 2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- I. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- J. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 26 Sections "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- G. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- H. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- I. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) of slack.

### 3.4 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- E. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- F. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
- G. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies
- H. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- I. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- J. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- K. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- L. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.5 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kemil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

## 2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) in diameter.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.

3. Receptacle circuits.
  4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  6. Flexible raceway runs.
  7. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
  8. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
  2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- E. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.



1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

D. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at ground test wells.
  - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
  - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10
2. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).

C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 2. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.

3. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Hilti Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 3) Hilti Inc.
      - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 6)
  3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
  6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements
- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa) 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529



## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. See Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks and manholes, and underground handholes, boxes, and utility construction.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- B. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- C. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
- D. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.
- E. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- F. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.



## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. ENT: NEMA TC 13.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. LFNC: UL 1660.
- D. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- E. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

## 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - 2. Hoffman.
  - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric.
- C. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Wireway Covers: Hinged type
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - b. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
    - c. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Butler Manufacturing Company; Walker Division.

- b. Enduro Systems, Inc.; Composite Products Division.
- c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems Division.
- d. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
- e. Panduit Corp.
- f. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
- g. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

## 2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- B. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- C. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
- D. Metal Floor Boxes fully adjustable rectangular.
- E. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
- F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- H. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- I. Cabinets:
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit
  - 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT
  - 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.

4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT
2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit Includes raceways in the following locations:
  - a. Loading dock.
  - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
  - c. Mechanical rooms.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit
6. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
  2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
- H. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- I. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
- J. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install as follows:
1. 3/4-Inch (19-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
  2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
  3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- K. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- L. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
1. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change.
  3. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.
- M. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- N. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
- O. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- P. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

#### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
  - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.

#### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260533



## SECTION 260548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Isolation pads.
  - 2. Spring isolators.
  - 3. Restrained spring isolators.
  - 4. Channel support systems.
  - 5. Restraint cables.
  - 6. Hanger rod stiffeners.
  - 7. Anchorage bushings and washers.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  - 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: (to match architectural specification)
  - 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: (to match architectural specification)
    - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
    - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 5.0.
    - c. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5
  - 3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second):
  - 4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  2. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  3. California Dynamics Corporation.
  4. Isolation Technology, Inc.
  5. Kinetics Noise Control.
  6. Mason Industries.
  7. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  8. Vibration Isolation.
  9. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

### 2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  4. Hilti Inc.
  5. Loos & Co.; Seismic Earthquake Division.
  6. Mason Industries.
  7. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
  8. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES
1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.

- F. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.
- G. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.
- H. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- I. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

### 3.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
  - 1. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
  - 2. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
  - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- D. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.3 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  2. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 3.
  4. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  5. Measure isolator deflection.
  6. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
  7. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.

- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 260548



## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Identification for raceways.
  - 2. Identification of power and control cables.
  - 3. Identification for conductors.
  - 4. Underground-line warning tape.
  - 5. Warning labels and signs.
  - 6. Instruction signs.
  - 7. Equipment identification labels.
  - 8. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 POWER RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- D. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
- G. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- H. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- I. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- J. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches (50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.

## 2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  - 2. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
- C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

- D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

## 2.3 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- C. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  - 2. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.4 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

- A. 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

## 2.5 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Tape:
  - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
  - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
  - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- B. Color and Printing:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
  - 2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE,
  - 3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE,.

## 2.6 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.



- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
  - 1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

## 2.7 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
  - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face
  - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
- B. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

- B. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
  - 1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
    - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
    - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.
      - 2) Phase B: Red.
      - 3) Phase C: Blue.
    - c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Brown.
      - 2) Phase B: Orange.
      - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
- B. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
  - 1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
  - 2. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- C. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless

otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

- D. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels
  - 1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
  - 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
  - 3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- E. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- F. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer >.
- G. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
  - 1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Indoor Equipment: Adhesive film label Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
    - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
    - c. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

END OF SECTION 260553

## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes distribution panelboards and lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event"

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - 6. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Panelboard schedules for installation in panelboards.
- F. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
    - c. Kitchen, Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X stainless steel
    - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4
  - 2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
  - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
  - 4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
- C. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
  - 3. Ground Lugs and Bus Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
  - 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.

- 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- E. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- F. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, and listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.
- G. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

## 2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

## 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - b. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
  - 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
  - 6. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  - 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  - 8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, store and install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- E. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- G. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-GRC) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- H. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- I. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads and incorporating Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:



1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262416

## SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  - 2. Wall-box motion sensors.
  - 3. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
  - 4. Solid-state fan speed controls.
  - 5. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
  - 6. Communications outlets.
- B. See Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for workstation outlets.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
  - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
  - 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
  - 3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).

4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

## 2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
    - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).

## 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped. The feed through option can only be used for outlets in the same room.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; GF20.
    - b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.

## 2.4 SNAP SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
    - b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
    - c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).
- C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
    - b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
    - c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.
  2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

- D. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 2221L.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1221L.
    - c. Leviton; 1221-2L.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-L.
    - e.
  2. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
- E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 1995.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
    - c. Leviton; 1257.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.
- F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 1995L.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1557L.
    - c. Leviton; 1257L.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251L.

## 2.5 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "OFF."

- D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

## 2.6 FAN SPEED CONTROLS

- A. Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.
  - 1. Three-speed adjustable slider

## 2.7 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Wall-Switch Sensors:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Hubbell; AT120 for 120 V, AT277 for 277 V.
    - b. Leviton; ODS 15-ID.
    - c. Watt stopper
    - d. Lithonia
  - 2. Description: Adaptive-technology type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 20 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).

## 2.8 COMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

## 2.9 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished stainless steel
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel
  - 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

## 2.10 FINISHES

- A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: color to be selected by the architect
  - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red>.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
  - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  - 4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
  - 1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
  - 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  - 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
  - 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
  - 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
  - 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  - 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.

9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
  1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
  1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
  3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
  1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
  3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 262726





## SECTION 262813 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in enclosed switches and enclosed controllers

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
  - 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
  - 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
  - 4. Littelfuse, Inc.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Service Entrance: Class RK1, time delay
- B. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Receptacle switches.
  - 4. Shunt trip switches.
  - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 6. Enclosures.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event"

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw 600 V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

### 2.2 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- D. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - 1. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - 2. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
- E. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

## 2.3 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
  - E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262816

## SECTION 262913 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:
  - 1. Full-voltage manual.
  - 2. Full-voltage magnetic.
  - 3. Multispeed.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
- D. N.C.: Normally closed.
- E. N.O.: Normally open.
- F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed controllers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed controllers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.



- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FULL-VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

- A. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
- B. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
    - a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
    - b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
    - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
    - f.
  - 2. Surface mounting.
  - 3. Pilot light.
- C. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
    - a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
    - b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
    - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
    - f.

- 2.
  3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button melting alloy type.
  4. Surface mounting.
  5. Pilot light.
- D. Integral Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
    - a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
    - b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
    - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  2. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters and sensors in each phase, matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and having appropriate adjustment for duty cycle; external reset push button melting alloy type.
  3. Surface mounting.
  4. Pilot light.
- E. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
    - a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
    - b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
    - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  2. Configuration: Reversing.
  3. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
    - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
  4. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  5. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
    - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b. Class 10 tripping characteristic.
    - c. Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.

6. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
    - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b. Class 10 tripping characteristic.
    - c. Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
  7. Solid-State Overload Relay:
    - a. Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
    - b. Sensors in each phase.
    - c. Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
  8. External overload reset push button.
- F. Combination Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
    - a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
    - b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.
    - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
    - e. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  2. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J fuses.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - c. Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  3. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
    - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - c. Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  4. MCP Disconnecting Means:
    - a. UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.

## 2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Controllers: NEMA ICS 6, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height, and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2006 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal-thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- C. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.
- F. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
- G. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
- H. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
  - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

### 3.3 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation.
  - 2. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
  - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  - 4. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
  - 5. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 6. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 7. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable switches and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- B. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load ampere ratings and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cooldown between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without

tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Owner before increasing settings.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers.

END OF SECTION 262913



## **DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATION**





## **DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

Not Used



## **DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK**

Not Used



## **DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

Section 32 13 13  
Section 32 14 00

Cement Concrete Pavement  
Unit Paving



**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
  - 1. Pavements.
  - 2. Curbs and gutters.
  - 3. Walkways.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earthwork" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, expansive hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Design Mixes: For each concrete pavement mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed pavement work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- C. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- D. Concrete Testing Service: The Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.
- E. Comply with local governing regulations and the following:
  - 1. UOSH Construction Standards Chapter G: Signs, Signals, and Barricades.
  - 2. UDOT Instructions to Flaggers.



3. ANSI D6.1: Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways.
4. ATSSA: American Traffic Safety Services Association.
5. State of Utah Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction, latest edition.

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 FORMS**

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
  1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves of a radius 100 feet (30.5 m) or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

### **2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- C. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars; assembled with clips.
- D. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- E. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain steel bars, ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420). Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- F. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- G. Hook Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against pavement form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
- H. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcement bars, welded wire fabric, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
  1. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.

## **2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. General: Use the same brand and type of cementitious material from the same manufacturer throughout the Project.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
  - 1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.
- C. Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, from a single source, with coarse aggregate as follows:
  - 1. Class: 4S.
  - 2. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) nominal.
  - 3. Do not use fine or coarse aggregates containing substances that cause spalling.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94.

## **2.4 ADMIXTURES**

- A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cement and to be compatible with other admixtures.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

## **2.5 CURING MATERIALS**

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

## **2.6 RELATED MATERIALS**

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

## **2.7 CONCRETE MIXES**

- A. Prepare design mixes, proportioned according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
- B. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for the trial batch method.
  - 1. Do not use Owner's field quality-control testing agency as the independent testing agency.
- C. Proportion mixes to provide concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi (27.6 MPa).
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 3 inches (75 mm).

- D. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
- E. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows within a tolerance of plus or minus 1.5 percent:
  - 1. Air Content: 6.0 percent for 1-inch (25-mm) maximum aggregate.

## **2.8 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Comply with requirements and with ASTM C 94.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface to check for unstable areas and verify need for additional compaction. Proceed with pavement only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.
- B. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

### **3.2 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

### **3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating reinforcement and with recommendations in CRSI's "Placing Reinforcing Bars" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap to adjacent mats.

### 3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour, unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
  - 1. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of pavement strips where indicated.
  - 3. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet (15.25 m), unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  - 3. Terminate joint filler less than 1/2 inch (12 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  - 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  - 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  - 6. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with groover tool to the following radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover marks on concrete surfaces.
    - a. Radius: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
- F. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to the following radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Radius: 1/4 inch (6 mm).

### 3.5 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcement steel, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at the time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at the required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with requirements and with recommendations in ACI 304R for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding, or tamping. Use equipment and procedures to consolidate concrete according to recommendations in ACI 309R.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand-spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- H. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading dry-shake surface treatments.
- I. Curbs and Gutters: When automatic machine placement is used for curb and gutter placement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as specified for formed concrete. If results are not approved, remove and replace with formed concrete.
- J. When adjoining pavement lanes are placed in separate pours, do not operate equipment on concrete until pavement has attained 85 percent of its 28-day compressive strength.
- K. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) and not more than 80 deg F (27 deg C) at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or

chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.

- L. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 deg F (32 deg C). Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover reinforcement steel with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - 3. Fog-spray forms, reinforcement steel, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### **3.6 CONCRETE FINISHING**

- A. General: Wetting of concrete surfaces during screeding, initial floating, or finishing operations is prohibited.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and the concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - 1. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

### **3.7 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING**

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and follow recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete, but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
  - 1. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### **3.8 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
  - 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch (9 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).

3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- (3-m-) long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch (6 mm).
4. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch (25 mm).
5. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
6. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm).
8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches (75 mm).
9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), no minus.
10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), no minus.

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspection agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement. Sampling and testing for quality control may include those specified in this Article.
- B. Testing Services: Testing shall be performed according to the requirements of Section 03 30 00 - Concrete Work.

### **3.10 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective, or does not meet requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores where directed by Architect when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

**END OF SECTION 32 13 13**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Brick pavers set in mortar setting beds.
  - 2. Cast-in-place concrete edge restraints.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for concrete base under unit pavers and for cast-in-place concrete curbs and gutters serving as edge restraint for unit pavers.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For materials other than water and aggregates.
- B. Samples for Selection: For the following:
  - 1. Each type of unit paver indicated.
- C. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From latex-additive manufacturer for mortar and grout containing latex additives.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of unit paver, joint material, and setting material from one source with resources to provide materials and products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to latex-additive manufacturer, for testing indicated below, samples of paving materials that will contact or affect mortar and grout that contain latex additives.
  - 1. Use manufacturer's standard test methods to determine whether mortar and grout materials will obtain optimum adhesion with, and will be nonstaining to, installed pavers and other materials constituting paver installation.



- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store pavers on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Store liquids in tightly closed containers protected from freezing.

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Cold-Weather Protection: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen subgrade or setting beds. Remove and replace unit paver work damaged by frost or freezing.
- B. Weather Limitations for Mortar and Grout:
  - 1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Protect unit paver work against freezing when ambient temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and falling. Heat materials to provide mortar and grout temperatures between 40 and 120 deg F (4 and 49 deg C). Provide the following protection for completed portions of work for 24 hours after installation when the mean daily air temperature is as indicated: below 40 deg F (4 deg C), cover with weather-resistant membrane; below 25 deg F (minus 4 deg C), cover with insulating blankets; below 20 deg F (minus 7 deg C), provide enclosure and temporary heat to maintain temperature above 32 deg F (0 deg C).
  - 2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect unit paver work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of setting beds and grout. Provide artificial shade and windbreaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg F (38 deg C) and higher.
    - a. When ambient temperature exceeds 100 deg F (38 deg C), or when wind velocity exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h) and ambient temperature exceeds 90 deg F (32 deg C), set pavers within 1 minute of spreading setting-bed mortar.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 BRICK PAVERS**

- A. Brick Pavers: Light-traffic paving brick; ASTM C 902, Class SX, Type I, Application PS. Provide brick without frogs or cores in surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Match existing.
  2. Thickness: As indicated to match existing.
  3. Face Size: As indicated to match existing.
  4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range to match existing.
- B. Efflorescence: Brick shall be rated "not effloresced" when tested according to ASTM C 67.
- C. Temporary Protective Coating: Precoat exposed surfaces of brick pavers with a continuous film of a temporary protective coating that is compatible with brick, mortar, and grout products and can be removed without damaging grout or brick. Do not coat unexposed brick surfaces.

## **2.2 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Job-Built Concrete Edge Restraints: Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mixed concrete with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

## **2.3 MORTAR SETTING-BED MATERIALS**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
- B. Sand: ASTM C 144.
- C. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard acrylic-resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement mortar bed, and not containing a retarder.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Reinforcing Wire: Galvanized, welded, 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) diameter wire; 2-by-2-inch (51-by-51-mm) mesh; comply with ASTM A 185 and ASTM A 82 except for minimum wire size.

## **2.4 GROUT MATERIALS**

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, composed of white or gray cement, unfading mineral pigments and white or colored sand as required to produce required color.
- B. Grout Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range to match existing.
- C. Water: Potable.

## **2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES**

- A. General: Comply with referenced standards and with manufacturers' written instructions for mix proportions, mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing times, and other procedures needed to produce setting-bed and joint materials of uniform quality and with optimum performance characteristics. Discard mortars and grout if they have reached their initial set before being used.
- B. Latex-Modified, Portland Cement Setting-Bed Mortar: Proportion and mix portland cement, sand, and latex additive for setting bed to comply with written instructions of latex-additive manufacturer and as necessary to produce stiff mixture with a moist surface when bed is ready to receive pavers.
- C. Job-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Portland Cement Grout: Add liquid-latex additive to portland cement and sand in proportion and concentration recommended by liquid-latex manufacturer. Proportion cement and sand to comply with written instructions of latex-additive manufacturer.
  - 1. Pigmented Grout: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10, by weight.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas indicated to receive paving, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Remove substances from concrete substrates that could impair mortar bond, including curing and sealing compounds, form oil, and laitance.
- B. Clean concrete substrates to remove dirt, dust, debris, and loose particles.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Do not use unit pavers with chips, cracks, voids, discolorations, and other defects that might be visible in finished work.
- B. Mix pavers from several pallets or cubes, as they are placed, to produce uniform blend of colors and textures.
- C. Cut unit pavers with motor-driven masonry saw equipment to provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Cut units to provide pattern indicated and to fit adjoining work neatly. Use full units without cutting where possible. Hammer cutting is not acceptable.

- D. Exercise care in handling coated brick pavers to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. Remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting brick.
- E. Joint Pattern: Match and continue existing unit paver joint pattern.
- F. Tolerances: Do not exceed 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) unit-to-unit offset from flush (lippage) nor 1/8 inch in 24 inches (3 mm in 600 mm) and 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m) from level, or indicated slope, for finished surface of paving.
- G. Expansion and Control Joints: Provide joint filler at locations and of widths indicated. Install joint filler before setting pavers. Make top of joint filler flush with top of pavers.
- H. Provide edge restraints as indicated. Install edge restraints before placing unit pavers.
  - 1. Install job-built concrete edge restraints to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement."
- I. Provide steps made of pavers as indicated. Install paver steps before installing adjacent pavers.

### **3.4 MORTAR SETTING-BED APPLICATIONS**

- A. Saturate concrete subbase with clean water several hours before placing setting bed. Remove surface water about one hour before placing setting bed.
- B. Apply mortar-bed bond coat over surface of concrete subbase about 15 minutes before placing setting bed. Limit area of bond coat to avoid its drying out before placing setting bed. Do not exceed 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) thickness for bond coat.
- C. Place reinforcing wire over concrete subbase, lapped at joints by at least one full mesh and supported so mesh becomes embedded in the middle of setting bed. Hold edges back from vertical surfaces approximately 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- D. Place mortar bed with reinforcing wire fully embedded in middle of setting bed. Spread and screed setting bed to uniform thickness at subgrade elevations required for accurate setting of pavers to finished grades indicated.
- E. Mix and place only that amount of mortar bed that can be covered with pavers before initial set. Cut back, bevel edge, remove, and discard setting-bed material that has reached initial set before placing pavers.
- F. Wet brick pavers before laying if the initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm) per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.
- G. Place pavers before initial set of cement occurs. Immediately before placing pavers on setting bed, apply uniform 1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, slurry bond coat to bed or to back of each paver with a flat trowel.
- H. Tamp or beat pavers with a wooden block or rubber mallet to obtain full contact with setting bed and to bring finished surfaces within indicated tolerances. Set each paver in a single operation before initial set of mortar; do not return to areas already set or disturb pavers for purposes of realigning finished surfaces or adjusting joints.

- I. Spaced Joint Widths: Provide minimum 3/8-inch (10-mm) nominal joint width with variations not exceeding plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) to match existing.
- J. Grout joints as soon as possible after initial set of setting bed.
  - 1. Force grout into joints, taking care not to smear grout on adjoining surfaces.
  - 2. Clean pavers as grouting progresses by dry brushing or rubbing with dry burlap to remove smears before tooling joints.
  - 3. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. If tooling squeezes grout from joints, remove excess grout and smears by dry brushing or rubbing with dry burlap and tool joints again to produce a uniform appearance.
- K. Cure grout by maintaining in a damp condition for seven days, unless otherwise recommended by grout or liquid-latex manufacturer.

### **3.5 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove and replace unit pavers that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Provide new units to match adjoining units and install in same manner as original units, with same joint treatment and with no evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During tooling of joints, enlarge voids or holes and completely fill with grout. Point up joints at sealant joints to provide a neat, uniform appearance, properly prepared for sealant application.
- C. Cleaning: Remove excess grout from exposed paver surfaces; wash and scrub clean.
  - 1. Remove temporary protective coating from brick pavers as recommended by protective coating manufacturer and as acceptable to unit paver and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent it from clogging drains.

**END OF SECTION 32 14 00**

## **DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES**

Not Used



**DIVISION 34 thru DIVISION 48**

Not Used



